Advanced Mathematical Methods
Theory and Applications

Edited by
Francesco Mainardi and Andrea Giusti

MDPI

Advanced Mathematical Methods

Advanced Mathematical Methods

Theory and Applications

Special Issue Editors

Francesco Mainardi
Andrea Giusti

MDPI

Special Issue Editors
Francesco Mainardi
University of Bologna
Italy

Andrea Giusti
University of Bologna
Italy

This is a reprint of articles from the Special Issue published online in the open access journal *Mathematics* (ISSN 2227-7390) from 2018 to 2020 (available at: https://www.mdpi.com/journal/mathematics/special_issues/Advanced_Mathematical_Methods).

For citation purposes, cite each article independently as indicated on the article page online and as indicated below:

LastName, A.A.; LastName, B.B.; LastName, C.C. Article Title. *Journal Name* **Year**, *Article Number*, Page Range.

Contents

Michael D. Marcozzi

Probabilistic Interpretation of Solutions of Linear Ultraparabolic Equations

About the Special Issue Editors

Francesco Mainardi is a retired Professor of Mathematical Physics from the University of Bologna where he taught for 40 years (he retired in November, 2013 at the age of 70). Even in his retirement, he continues to carry out teaching and research activities. His fields of research concern several topics of applied mathematics, including diffusion and wave problems, asymptotic methods, integral transforms, special functions, fractional calculus, and nonGaussian stochastic processes. At present his h-index is more than 50. He has published more than 150 refereed papers and some books as an author or editor. His homepage is http://www.fracalmo.org/mainardi.

Andrea Giusti is a postdoctoral fellow at Bishop's University. He received his PhD in Physics from the Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität München, en cotutelle with the University of Bologna. His research focuses on the classical and quantum aspects of gravity, as well as on more mathematical topics related to fractional calculus. He has published over 40 papers in international peer-reviewed scientific journals. In light of his research achievements, he was awarded the Augusto Righi prize by the Italian Physical Society and the Václav Votruba prize by the Doppler Institute in Prague.

Editorial

Advanced Mathematical Methods: Theory and Applications

Andrea Giusti [1] and Francesco Mainardi [2,*]

[1]   Physics & Astronomy Department, Bishop's University, 2600 College Street, Sherbrooke, QC J1M 1Z7, Canada; agiusti@ubishops.ca

[2]   Department of Physics & Astronomy and INFN, University of Bologna, Via Irnerio 46, 40126 Bologna, Italy

*   Correspondence: mainardi@bo.infn.it

The many technical and computational problems that appear to be constantly emerging in various branches of physics and engineering beg for a more detailed understanding of the fundamental mathematics that serves as the cornerstone of our way of understanding natural phenomena. The purpose of this Special Issue is to establish a brief collection of carefully selected articles authored by promising young scientists and the world's leading experts in pure and applied mathematics, highlighting the state-of-the-art of the various research lines focusing on the study of analytical and numerical mathematical methods for pure and applied sciences.

Our collection opens with a featured review article [1], by Yuri Luchko, aimed at providing a pedagogical discussion of the role of integral transforms in mathematical physics, with particular regard for the Laplace and Mellin transforms. We continue with another survey paper [2], by Roberto Garrappa, Eva Kaslik, and Marina Popolizio, dedicated to an in-depth analysis evaluation of fractional integrals and derivatives of some elementary functions. Similarly to the first article, the work of R. Garrappa et al. is very pedagogical in nature and can serve as an effective reference to those who wish to gradually approach the study of numerical aspects of fractional calculus.

This collection then continues with two important featured articles. Specifically, it starts with the work [3], by Emilia Bazhlekova and Ivan Bazhlekov, concerning a subordination approach to the multi-dimensional space–time fractional diffusion equation. In detail, the fundamental solution of this equation is studied by means of the subordination principle, which in turn provides a relation to the classical Gaussian function. We then move to the contribution [4], by Silvia Vitali, Iva Budimir, Claudio Runfola, and Gastone Castellani, dedicated to the study of the role of the central limit theorem within the framework of an heterogeneous ensemble of Brownian particles (dubbed the HEBP approach, for short).

The collection then closes with a series of eight very interesting original contributions. We begin this series with the work of Marina Popolizio [5] analyzing numerical properties and theoretical features of the Mittag–Leffler function with matrix arguments. It is then followed by an interesting note [6] on a generalization of the time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation based on the application of Caputo fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function, by Luisa Beghin and Roberto Garra. We then move to biophysical modeling with the inspiring work [7] by Berardino D'Acunto, Luigi Frunzo, Vincenzo Luongo, and Maria Rosaria Mattei, in which the authors propose a mathematical model of heavy metal sorption and interaction in a multispecies biofilm. We then continue with a pedagogical article on space–time exterior calculus [8], and its relation to Maxwell's theory, by Ivano Colombaro, Josep Font-Segura, and Alfonso Martinez. One then finds an interesting proposal for a mathematical model of economic growth with fading memory and a continuous distribution of time-delay. This work [9], by Vasily E. Tarasov, and Valentina V. Tarasova, represents a generalization of the standard Keynesian macroeconomic model based on Abel-type integrals and integro-differential operators involving the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function in the kernel. The collection then features a work [10] by Natalie Baddour on the discrete two-dimensional Fourier

transform in polar coordinates, in which both the general theory and operational rules are discussed. One then finds a contribution by Giulio Starita and Alfonsina Tartaglione [11] analyzing the Fredholm property of trace operators associated with the elastic layer potentials. Finally, the collection is completed by the work of Michael D. Marcozzi [12] that discusses a probabilistic interpretation of the solutions of linear ultraparabolic equations.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

1. Luchko, Y. Some Schemata for Applications of the Integral Transforms of Mathematical Physics. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 254.
2. Garrappa, R.; Kaslik, E.; Popolizio, M. Evaluation of Fractional Integrals and Derivatives of Elementary Functions: Overview and Tutorial. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 407.
3. Bazhlekova, E.; Bazhlekov, I. Subordination Approach to Space-Time Fractional Diffusion. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 415.
4. Vitali, S.; Budimir, I.; Runfola, C.; Castellani, G. The Role of the Central Limit Theorem in the Heterogeneous Ensemble of Brownian Particles Approach. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 1145.
5. Popolizio, M. On the Matrix Mittag–Leffler Function: Theoretical Properties and Numerical Computation. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 1140.
6. Beghin, L.; Garra, R. A Note on the Generalized Relativistic Diffusion Equation. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 1009.
7. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L.; Luongo, V.; Mattei, M.R. Modeling Heavy Metal Sorption and Interaction in a Multispecies Biofilm. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 781.
8. Colombaro, I.; Font-Segura, J.; Martine, A. An Introduction to Space–Time Exterior Calculus. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 564.
9. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Dynamic Keynesian Model of Economic Growth with Memory and Lag. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 178.
10. Baddour, N. Discrete Two-Dimensional Fourier Transform in Polar Coordinates Part I: Theory and Operational Rules. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 698.
11. Starita, G.; Tartaglione, A. On the Fredholm Property of the Trace Operators Associated with the Elastic Layer Potentials. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 134.
12. Marcozzi, M.D. Probabilistic Interpretation of Solutions of Linear Ultraparabolic Equations. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 286.

MDPI

Review

Some Schemata for Applications of the Integral Transforms of Mathematical Physics

Yuri Luchko

Department of Mathematics, Physics, and Chemistry, Beuth University of Applied Sciences Berlin, Luxemburger Str. 10, 13353 Berlin, Germany; luchko@beuth-hochschule.de

Abstract: In this survey article, some schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are presented. First, integral transforms of mathematical physics are defined by using the notions of the inverse transforms and generating operators. The convolutions and generating operators of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are closely connected with the integral, differential, and integro-differential equations that can be solved by means of the corresponding integral transforms. Another important technique for applications of the integral transforms is the Mikusinski-type operational calculi that are also discussed in the article. The general schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are illustrated on an example of the Laplace integral transform. Finally, the Mellin integral transform and its basic properties and applications are briefly discussed.

1. Introduction

In this survey article, we discuss some schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics to differential, integral, and integro-differential equations, and in the theory of special functions. The literature devoted to this subject is huge and includes many books and reams of papers. For more details regarding this topic we refer the readers to, say, [1–4]. Of course, in a short survey article it is not possible to mention all known integral transforms and their numerous applications. That is why we focus on just some selected integral transforms and their applications that are of general nature and valid for most of the integral transforms in one or another form.

We start with introducing the integral transforms of mathematical physics that possess the inverses in form of the linear integral transforms and can be interpreted as transmutation operators for their generating operators. The integral transforms of mathematical physics, their generating operators, and convolutions are closely related to each other. In particular, the integral transform technique can be employed for derivation of the closed form solutions to some integral equations of convolution type and to the integral, differential, or integro-differential equations with the generating operators.

Another powerful technique for applications of the integral transforms is the Mikusinski-type operational calculi. They can be developed for the left-inverse operators of the generating operators of the integral transforms. A basic element of this construction is the convolutions for the corresponding integral transforms that play the role of multiplication in some rings of functions. This ring is then extended to a field of convolution quotients following the standard procedure. One of the advantages of this extension is that the left-inverse operator $\mathcal{D}$ to the generating operator $\mathcal{L}$ of the given integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ can be then represented as multiplication with a certain field element. Thus, the differential

or integro-differential equations with the operator $\mathcal{D}$ are reduced to some algebraic equations in the field of convolution quotients and can be solved in explicit form. The so obtained "generalized" solution can be sometimes represented as a conventional function from the initial ring of functions by using the so-called operational relations.

The general schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics mentioned above are demonstrated on an example of the Laplace integral transform. The Laplace integral transform is a simple particular case of the general H-transform that is a Mellin convolution type integral transform with the Fox H-function in the kernel. The general schemata for applications of the integral transforms presented in this article are valid for the H-transform, too. For the theory of the generating operators, convolutions, and operational calculi of the Mikusinski type for the H-transforms we refer the interested readers to [4–8] (see also numerous references therein). In this article, we restrict ourselves to discussion of some fundamental properties of the Mellin integral transform that is a basis for the theory of the Mellin convolution type integral transforms in general and of the H-transform in particular.

The rest of the article is organized as follows: In the second section, general schemata for some applications of the integral transforms to analysis of the integral, differential, and integro-differential equations are presented. In particular, the main ideas behind an operational calculus of Mikusinski type are discussed. The third section illustrates these schemata on the example of the Laplace integral transform. The fourth section deals with the basic properties of the Mellin integral transform.

2. Integral Transforms of Mathematical Physics

The focus of this survey article is on properties of the integral transforms and their applications to different problems of analysis, differential and integral equations, and special functions. Thus, we do not discuss the integral transforms from the viewpoint of functional analysis by considering, say, their mapping properties in some spaces of functions. Instead, we try to illustrate the underlying ideas and procedures both for analysis of the integral transforms and for their applications.

2.1. Applications of the Integral Transforms

The integral transforms of mathematical physics are not arbitrary linear integral operators, but rather those with the known inverse operators and the known generating operators. For the sake of simplicity and clarity, in this article we restrict ourselves to the case of the one-dimensional integral transforms. However, a similar theory can be also developed for the multi-dimensional integral transforms. A one-dimensional integral transform (of mathematical physics) of a function $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ at the point $t \in \mathbb{R}$ is defined by the (convergent) integral

$$g(t) = \mathcal{T}\{f(x); t\} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} K(t, x)\, f(x)\, dx\,. \tag{1}$$

Its inverse operator must be also a linear integral transform

$$f(x) = \mathcal{T}^{-1}\{g(t); x\} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \hat{K}(x, t)\, g(t)\, dt \tag{2}$$

with a known kernel function $\hat{K}$. The kernel functions K and $\hat{K}$ of the integral transforms (1) and (2) satisfy the relation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \hat{K}(x, t) K(t, y)\, dt \;=\; \delta(x - y) \tag{3}$$

with the Dirac δ-function.

Many applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are based on the operational relations of the following form:

$$\mathcal{T}\{(\mathcal{L}f)(x);t\} = L(t)\mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\}. \tag{4}$$

The integral transform T satisfying the relation (4) is called a transmutation that translates an operator $\mathcal{L}$ into multiplication by the function L. Following [4,8,9], we call the operator $\mathcal{L}$ the generating operator of the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$. For the general H-transform, one of the important classes of their generating operators can be represented in form of finite compositions of the fractional Erdelyi-Kober integrals and derivatives [4–8]. In the case of the Laplace integral transform, the generating operator is just the first derivative.

Let us now discuss a general schema for applications of the transmutation Formula (4) on an example of the equation

$$P(\mathcal{L})y(x) = f(x), \tag{5}$$

where P is a polynomial and f is a given function. Applying the integral transform (1) to Equation (5) and employing the transmutation Formula (4) lead to the algebraic (in fact, linear) equation

$$P(L(t))\mathcal{T}\{y(x);t\} = \mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\} \tag{6}$$

for the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ of the unknown function y with a solution in form

$$\mathcal{T}\{y(x);t\} = \frac{\mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\}}{P(L(t))}. \tag{7}$$

In the system theory, the function $1/P(L(t))$ is often called the transfer function. The inversion Formula (2) allows then to represent the solution (7) as follows:

$$y(x) = \mathcal{T}^{-1}\left\{\frac{\mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\}}{P(L(t))};x\right\}. \tag{8}$$

In many applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics, one deals with the linear differential operators of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(x,\frac{d}{dx})y = \sum_{k=0}^{n} l_k(x)\frac{d^k y}{dx^k}. \tag{9}$$

Let us suppose that $\mathcal{L}$ is a generating operator of the integral transform (1) with the inverse integral transform (2) such that the relation (4) holds true. By

$$\mathcal{L}^T(x,\frac{d}{dx})y = \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^k\frac{d^k}{dx^k}(l_k(x)y) \tag{10}$$

we denote the operator conjugate to the operator $\mathcal{L}$.

Then it is known that the kernel K of the integral transform (1) is an eigenfunction of the operator $\mathcal{L}^T$ and the kernel $\hat{K}$ of the inverse integral transform (2) is an eigenfunction of the operator $\mathcal{L}$ [9]:

$$\mathcal{L}^T(x,\frac{d}{dx})K(t,x) = L(t)K(t,x),$$

$$\mathcal{L}(x,\frac{d}{dx})\hat{K}(x,t) = L(t)\hat{K}(x,t).$$

Let us note that the Formulas (1) and (2) for the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ of a function f and its inverse integral transform can be put together into the form

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \hat{K}(x,t)\, \mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\}\, dt$$

and then interpreted as an expansion of the function f by the eigenfunctions of the linear differential operator $\mathcal{L}$.

Thus, the integral transforms of mathematical physics are closely connected with the eigenvalues of some differential operators. However, the eigenvalues of the differential operators are known in explicit form only in a few cases and therefore the amount of the integral transforms of mathematical physics is very restricted.

As a rule, the generating operators of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are differential operators either of the first or of the second order. Examples of the integral transforms with the generating operators in form of the differential operators of the first order are:

(a) the Laplace integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = e^{-xt}$ if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$,
(b) the sine- and cosine Fourier integral transforms with the kernel functions $K(t,x) = \sqrt{2/\pi}\sin(xt)$ if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$ and $K(t,x) = \sqrt{2/\pi}\cos(xt)$ if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$, respectively,
(c) the Fourier integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = e^{-ixt}$,
(d) the Mellin integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = x^{t-1}$ if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$.

Following integral transforms possess generating operators in form of the differential operators of the second order:

(a) the Hankel integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = \sqrt{xt}J_\nu(xt)$ (J_ν stands for the Bessel function) if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$,
(b) the Meijer integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = \sqrt{xt}K_\nu(xt)$ (K_ν is the Macdonald function) if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$,
(c) the Kontorovich- Lebedev integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = K_{it}(x)$ if $x > 0$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 0$,
(d) the Mehler-Fock integral transform with the kernel function $K(t,x) = P^k_{it-1/2}(x)$ (P^μ_ν denotes the Legendre function of the first kind) if $x > 1$ and $K(t,x) = 0$ if $x \leq 1$.

As already mentioned, the generating operators of the H-transform are certain compositions of the Erdelyi-Kober fractional integrals and derivatives. This connection allows to solve equations of type (5) with the operator $\mathcal{L}$ in form of a composition of the Erdelyi-Kober fractional integro-differential operators [4–8].

Another operation that plays a very important role in applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics is a convolution of two functions associated with a certain integral transform.

In general, a convolution on a linear vector space of functions is defined as a bilinear, commutative, and associative operation defined on a direct product of a linear vector space by itself. Together with the usual addition of two elements of the vector space, the convolution thus equips the linear vector space with a structure of a commutative ring.

A convolution $\overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}$ associated with the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ and defined on a linear functional vector space $\mathcal{X}$ satisfies the relation (convolution theorem)

$$\mathcal{T}\left\{(f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} g)(x);t\right\} = \mathcal{T}\{f(x);t\}\,\mathcal{T}\{g(x);t\}, \quad \forall f,g \in \mathcal{X}. \tag{11}$$

The reader can find many examples of convolutions for different integral transforms of mathematical physics in [4,5].

One of the basic applications of the convolutions is for analysis of the integral equations of convolution type. The convolutions of the integral transforms of mathematical physics are often represented in form of some integrals. In these cases the convolution equations like, e.g.,

$$y(x) - \lambda(y \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} K)(x) = f(x), \ \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \text{ or } \lambda \in \mathbb{C}, \tag{12}$$

where f and K are some known functions and the function y is unknown, are integral equations.

To solve the integral Equation (12), we apply the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ to both parts of (12). Then we first get an algebraic (in fact, a linear) equation

$$\mathcal{T}\{y(x); t\} - \lambda \mathcal{T}\{y(x); t\} \mathcal{T}\{K(x); t\} = \mathcal{T}\{f(x); t\} \tag{13}$$

with the solution

$$\mathcal{T}\{y(x); t\} = \frac{\mathcal{T}\{f(x); t\}}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{T}\{K(x); t\}}. \tag{14}$$

Applying the inverse transform $\mathcal{T}^{-1}$ to (14), the solution of the integral Equation (12) can be then represented in the form

$$y(x) = \mathcal{T}^{-1}\left\{\frac{\mathcal{T}\{f(x); t\}}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{T}\{K(x); t\}}; x\right\}. \tag{15}$$

In many cases, the right-hand side of (15) has a convolution form and thus the solution to (12) can be rewritten as follows:

$$y(x) = f(x) + \lambda(f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} M)(x), \tag{16}$$

where M is a known function.

2.2. Basic Ideas Behind an Operational Calculus of Mikusinski Type

Another useful technique employed for solution of both integral equations of convolution type (12) and differential or integro-differential equations of type (5) is an algebraic approach based on the operational calculi of Mikusinski type [4–6,10–14].

In an operational calculus of Mikusinski type, a close relation between an integral transform, its convolution and its generating operator plays a very essential role as investigated in detail in [15].

Following [15], we first introduce a convolution of a linear operator $\mathcal{L}$. Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a linear vector space and $\mathcal{L} : \mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{X}$ a linear operator defined on the elements of $\mathcal{X}$. A bilinear, commutative, and associative operation $* : \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{X}$ is said to be a convolution of the linear operator $\mathcal{L}$ if and only if the relation

$$\mathcal{L}(f * g) = (\mathcal{L}f) * g \tag{17}$$

holds true for all $f, g \in \mathcal{X}$.

As shown in [4], if $\mathcal{L}$ is a generating operator of the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ (the Formula (4) holds true) and if $\overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}$ is a convolution of $\mathcal{T}$ that satisfies the relation (11), then $\overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}$ is a convolution of the generating operator $\mathcal{L}$ in the sense of the relation (17).

Another important fact is that any of the convolution operators of the type

$$(\mathcal{L}f)(x) = (h \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} f)(x), \tag{18}$$

where $\overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}$ is a convolution of the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$ and h is a fixed element of $\mathcal{X}$ can be interpreted as a generating operator of the integral transform $\mathcal{T}$, i.e., it satisfies the transmutation relation (4).

The generating operator $\mathcal{L}$ given by (18) is an integral operator that is defined on the functions from the convolution ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$ as multiplication by a fixed element $h \in \mathcal{X}$. It is important to stress that the representations of this type are not possible for the generating operators of the differential type, e.g., for the left-inverse operators of the integral operator (18). However, similar representations of differential operators can be derived on an extension of the convolution ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$ to the field of the convolution quotients. In fact, this extension is a basic element of any operational calculus of Mikusinski type. In the case when the ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$ has no divisors of zero, the extension follows the pattern of the extension of the ring of integer numbers to the field of rational numbers.

If the ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$ has some divisors of zero, the construction of the field of convolution quotients becomes more complicated (see, e.g., [15] for details). A divisor-free convolution ring is usually extended to a field $\mathcal{F}$ of convolution quotients by factorization of the set $\mathcal{X} \times (\mathcal{X} - \{0\})$ with respect to the equivalence relation

$$(f, g) \sim (f_1, g_1) \Leftrightarrow (f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} g_1)(x) = (g \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} f_1)(x). \tag{19}$$

The elements of the field $\mathcal{F}$ are sets of all pairs (f, g), $f, g \in \mathcal{X}$ that are equivalent to each other with respect to the equivalence relation (19). They are often formally denoted as quotients f/g. The addition $+$ and multiplication $\cdot$ operations are defined on $\mathcal{F}$ in a standard way:

$$f/g + f_1/g_1 = (f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} g_1 + g \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} f_1)/(g \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} g_1), \tag{20}$$

$$f/g \cdot f_1/g_1 = (f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} f_1)/(g \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} g_1). \tag{21}$$

It is an easy exercise in algebra to show that the results of the operations (20) and (21) do not depend on the representatives of the field elements f/g and f_1/g_1 and thus these operations are well defined. Equipped with the operations $+$ and $\cdot$, the set $\mathcal{F}$ becomes a commutative field that is denoted by $(\mathcal{F}, \cdot, +)$.

The ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$ can be embedded into the field $(\mathcal{F}, \cdot, +)$, say, by the map

$$f \in \mathcal{R} \to (f \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} h)/h \in \mathcal{F}, \tag{22}$$

where $h \in \mathcal{R}$ is any non-zero element of the ring $\mathcal{R}$. A natural choice for the element $h \in \mathcal{R}$ in the relation (22) is the function from the Formula (18) that defines the generating operator $\mathcal{L}$. In this case, the corresponding operational calculus is constructed for the differential operator $\mathcal{D}$ that is a left-inverse operator to the integral operator (18), i.e., for the operator $\mathcal{D}$ that satisfies the relation

$$\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{L}f) = f, \; \forall f \in \mathcal{X}. \tag{23}$$

On the ring $\mathcal{R} = (\mathcal{X}, \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*}, +)$, the operator $\mathcal{L}$ applied to a function $f \in \mathcal{X}$ is just multiplication of f with a fixed element $h \in \mathcal{X}$. On the other hand, the differential operator $\mathcal{D}$ (a left-inverse operator to the integral operator $\mathcal{L}$) can be represented on the field $(\mathcal{F}, \cdot, +)$ in the form

$$\mathcal{D}f = S \cdot f - S \cdot \mathcal{P}f, \tag{24}$$

where the operator $\mathcal{P} = \mathrm{Id} - \mathcal{L}\mathcal{D}$ is called a projector of the generating operator $\mathcal{L}$ and $S \in \mathcal{F}$ is the element reciprocal to $h \in \mathcal{R} \subset \mathcal{F}$ defined by the Formula (18), i.e.,

$$S = h^{-1} = I/h = h/(h \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} h) = h/h^2 = \cdots = h^k/h^{k+1}, \; k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{25}$$

The element $S \in \mathcal{F}$ is often called an algebraic inverse of the generating operator $\mathcal{L}$ in the field of convolution quotients.

The operational Formula (24) is very important in applications of the constructed operational calculus because it allows a reduction of the linear differential equations with the operator $\mathcal{D}$ to some algebraic equations in the field $(\mathcal{F}, \cdot, +)$ of convolution quotients. The obtained equations can be then often solved in explicit form that leads to the "generalized" solutions that belong to the convolution quotients field $(\mathcal{F}, \cdot, +)$. In some cases, by making use of the embedding (22) and of the so-called operational relations, these generalized solutions can be reduced to the conventional functions from the initial ring $\mathcal{R}$. In particular, the following operational relation plays a very important role in any operational calculus:

$$(S - \rho)^{-1} = I/(S - \rho) = h/(I - \rho h) = h \cdot (I + \rho h + \rho^2 h^2 + \dots)$$
$$= h(x) + \rho h^2(x) + \rho^2 h^3(x) + \dots = H(x) \in \mathcal{R}, \; \rho \in \mathbb{C}, \; h^k = \underbrace{h \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} h \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} \dots \overset{\mathcal{T}}{*} h}_{k}. \tag{26}$$

The general schema for construction of an operational calculus and for its applications that was presented above seems to be not especially complicated. However, in the case of a given generating operator a lot of serious problems can appear while developing the corresponding operational calculus. The main questions are how to construct an appropriate convolution, how to determine its divisors of zero in the corresponding ring of functions (or show that it is divisors-free), how to calculate the projector operator (the projector operator determines the form of the initial conditions for the ordinary or fractional differential equations that can be solved by employing the operational calculus), how to specify the operational relations such as the one given in the Formula (26), etc. For discussions regarding how to overcome all these difficulties for operational calculi for different operators of Fractional Calculus see, e.g., ref. [4] or [5–8].

3. The Laplace Integral Transform

The Laplace integral transform—along with the Fourier integral transform and the Mellin integral transform—is one of the most important classical integral transforms that is widely used in analysis, differential equations, theory of special functions and integral transforms, and for other problems of mathematical physics. For a function f, its Laplace transform at the point $p \in \mathbb{C}$ is defined by the following improper integral (in the case it is a convergent one):

$$\widetilde{f}(p) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t); p\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-pt} f(t)\, dt, \quad \Re(p) > a_f. \tag{27}$$

A sufficient condition for existence of the Laplace integral at the right-hand side of (27) for a function $f \in L^c(0, +\infty)$ is the estimate of the type

$$|f(t)| \le M_f e^{a_f t}, \; t > T_f, \tag{28}$$

where M_f, a_f, and T_f are some constants depending on the function f. The space of functions $L^c(0, +\infty)$ consists of all real or complex-valued functions of a real variable that are continuous on the open interval $(0, +\infty)$ except, possibly, at a counted number of isolated points, where these functions can tend to infinity and for that the improper Riemann integral absolutely converges on $(0, +\infty)$. In this section, the set of all functions from $L^c(0, +\infty)$ that satisfy the estimate (28) with some constants depending on the functions will be denoted by $\mathcal{O}$. In the following discussions, we always assume that the functions we deal with belong to the space of functions $\mathcal{O}$. For the functions from $\mathcal{O}$, their Laplace transforms $\widetilde{f}(p)$ defined by the right-hand side of (27) are analytic function in the half complex plane $\Re(p) > a_f$. This feature makes the Laplace transform technique very powerful because all methods and ideas elaborated in the well-developed theory of analytical functions can be employed in the Laplace domain.

Let a function f be piecewise differentiable and its Laplace transform exist for $\Re(p) > a_f$. At all points where f is continuous, it can be represented via the inverse Laplace transform

$$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\tilde{f}(p); t\right\} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma - i\infty}^{\gamma + i\infty} e^{pt}\, \tilde{f}(p)\, dp\,, \quad \Re(p) = \gamma > a_f, \tag{29}$$

where the integral at the right-hand side is understood in the sense of the Cauchy principal value.

Let us mention here that in some cases the bilateral Laplace transform can be useful. It is defined by the formula

$$\mathcal{L}_{bl}\left\{f(t); p\right\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-pt} f(t)\, dt\,, \quad b_f > \Re(p) > a_f. \tag{30}$$

In our article, we assume that the model equations we deal with refer to the causal processes and thus we restrict ourselves to discussion of the Laplace transform.

The Laplace integral transform is treated in many textbooks (see, e.g., [11,16–21]). Here, we demonstrate on the example of the Laplace integral transform how the general schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics work. It is worth mentioning that the same constructions can be applied for the general H-transform and its numerous particular cases ([4–8]).

Let the inclusion $f' \in \mathcal{O}$ be valid. The integration by parts formula applied to the Laplace integral leads to following transmutation relation for the Laplace integral transform:

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{\frac{d}{dt} f(t); p\right\} = p\, \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} - f(0). \tag{31}$$

This means that the Laplace integral transform is a transmutation operator for the first derivative that translates it into multiplication with the linear factor p.

The Formula (31) and its generalization (for $f^{(n)} \in \mathcal{O}$)

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{f^{(n)}(t); p\right\} = p^n\, \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} - p^{n-1} f(0) - \ldots - f^{(n-1)}(0) \tag{32}$$

are the basic formulas for application of the Laplace transform technique to solution of the linear differential equations.

As an example, let us consider the following initial value problem:

$$\begin{cases} x^{(n)}(t) + a_1 x^{(n-1)}(t) + \cdots + a_n x(t) = f(t), \ t > 0, \\ x(0) = x_0,\ \frac{dx}{dt}\big|_{t=0} = x_1, \ldots, \frac{d^{n-1}x}{dt^{n-1}}\big|_{t=0} = x_{n-1}. \end{cases} \tag{33}$$

Applying of the Laplace integral transform to Equation (33) to the initial value problem (33) we get an algebraic (in fact, a linear) equation for the Laplace transform of the unknown function x:

$$L(p)\mathcal{L}\left\{x(t); p\right\} = \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} + M(p), \tag{34}$$

where $L(p) = p^n + a_1 p^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n$ and $M(p) = p^{n-1} x_0 + \cdots + x_{n-1} + a_1 (p^{n-2} x_0 + \cdots + x_{n-2}) + \cdots + a_{n-1} x_0$. The polynomial L is known as a characteristic polynomial of Equation (33).

For applicability of this technique, the function f from the left-hand side of Equation (33) must satisfy the condition (28).

The linear Equation (34) can be easily solved:

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{x(t); p\right\} = \frac{\mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} + M(p)}{L(p)}. \tag{35}$$

Thus, the unique solution to (33) can be (formally) obtained by applying the inverse Laplace transform to the right-hand side of (35):

$$x(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{\mathcal{L}\{f(t); p\} + M(p)}{L(p)}; t\right\}.\tag{36}$$

Often, the inverse Laplace transform at the right-hand side of the Formula (36) can be evaluated by means of the Cauchy residue theorem or by employing the tables of the Laplace integral transforms [19,20].

The same procedure as above is applicable for the systems of linear ordinary differential equations with the constant coefficients. A similar method can be applied for the linear ordinary differential equations with the polynomial coefficients ([11]). In the case of the time-dependent partial linear differential equations with the constant coefficients, application of the Laplace integral transform with respect to the time variable transforms them to the stationary partial differential equations of elliptic type with some parameters dependent on the Laplace variable p.

A prominent role in several applications of the Laplace integral transform is played by its convolution that is defined by the well-known formula

$$(f \overset{\mathcal{L}}{*} g)(t) = \int_0^t f(\tau)g(t - \tau)\,d\tau.\tag{37}$$

The Borel convolution theorem states the main property of the Laplace convolution (37). Let the Laplace integral transforms of the functions f, $g \in \mathcal{O}$ be well defined for $\Re(p) > \gamma$. Then the Laplace convolution (37) also exists for $\Re(p) > \gamma$ and the convolution formula

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{(f \overset{\mathcal{L}}{*} g)(t); p\right\} = \mathcal{L}\{f(t); p\} \times \mathcal{L}\{g(t); p\}\tag{38}$$

holds true.

In [4,5], a close relation of the Laplace convolution to the Euler Beta-function was established. It turned out that the Formula (37) for the Laplace convolution follows from the well-known formula

$$B(s, t) = \int_0^1 x^{s-1}(1 - x)^{t-1}\,dx = \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(t)}{\Gamma(s + t)},\tag{39}$$

Γ being the Euler Gamma-function defined as

$$\Gamma(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{s-1}\,dx, \ \Re(s) > 0.\tag{40}$$

Applying the Formula (37) for the Laplace convolution and the Formula (39) for the B-function, convolutions of many other integral transforms including the general H-transform can be constructed [4,5].

The Borel Formula (38) can be employed for solving some integral equations of the Laplace convolution type. As an example, let us consider an integral equation of the second kind in the form

$$x(t) - \lambda \int_0^t k(t - \tau)x(\tau)\,d\tau = f(t).\tag{41}$$

Application of the Laplace integral transform to Equation (41) reduces it to the algebraic (in fact, linear) equation

$$\mathcal{L}\{x(t); p\} - \lambda\mathcal{L}\{x(t); p\}\mathcal{L}\{k(t); p\} = \mathcal{L}\{f(t); p\}\tag{42}$$

for the Laplace transform of the unknown function. Its solution is given by the formula

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{x(t); p\right\} = \frac{\mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\}}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{L}\left\{k(t); p\right\}}. \tag{43}$$

To get a solution for the integral Equation (41), the inverse Laplace integral transform can be applied to Equation Lap-8. However, let us follow another approach and get a representation of the solution by using the Formula (38). To do this, let us take a closer look at the expression $\mathcal{L}\left\{x(t); p\right\} - \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\}$. The Formula (43) leads to the representation

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{x(t); p\right\} - \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} = \frac{\mathcal{L}\{f(t);p\}}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{L}\{k(t);p\}} - \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\}$$
$$= \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} \left(\frac{1}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{L}\{k(t);p\}} - 1\right) = \lambda \mathcal{L}\left\{f(t); p\right\} \frac{\mathcal{L}\{k(t);p\}}{1 - \lambda \mathcal{L}\{k(t);p\}}. \tag{44}$$

Because of the Formula (38), we can represent a solution for the integral Equation (41) in the form

$$x(t) = f(t) + \lambda \int_0^t h(t - \tau) f(\tau) \, d\tau. \tag{45}$$

In this formula, the function h is the inverse Laplace transform of the function $\mathcal{L}\left\{k(t); p\right\} / (1 - \lambda \mathcal{L}\left\{k(t); p\right\})$.

The same method can be employed for the initial value problems for the ordinary differential equations in form (33). Let us revisit the Formula (35) and represent the rational functions $1/L$ and M/L as sums of partial fractions

$$\frac{1}{L(p)} = \frac{1}{(p - \lambda_1)^{m_1} \times \ldots \times (p - \lambda_k)^{m_k}} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} \sum_{r=1}^{m_j} \frac{c_{jr}}{(p - \lambda_j)^r}, \ \lambda_j, c_{jr} \in \mathbb{C} \tag{46}$$

$$\frac{M(p)}{L(p)} = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \sum_{r=1}^{s_j} \frac{d_{jr}}{(p - \eta_j)^r}, \ \eta_j, d_{jr} \in \mathbb{C}. \tag{47}$$

The operational formula

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{t^n e^{at}; p\right\} = \int_0^\infty t^n e^{-t(p-a)} \, dt = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{(p-a)^{n+1}} = \frac{n!}{(p-a)^{n+1}}, \ \Re(p - a) > 0 \tag{48}$$

and the Borel convolution Formula (38) allow us to represent the solution of the initial value problem (33) in the form

$$x(t) = \int_0^t f(t - \tau) \left(\sum_{j=1}^{k} \sum_{r=1}^{m_j} \frac{c_{jr}}{(r-1)!} \tau^{r-1} e^{\lambda_j \tau}\right) d\tau + \sum_{j=1}^{m} \sum_{r=1}^{s_j} \frac{d_{jr}}{(r-1)!} t^{r-1} e^{\eta_j t}. \tag{49}$$

It is worth mentioning that the Formula (48) is valid not only for the power functions in the form $t^n, n \in \mathbb{N}$, but also for the arbitrary power functions with the exponents $\alpha > -1$:

$$\mathcal{L}\left\{t^\alpha e^{at}; p\right\} = \int_0^\infty t^\alpha e^{-t(p-a)} \, dt = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}{(p-a)^{\alpha+1}}, \ \alpha > -1, \ \Re(p - a) > 0. \tag{50}$$

In order to solve the linear ordinary differential equations with the polynomial coefficients, a slightly different procedure compared to the method demonstrated above is often employed. Its main element consists in representation of an unknown solution to a differential equation in the form similar to the form of the inverse Laplace transform

$$x(t) = \int_C \phi(p) e^{pt} \, dp \tag{51}$$

with an unknown contour C. In the process of solution, the contour C must be appropriately chosen [22].

To illustrate this technique, let us consider another—a little bit exotic—application of the Laplace integral transform technique, namely, for solving a functional equation. The Euler Gamma-function (40) is a generalization of the factorial function. It satisfies the functional equation

$$F(s+1) = s\,F(s), \ \Re(s) > 0, \ F(1) = 1. \tag{52}$$

Let us show that the functional Equation (52) has a unique solution, namely, the Gamma-function in the functional space of smooth functions. To solve the functional Equation (52), the Laplace transform method mentioned above is employed. We look for the solutions F of (52) in form

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \phi(p)\,e^{-ps}\,dp. \tag{53}$$

Then the relation

$$s\,F(s) = s\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \phi(p)\,e^{-ps}\,dp = -\phi(p)\,e^{-ps}\big|_{-\infty}^{\infty} + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \phi'(p)\,e^{-ps}\,dp \tag{54}$$

holds valid if the unknown function ϕ is a smooth function on $\mathbb{R}$ and the limits $\lim_{p\to\pm\infty}\phi(p)\,e^{-ps}$ exist and are finite. Moreover, let the relations $\lim_{p\to\pm\infty}\phi(p)\,e^{-ps} = 0$ hold true. At this stage we just suppose that the unknown function ϕ satisfies the conditions above. However, after the functional Equation (52) will be solved, these conditions can be directly verified.

Using the representation (that directly follows from (53))

$$F(s+1) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \phi(p)\,e^{-ps}\,e^{-p}\,dp,$$

and the Formula (54), the functional Equation (52) is reduced to a differential equation for the unknown function ϕ:

$$\phi(p)\,e^{-p} = \phi'(p).$$

The general solution formula of the above equation can be derived by separating the variables p and ϕ:

$$\phi(p) = -C\,e^{-e^{-p}}, \ C \in \mathbb{R}. \tag{55}$$

Evidently, the function ϕ defined by the right-hand side of (55) satisfies the conditions $\lim_{p\to\pm\infty}\phi(p)\,e^{-ps} = 0$ for $\Re(s) > 0$. Substituting (55) into (53) and by the variables substitution $x = \exp(-p)$, we get the solution formula

$$F(s) = C\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x}\,x^{s-1}\,dx, \ \Re(s) > 0. \tag{56}$$

The initial condition from (52) leads to a unique value of the constant C:

$$1 = F(1) = C\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x}\,dx = C.$$

Thus, the solution Formula (56) coincides with the integral representation of the Gamma-function and the Gamma-function is the only smooth solution to the functional Equation (52) with the initial condition $F(1) = 1$.

In our last example of this section, we prove the Formula (39) for the Beta-function by employing the Laplace transform technique. We start with an observation that the Beta-function B is the Laplace convolution of two power functions evaluated at the point $x = 1$:

$$B(s,t) = (\tau^{s-1} \overset{\mathcal{L}}{*} \tau^{t-1})(x)\big|_{x=1} = \int_0^x \tau^{s-1}\,(x-\tau)^{t-1}\,d\tau\big|_{x=1}.$$

Let us define an auxiliary function

$$\beta(s,t,x) = (\tau^{s-1} \overset{\mathcal{L}}{*} \tau^{t-1})(x) = \int_0^x \tau^{s-1}(x-\tau)^{t-1}\,d\tau,\; x > 0.$$

Its Laplace integral transform is given by the formula

$$\mathcal{L}\{\beta(x);p\} = \frac{\Gamma(s)}{p^s}\frac{\Gamma(t)}{p^t} = \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(t)}{p^{s+t}} \tag{57}$$

because of the operational relation (50) with $a = 0$ and the Borel convolution formula.

Again using the operational relation (50), we determine the function β with the Laplace transform given by (57) in the form:

$$\beta(s,t,x) = \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(t)}{\Gamma(s+t)} x^{s+t-1}. \tag{58}$$

Specifying the Formula (58) for $x = 1$, we receive the well-known representation of the Beta-function in terms of the Gamma-function:

$$B(s,t) = \int_0^x \tau^{s-1}(x-\tau)^{t-1}\,d\tau|_{x=1} = \beta(s,t,1) = \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(t)}{\Gamma(s+t)}.$$

As to the Mikusinski-type operational calculus associated with the Laplace integral transform, we start with the Volterra integral operator that is one of the generating operators for the Laplace integral transform. Indeed, this operator can be represented as the Laplace convolution of the functions f and $\{1\}$ ($\{1\}$ is the function that is identically equal to 1):

$$(\mathcal{V}f)(t) = (f \overset{\mathcal{L}}{*} \{1\})(t) = \int_0^t f(\tau)\,d\tau. \tag{59}$$

Evidently, the Volterra integral operator is a linear operator on $C[0,\infty)$ with the Laplace convolution as its convolution in the sense of Formula (17).

As stated by the well-known Titchmarsh theorem [23], the space of functions $C[0,\infty)$ equipped with the operations $+$ and $\overset{\mathcal{L}}{*}$ is a commutative ring without divisors of zero. The basic idea behind the classical Mikusinski operational calculus is an extension of this ring to a field of convolution quotients according to the schema presented in the previous section. The so constructed Mikusinski operational calculus is closely related with the first derivative $\frac{d}{dt}$ that is a left-inverse operator to the Volterra integral operator (59). The projector of the Volterra integral operator is given by the expression

$$\mathcal{P}f = f - \mathcal{V}\frac{df}{dt} = f(0). \tag{60}$$

It is worth mentioning that the projector (60) determines the form of the initial conditions for the differential equations that can be solved by applying the Mikusinski operational calculus.

4. The Mellin Integral Transform

In this section, some basic definitions and formulas for the Mellin integral transform are presented. The Mellin integral transform is one of the main tools for a treatment of the integral transforms of the Mellin convolution type, their convolutions and generating operators. More details regarding the Mellin integral transform, its properties and particular cases can be found in [4,24–29].

The Mellin integral transform of a sufficiently well-behaved function f at the point $s \in \mathbb{C}$ is defined as

$$\mathcal{M}\{f(t);s\} = f^*(s) = \int_0^{+\infty} f(t)t^{s-1}dt, \tag{61}$$

and the inverse Mellin integral transform as

$$f(t) = \mathcal{M}^{-1}\{f^*(s); t\} = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} f^*(s)t^{-s}ds, \ t > 0, \ \gamma = \Re(s), \tag{62}$$

where the integral is understood in the sense of the Cauchy principal value.

The Mellin integral transform can be interpreted as the Fourier integral transform changed by a variables substitution and by a rotation of the complex plane:

$$\mathcal{M}\{f(t); s\} = \int_0^{+\infty} f(t)t^{s-1}dt = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(e^t)e^{it(-is)}dt = \mathcal{F}\{f(e^t); -is\}.$$

The integral at the right-hand side of the Formula (61) is well defined, say, for the functions $f \in L^c(\epsilon, E)$, $0 < \epsilon < E < \infty$ that are continuous on the intervals $(0, \epsilon]$, $[E, +\infty)$ and satisfy the estimates $|f(t)| \le M t^{-\gamma_1}$ for $0 < t < \epsilon$, $|f(t)| \le M t^{-\gamma_2}$ for $t > E$, where M is a constant and $\gamma_1 < \gamma_2$. Under these conditions, the Mellin transform f^* exists and is an analytical function in the vertical strip $\gamma_1 < \Re(s) < \gamma_2$.

The Formula (62) for the inverse Mellin integral transform holds true at all points where the function f is continuous if f is piecewise differentiable, $f(t) \, t^{\gamma-1} \in L^c(0, +\infty)$, and its Mellin integral transform f^* is given by (61).

For the reader's convenience, we present in this section some important theorems concerning the Mellin integral transform (for the proofs see e.g., [29]).

Theorem 1. *Let f be a function of bounded variation in the neighborhood of a point $t = x$, $t^{\gamma-1}f(t) \in L(0, \infty)$, and*

$$F(s) = \mathcal{M}\{f(t), s\} = \int_0^{+\infty} f(t)t^{s-1}dt, \ s = \gamma + i\tau. \tag{63}$$

Then

$$\frac{f(x+0) + f(x-0)}{2} = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\lim_{T\to\infty}\int_{\gamma-iT}^{\gamma+iT} F(s)x^{-s}ds. \tag{64}$$

Theorem 2. *Let $F(s)$, $s = \gamma + i\tau$ be a function of bounded variation in the neighborhood of a point $\tau = x$, $F \in L(-\infty, +\infty)$, and*

$$f(t) = \mathcal{M}^{-1}\{F(s); t\} = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} F(s)t^{-s}ds. \tag{65}$$

Then

$$\frac{F(\gamma + i(x+0)) + F(\gamma + i(x-0))}{2} = \lim_{\lambda\to\infty}\int_{1/\lambda}^{\lambda} f(t)t^{\gamma+ix-1}dt. \tag{66}$$

To formulate other theorems, some special spaces of functions are first introduced. By $L_p(\mu(t); \mathbb{R}_+)$, $p \ge 1$ the space of functions summable in the Lebesgue sense on the interval $(0, +\infty)$ to the power p and with the weight $\mu(t) > 0$, $t > 0$ is denoted. The norm of the space $L_p(\mu(t); \mathbb{R}_+)$ is defined by

$$\|f\|_{L_p(\mu(t); \mathbb{R}_+)} = \left\{\int_0^\infty \mu(t)|f(t)|^p dt\right\}^{1/p} < \infty. \tag{67}$$

In particular, when $\mu(t) \equiv 1$, $t > 0$, the space $L_p(\mu(t); \mathbb{R}_+)$ is reduced to the usual L_p-space. While estimating the integrals in L_p, the Hölder inequality

$$\int_0^\infty |f(t)g(t)|dt \le \|f\|_{L_p(\mathbb{R}_+)}\|g\|_{L_q(\mathbb{R}_+)}, \tag{68}$$

where $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$ and the Minkowski inequality

$$\left\{ \int_0^\infty dx \left| \int_0^\infty f(x,y)dy \right|^p \right\}^{1/p} \leq \int_0^\infty dy \left\{ \int_0^\infty |f(x,y)|^p dx \right\}^{1/p} \tag{69}$$

are often used.

Theorem 3. *Let $f \in L_2(t^{2\gamma-1}; \mathbb{R}_+)$. Then the function*

$$f^*(s, \lambda) = \int_{1/\lambda}^\lambda f(t)t^{\gamma+i\tau-1}dt, \ s = \gamma + i\tau \tag{70}$$

converges in the norm of $L_2(\gamma - i\infty, \gamma + i\infty)$ to a function f^* and the function

$$f(t, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\lambda}^{\gamma+i\lambda} f^*(s)t^{-s}ds \tag{71}$$

converges in the norm of $L_2(t^{2\gamma-1}; \mathbb{R}_+)$ to the function f, i.e.,

$$\lim_{\lambda\to\infty} \int_0^\infty |f(t) - f(t,\lambda)|^2 t^{2\gamma-1}dt = 0. \tag{72}$$

Moreover, the Parseval equality

$$\int_0^\infty |f(t)|^2 t^{2\gamma-1}dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |f^*(\gamma+i\tau)|^2 d\tau \tag{73}$$

holds true.

Theorem 4. *Let $f \in L_2(t^{2\gamma-1}; \mathbb{R}_+)$, $g \in L_2(t^{1-2\gamma}; \mathbb{R}_+)$ and f^*, g^* be their Mellin integral transforms, respectively. Then the Mellin-Parseval equality*

$$\int_0^\infty f(t)g(t)dt = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} f^*(s)g^*(1-s)ds \tag{74}$$

holds true.

The Mellin convolution

$$(f \overset{\mathcal{M}}{*} g)(x) = \int_0^{+\infty} f(x/t)g(t)\frac{dt}{t} \tag{75}$$

is a very essential element of the integral transforms of the Mellin convolution type. Following [29], we formulate the following important theorem:

Theorem 5. *Let $f(t) t^{\gamma-1} \in L(0,\infty)$ and $g(t) t^{\gamma-1} \in L(0,\infty)$. Then the Mellin convolution $h = (f \overset{\mathcal{M}}{*} g)$ given by (75) is well defined, $h(x) x^{\gamma-1} \in L(0,\infty)$ and the convolution formula*

$$\mathcal{M}\left\{ (f \overset{\mathcal{M}}{*} g)(x); s \right\} = \mathcal{M}\{f(t); s\} \times \mathcal{M}\{g(t); s\} \tag{76}$$

holds true along with the Parseval equality

$$\int_0^{+\infty} f(x/t)g(t)\frac{dt}{t} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} f^*(s)g^*(s)x^{-s}ds. \tag{77}$$

In particular, the Parseval equality (77) can be employed while treating integrals of the Fourier *cos*- and *sin*-transforms type for $x > 0$:

$$I_c(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty f(t) \cos(t\,x)\,dt,$$

$$I_s(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty f(t) \sin(t\,x)\,dt.$$

Indeed, the integrals I_c and I_s can be interpreted as Mellin convolutions (75) of the function f and the functions

$$g_c(t) = \frac{1}{\pi\,x\,t} \cos\left(\frac{1}{t}\right),\; g_s(t) = \frac{1}{\pi\,x\,t} \sin\left(\frac{1}{t}\right),$$

respectively, evaluated at the point $1/x$.

The Mellin integral transforms of the functions g_c, g_s are well known ([26] or [27]):

$$g_c^*(s) = \mathcal{M}\{g_c(t); s\} = \frac{\Gamma(1-s)}{\pi\,x} \sin\left(\frac{\pi s}{2}\right),\; 0 < \Re(s) < 1,$$

$$g_s^*(s) = \mathcal{M}\{g_s(t); s\} = \frac{\Gamma(1-s)}{\pi\,x} \cos\left(\frac{\pi s}{2}\right),\; 0 < \Re(s) < 2.$$

Thus the integrals I_c and I_s can be represented by means of the Parseval equality (77) as follows:

$$I_c(x) = \frac{1}{\pi\,x} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} f^*(s)\,\Gamma(1-s) \sin\left(\frac{\pi s}{2}\right) x^s\,ds,\; x > 0,\; 0 < \gamma < 1,$$

$$I_s(x) = \frac{1}{\pi\,x} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} f^*(s)\,\Gamma(1-s) \cos\left(\frac{\pi s}{2}\right) x^s\,ds,\; x > 0,\; 0 < \gamma < 2.$$

In [4], the method presented above was employed to introduce the notion of the generalized *H*-transform.

In the applications, elementary properties of the Mellin integral transform are often employed. They are presented in the rest of this section.

Let us denote by $\overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow}$ the juxtaposition of a function f with its Mellin transform f^*. The basic Mellin transform rules are as follows:

$$f(at) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} a^{-s} f^*(s),\; a > 0, \tag{78}$$

$$t^p f(t) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} f^*(s+p), \tag{79}$$

$$f(t^p) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \frac{1}{|p|} f^*(s/p),\; p \neq 0, \tag{80}$$

$$f^{(n)}(t) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \frac{\Gamma(n+1-s)}{\Gamma(1-s)} f^*(s-n) \tag{81}$$

$$\text{if } \lim_{t\to 0} t^{s-k-1} f^{(k)}(t) = 0,\; k = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1,$$

$$\left(t\frac{d}{dt}\right)^n f(t) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} (-s)^n f^*(s), \tag{82}$$

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt}t\right)^n f(t) \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} (1-s)^n f^*(s). \tag{83}$$

In [24,26,27], the Mellin transforms of the elementary and many of the special functions are given. Here we list just some basic Mellin transform formulas that are often used in applications.

$$e^{-t^p} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{1}{|p|}\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{p}\right) \text{ if } \Re\left(\frac{s}{p}\right) > 0, \tag{84}$$

$$\frac{(1-t^p)_+^{\alpha-1}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{p}\right)}{|p|\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{p}+\alpha\right)} \text{ if } \Re(\alpha) > 0, \ \Re\left(\frac{s}{p}\right) > 0, \tag{85}$$

$$\frac{(t^p-1)_+^{\alpha-1}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma\left(1-\alpha-\frac{s}{p}\right)}{|p|\Gamma\left(1-\frac{s}{p}\right)} \text{ if } 0 < \Re(\alpha) < 1 - \Re\left(\frac{s}{p}\right), \tag{86}$$

$$\Gamma(\rho)(1+t)^{-\rho} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \Gamma(s)\Gamma(\rho-s) \text{ if } 0 < \Re(s) < \Re(\rho), \tag{87}$$

$$\frac{1}{\pi(1-t)} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(1-s)}{\Gamma(s+1/2)\Gamma(1/2-s)} \text{ if } 0 < \Re(s) < 1, \tag{88}$$

$$\frac{\sin(2\sqrt{t})}{\sqrt{\pi}} \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s+1/2)}{\Gamma(1-s)} \text{ if } |\Re(s)| < 1/2, \tag{89}$$

$$\sqrt{\pi}\,\mathrm{erf}\left(\sqrt{t}\right) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s+1/2)\Gamma(-s)}{\Gamma(1-s)} \text{ if } -1/2 < \Re(s) < 0, \tag{90}$$

$$J_\nu(2\sqrt{t}) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma\left(s+\frac{\nu}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(1+\frac{\nu}{2}-s\right)} \text{ if } -\Re\left(\frac{\nu}{2}\right) < \Re(s) < \frac{3}{4}, \tag{91}$$

$$2K_\nu(2\sqrt{t}) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \Gamma\left(s+\frac{\nu}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(s-\frac{\nu}{2}\right) \text{ if } \Re(s) > \frac{|\Re(\nu)|}{2}, \tag{92}$$

$$\frac{\Gamma(a)}{\Gamma(c)}{}_1F_1(a;c;-t) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(a-s)}{\Gamma(c-s)} \text{ if } 0 < \Re(s) < \Re(a), \tag{93}$$

$$|1-t|^{\mu/2}P_\nu^\mu(\sqrt{t}) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma\left(s+\frac{1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{1+\nu-\mu}{2}-s\right)\Gamma\left(-\frac{\mu+\nu}{2}-s\right)}{\pi 2^{\mu+1}\Gamma(1-\mu+\nu)\Gamma(-\mu-\nu)} \tag{94}$$
$$\text{if } 0 < \Re(s) < \min\left\{\frac{1+\Re(\nu-\mu)}{2}, -\frac{\Re(\nu+\mu)}{2}\right\},$$

$$\frac{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)}{\Gamma(c)}{}_2F_1(a,b;c;-t) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(a-s)\Gamma(b-s)}{\Gamma(c-s)} \tag{95}$$
$$\text{if } 0 < \Re(s) < \min\{\Re(a), \Re(b)\},$$

$$\frac{(1-t)_+^{c-1}}{\Gamma(c)}{}_2F_1(a,b;c;1-t) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\Gamma(s)\Gamma(s+c-a-b)}{\Gamma(s+c-a)\Gamma(s+c-b)} \text{ if } 0 < \Re(s), \tag{96}$$
$$0 < \Re(c), \ 0 < \Re(s+c-a-b),$$

$$_pF_q((a)_p;(b)_q;-t) \quad \overset{\mathcal{M}}{\leftrightarrow} \quad \frac{\prod_{j=1}^q \Gamma(b_j)}{\prod_{j=1}^p \Gamma(a_j)} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^p \Gamma(a_j-s)\Gamma(s)}{\prod_{j=1}^q \Gamma(b_j-s)} \tag{97}$$
$$\text{if } 0 < \Re(s) < \min_{1\le j\le p} \Re(a_j),$$
$$b_k \ne 0, -1, \ldots, \ 1 \le k \le q$$
$$\text{and}$$
$$(1)\ q = p - 1 \text{ or}$$
$$(2)\ q = p \text{ or}$$
$$(3)\ q = p + 1 \text{ and}$$
$$\Re(s) < \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\left(\Re\left(\sum_{j=1}^p a_j - \sum_{j=1}^q b_j\right)\right),$$

where J_ν is the Bessel function, K_ν is the Macdonald function, P_ν^μ denotes the Legendre function of the first kind, and $_pF_q((a)_p;(b)_q;z)$ stands for the generalized hypergeometric function.

As to applications of the Mellin integral transform, we mention here its applications in the theory of the integral transform of the Mellin convolution type [4], for evaluation of improper integrals [26,27], in the theory of special functions of the hypergeometric type [26], for construction of the operational calculi of Mikusinski type for the compositions of the fractional Erdelyi-Kober derivatives [5], for derivation of the fundamental solutions to the space-time fractional diffusion equation [30,31], for analysis of the multi-dimensional fractional diffusion-wave equations [32], for derivation of the subordination principles for the multi-dimensional space-time-fractional diffusion-wave equation [33], and for several other important problems in Fractional Calculus [34].

5. Conclusions

In this survey article, we considered some elements of theory and applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics. These integral transforms are not arbitrary integral transforms but those possessing well defined inverse integral transforms and generating operators. The basic constructions for most of applications of these integral transforms are their convolutions and generating operators. They lead to some simple and efficient solution methods for the corresponding integral, differential, and integro-differential equations. Another important technique for applications of the integral transforms is the Mikusinski-type operational calculi that were also discussed in the article.

The general schemata for applications of the integral transforms of mathematical physics were illustrated in detail by considering the Laplace integral transform. Similar, but more complicated constructions and solution methods are valid for the general H-transform as a generalization of the Laplace integral transform. In this case, the "integral" generating operators are in form of the compositions of the fractional Erdelyi-Kober right- and left-hand sided fractional integrals and derivatives. Their left-inverse "differential" operators are in form of certain compositions of the fractional Erdelyi-Kober left- and right-hand sided fractional derivatives and integrals. The convolutions of the general H-transform can be constructed in explicit form as some multiple integrals.

In the article, some basic elements of the Mellin integral transform were discussed, too. The Mellin integral transform is a foundation for the theory of the Mellin convolution type integral transforms in general and of the H-transform in particular. For details we refer the interested readers to [4] or [5–8].

References

1. Davies, B. *Integral Transforms and Their Applications*; Springer: New York, NY, USA, 2002.
2. Debnath, L.; Bhatta, D. *Integral Transforms and Their Applications*, 3rd ed.; Chapman and Hall/CRC: Boca Raton, FL, USA, 2014.
3. Tranter, C.J. *Integral Transforms in Mathematical Physics*; Methuen: York, UK, 1971.
4. Yakubovich, S.B.; Luchko, Y.F. *The Hypergeometric Approach to Integral Transforms and Convolutions*; Kluwer: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1994.
5. Luchko, Y.F. Some Operational Relations for the H-Transforms and Their Applications. Ph.D. Thesis, Belarusian State University, Minsk, Belarus, 1993. (In Russian)
6. Luchko, Y. Operational method in fractional calculus. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **1999**, *2*, 463–489.
7. Luchko, Y. Operational rules for a mixed operator of the Erdélyi-Kober type. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2004**, *7*, 339–364.
8. Luchko, Y. Integral transforms of the Mellin convolution type and their generating operators. *Integr. Transf. Spec. Funct.* **2008**, *19*, 809–851. [CrossRef]
9. Fedoryuk, M.V. Integral transforms. *Itogi Nauki i Techniki* **1986**, *13*, 211–253. (In Russian)
10. Berg, L. Operational calculus in linear spaces. *Stud. Math.* **1961**, *20*, 1–18.
11. Ditkin, V.A.; Prudnikov, A.P. *Operational Calculus*; Nauka: Moscow, Russia, 1975. (In Russian)

12. Erdelyi, A. *Operational Calculus and Generalized Functions*; Holt, Rinehart and Winston: New York, NY, USA, 1962.
13. Mikusinski, J. *Operational Calculus*; Oxford University Press: Oxford, UK, 1959.
14. Yosida, K. *Operational Calculus. A Theory of Hyperfunctions*; Springer: Berlin, Germany; New York, NY, USA, 1984.
15. Dimovski, I.H. *Convolutional Calculus*; Publ. House of the Bulgarian Academy of Sciences: Sofia, Bulgaria, 1982.
16. Churchill, R.V. *Operational Mathematics*; McGraw-Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1958.
17. Doetsch, G. *Handbuch der Laplace-Transformation*; Bd. I-IV; Birkhauser Verlag: Basel, Switzerland, 1956.
18. Oberhettinger, F. *Tables of Laplace Transforms*; Springer: New York, NY, USA, 1973.
19. Prudnikov, A.P.; Brychkov, Y.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Integrals and Series*: *Direct Laplace Transforms*; Gordon and Breach: New York, NY, USA, 1992; Volume 4.
20. Prudnikov, A.P.; Brychkov, Y.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Integrals and Series*: *Inverse Laplace Transforms*; Gordon and Breach: New York, NY, USA, 1992; Volume 5.
21. Widder, D.V. *The Laplace Transform*; Oxford University Press: Oxford, UK, 1946.
22. Evgrafov, M.A. Series and integral representations. *Itogi Nauki i Techniki* **1986**, *13*, 5–92. (In Russian)
23. Titchmarsh, E.C. The zeros of certain integral functions. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc.* **1926**, *25*, 283–302. [CrossRef]
24. Erdelyi, A.; Magnus, W.; Oberhettinger, F.; Tricomi, F.G. *Tables of Integral Transforms*; McGraw-Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1954; Volumes 1–2.
25. Gradshteyn, I.H.; Ryzhik, I.M. *Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products*, 6th ed.; Academic Press: San Diego, CA, USA, 2000.
26. Marichev, O.I. *Handbook of Integral Transforms of Higher Transcendental Functions, Theory and Algorithmic Tables*; Ellis Horwood: Chichester, UK, 1983.
27. Prudnikov, A.P.; Brychkov, Y.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Integrals and Series*: *More Special Functions*; Gordon and Breach: New York, NY, USA, 1989; Volume 3.
28. Prudnikov, A.P.; Brychkov, Y.A.; Marichev, O.I. Evaluation of Integrals and the Mellin Transform. *Itogi Nauki i Tekhniki Seriya Matematicheskii Analiz* **1989**, *27*, 3–146. (In Russian)
29. Titchmarsh, E.C. *Introduction to theory of Fourier integrals*; Oxford University Press: Oxford, UK, 1937.
30. Gorenflo, R.; Iskenderov, A.; Luchko, Y. Mapping between solutions of fractional diffusion-wave equations. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2000**, *3*, 75–86.
31. Mainardi, F.; Luchko, Y.; Pagnini, G. The fundamental solution of the space-time fractional diffusion equation. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2001**, *4*, 153–192.
32. Boyadjiev, L.; Luchko, Y. Mellin integral transform approach to analyze the multidimensional diffusion-wave equations. *Chaos Solitons Fract.* **2017**, *102*, 127–134. [CrossRef]
33. Luchko, Y. Subordination principles for the multi-dimensional space-time-fractional diffusion-wave equation. *Theory Probab. Math. Stat.* **2018**, *98*, 121–141.
34. Luchko, Y.; Kiryakova, V. The Mellin integral transform in fractional calculus. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2013**, *16*, 405–430. [CrossRef]

mathematics

MDPI

Review

Evaluation of Fractional Integrals and Derivatives of Elementary Functions: Overview and Tutorial

Roberto Garrappa [1,2,*], **Eva Kaslik** [3] **and Marina Popolizio** [2,4]

1   Department of Mathematics, University of Bari, Via E. Orabona 4, 70126 Bari, Italy
2   Member of the INdAM Research Group GNCS, Istituto Nazionale di Alta Matematica "Francesco Severi", Piazzale Aldo Moro 5, 00185 Rome, Italy; marina.popolizio@poliba.it
3   Department of Mathematics and Computer Science, West University of Timisoara, Bd. V. Parvan 4, 300223 Timisoara, Romania; eva.kaslik@e-uvt.ro
4   Department of Electrical and Information Engineering, Polytechnic University of Bari, Via E. Orabona 4, 70126 Bari, Italy
*   Correspondence: roberto.garrappa@uniba.it

Abstract: Several fractional-order operators are available and an in-depth knowledge of the selected operator is necessary for the evaluation of fractional integrals and derivatives of even simple functions. In this paper, we reviewed some of the most commonly used operators and illustrated two approaches to generalize integer-order derivatives to fractional order; the aim was to provide a tool for a full understanding of the specific features of each fractional derivative and to better highlight their differences. We hence provided a guide to the evaluation of fractional integrals and derivatives of some elementary functions and studied the action of different derivatives on the same function. In particular, we observed how Riemann–Liouville and Caputo's derivatives converge, on long times, to the Grünwald–Letnikov derivative which appears as an ideal generalization of standard integer-order derivatives although not always useful for practical applications.

Keywords: fractional derivative; fractional integral; Mittag–Leffler function; Riemann–Liouville derivative; Caputo derivative; Grünwald–Letnikov derivative

---

1. Introduction

Fractional calculus, the branch of calculus devoted to the study of integrals and derivatives of non integer order, is nowadays extremely popular due to a large extent of its applications to real-life problems (see, for instance, [1–8]).

Although this subject is as old as the more classic integer-order calculus, its development and diffusion mainly started to take place no more than 20 or 30 years ago. As a consequence, several important results in fractional calculus are still not completely known or understood by non-specialists, and this topic is usually not taught in undergraduate courses.

The presence of more than one type of fractional derivative is sometimes a source of confusion and it is not occasional to find wrong or not completely rigorous results in distinguished journals as well. Even the simple evaluation of a fractional integral or derivative of elementary functions is in some cases not reported in a correct way, which is also due to the difficulty of properly handling the different operators.

For instance, in regards to the exponential, the sine and the cosine functions, the usual and well-known relationships:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}t^n}e^{t\Omega} = \Omega^n e^{t\Omega}, \qquad \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}t^n}\sin t\Omega = \Omega^n \sin\left(t\Omega + \frac{n\pi}{2}\right), \qquad \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}t^n}\cos t\Omega = \Omega^n \cos\left(t\Omega + \frac{n\pi}{2}\right), \quad (1)$$

which hold for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and turn out extremely useful for simplifying a lot of mathematical derivations, are in general no longer true with fractional derivatives, unless a very special definition is used, which presents some not secondary drawbacks.

The main aim of this paper is to provide a tutorial for the evaluation of fractional integrals and derivatives of some elementary functions and to show the main differences resulting from the action of different types of fractional derivatives. At the same time, we present an alternative perspective for the derivation of some of the most commonly used fractional derivatives in order to help the reader to better interpret the results obtained from their application.

In particular, the more widely used definitions of fractional derivatives, namely those known as Grünwald–Letnikov, Riemann–Liouville and Caputo, are introduced according to two approaches: One based on the inversion of the generalization of the integer-order integral and the other based on the more direct generalization of the limit of the difference quotients defining integer-order derivatives. Although they lead to equivalent results, the second and less usual approach allows for a more comprehensive understanding of the nature of the different operators and a better explanation of the effects produced on elementary functions. In particular we will observe when relationships similar to Equation (1) apply to fractional derivatives and the way in which fractional derivatives deviate from Equation (1).

Some of the material presented in this paper is clearly not new (proper references will be given through the paper). Nevertheless, we think that it is important to collect in a single paper a series of results which are scattered among several references or are not clearly exposed, thus to provide a systematic treatment and a guide for researchers approaching fractional calculus for the first time.

The paper is organized as follows: In Section 2 we recall the fractional Riemann–Liouville integral and some definitions of fractional derivatives relying on its inversion. We hence present in Section 3 a different view of the same definitions by showing, in a step-by-step way, how they can be obtained as a generalization of the limit of different quotients defining standard integer-order derivatives after operating a replacement of the function to cope with convergence difficulties. Since the Mittag–Leffler (ML) function plays an important role in fractional calculus, and indeed most of the results on derivatives of elementary functions will be based on this function, Section 4 is devoted to present this function and some of its main properties; in particular, we provide a useful result on the asymptotic behavior of the ML function which allows to investigate the relationships between the action of the different fractional derivatives on the same function. Sections 5–7 are devoted to presenting the evaluation of derivatives of some elementary functions (power, exponential and sine and cosine functions), to study their properties and to highlight the different effects of the various operators. Clearly the results on the few elementary functions considered in this paper may be adopted as a guide to extend the investigation to further and more involved functions. Some concluding remarks are finally presented in Section 8.

2. Fractional Derivatives as Inverses of the Fractional Riemann–Liouville Integral

To simplify the reading of this paper we recall in this Section the most common definitions in fractional calculus and review some of their properties. For a more comprehensive introduction to fractional integrals and fractional derivatives we refer the reader to any of the available textbooks [3,5,9–12] or review papers [13,14]. In particular, we follow here the approach based on the generalization, to any real positive order, of standard integer-order integrals and on the introduction of fractional derivatives as their inverse operators. We therefore start by recalling the well-known definition of the fractional Riemann–Liouville (RL) integral.

Definition 1. *For a function $f \in L^1\big([t_0, T]\big)$ the RL integral of order $\alpha > 0$ and origin t_0 is defined as:*

$$J_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^{t} (t - \tau)^{\alpha-1} f(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau, \quad \forall t \in (t_0, T].$$

(2)

As usual, $L^1([t_0, T])$ denotes the set of Lebesgue integrable functions on $[t_0, T]$ and $\Gamma(x)$ is the Euler gamma function

$$\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty t^{x-1} e^{-t} dt, \tag{3}$$

a function playing an important role in fractional calculus since it generalizes the factorial to real arguments; it is indeed possible to verify that $\Gamma(x+1) = x\Gamma(x)$ and hence, since $\Gamma(1) = 1$, it is:

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n! \text{ for any } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

It is due to the above fundamental property of the Euler gamma function that the RL integral (2) can be viewed as a straightforward extension of standard n-fold repeated integrals:

$$\int_{t_0}^t \int_{t_0}^{\tau_1} \cdots \int_{t_0}^{\tau_{n-1}} f(\tau_n) \, d\tau_n \cdots d\tau_2 \, d\tau_1 = \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \int_{t_0}^t (t-\tau)^{n-1} f(\tau) d\tau$$

where it is sufficient to replace the integer n with any real $\alpha > 0$ to obtain RL integral (2).

In the special case of the starting point $t_0 \to -\infty$ the integral on the whole real axis:

$$J_{-\infty}^\alpha f(t) = \lim_{t_0 \to -\infty} J_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{-\infty}^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1} f(\tau) d\tau, \quad t \in \mathbb{R}, \tag{4}$$

is usually referred to as the Liouville (left-sided) fractional integral (see [12] (Chapter 5) or [10] (§2.3)) and satisfies similar properties as the integer-order integral, such as $J_{-\infty}^\alpha e^{\Omega t} = \Omega^{-\alpha} e^{\Omega t}$.

Once a robust definition for fractional-order integrals is available, as the RL integral (2), fractional derivatives can be introduced as their left-inverses in a similar way as standard integer-order derivatives are the inverse operators of the corresponding integrals.

To this purpose let us denote with $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ the smallest integer greater or equal to α and, since $m - \alpha > 0$, consider the RL integral $J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha}$. Thanks to the semigroup property $J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} J_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = J_{t_0}^m f(t)$ [9] (Theorem 2.1) which returns an integer-order integral, it is sufficient to apply the integer-order derivative D^m to obtain the identity:

$$D^m J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} J_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = D^m J_{t_0}^m f(t) = f(t);$$

the concatenation $D^m J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha}$ hence provides the left-inverse of $J_{t_0}^\alpha$ and therefore justifies the following definition of the RL fractional derivative.

Definition 2. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. The RL fractional derivative of order α and starting point t_0 is:*

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) := D^m J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(m-\alpha)} \frac{d^m}{dt^m} \int_{t_0}^t (t-\tau)^{m-\alpha-1} f(\tau) d\tau, \quad t > t_0. \tag{5}$$

The RL derivative (5) is not the only left inverse of $J_{t_0}^\alpha$ and in applications, a different operator is usually preferred. One of the major drawbacks of the RL derivative is that it requires to be initialized by means of fractional integrals and fractional derivatives. To fully understand this issue it is useful to consider the following result on the Laplace transform (LT) of the RL derivative [10].

Proposition 1. *Let $\alpha > 0$ and $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$. The LT of the RL derivative of a function $f(t)$ is:*

$$\mathcal{L}\left(^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) \, ; \, s\right) = s^\alpha F(s) - \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} s^{m-1-j} \, ^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha-m+j} f(t)\Big|_{t=t_0^+} - s^{m-1} J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} f(t)\Big|_{t=t_0^+},$$

with $F(s)$ the LT of $f(t)$.

A consequence of this result is that fractional differential equations (FDEs) with the RL derivative need to be initialized with the same kind of values. The uniqueness of the solution $y(t)$ of a FDE requires that initial conditions on $J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} y(t)\big|_{t=t_0^+}$ and $^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha-m+j} y(t)\big|_{t=t_0^+}$, $j = 1, \ldots, m-1$, are assigned (e.g., see [9] (Theorem 5.1) or [10] (Chapter 3)).

In the majority of applications, however, these values are not available because they do not have a clear physical meaning and therefore the description of the initial state of a system is quite difficult when the RL derivative is involved. This is one of the reasons which motivated the introduction of the alternative fractional Caputo's derivative obtained by simply interchanging differentiation and integration in RL Derivative (5).

Definition 3. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. For a function $f \in A^m\left([t_0, T]\right)$, i.e., such that $f^{(m-1)}$ is absolutely continuous, the Caputo's derivative is defined as:*

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t) := J_{t_0}^{m-\alpha} D^m f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(m-\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^{t} (t-\tau)^{m-\alpha-1} f^{(m)}(\tau) d\tau, \quad t > t_0, \tag{6}$$

where D^m and $f^{(m)}$ denote integer-order derivatives.

Unlike the RL derivative, the LT of the Caputo's derivative is initialized by standard initial values expressed in terms of integer-order derivatives, as summarized in the following result [9].

Proposition 2. *Let $\alpha > 0$ and $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$. The LT of the Caputo's derivative of a function $f(t)$ is:*

$$\mathcal{L}\left(^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t); s\right) = s^{\alpha} F(s) - \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} s^{\alpha-1-j} f^{(j)}(t_0),$$

with $F(s)$ the LT of $f(t)$.

It is a clear consequence of the above result that FDEs with the Caputo's derivative require, to ensure the uniqueness of the solution $y(t)$, the assignment of initial conditions in the more traditional Cauchy form $y^{(j)}(t_0) = y_{0,j}$, $j = 0, 1, \ldots, m-1$, thus allowing a more convenient application to real-life problems.

Although different, the Caputo's derivative shares with the RL derivative the property of being the left inverse of the RL integral since $^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} J_{t_0}^{\alpha} f = f$ [9] (Theorem 3.7). However, $^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}$ is not the right inverse of $J_{t_0}^{\alpha}$ since [9] (Theorem 3.8),

$$J_{t_0}^{\alpha} {}^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t) = f(t) - T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t), \tag{7}$$

where $T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t)$ is the Taylor polynomial of f centered at t_0,

$$T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t) = \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{(t-t_0)^k}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0). \tag{8}$$

The polynomial $T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t)$ is important for establishing the relationship between fractional derivatives of RL and Caputo type. After differentiating both sides of Formula (7) in the RL sense it is possible to derive:

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t) = {}^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}\left(f(t) - T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t)\right). \tag{9}$$

Although several other definitions of fractional integrals and derivatives have been introduced in the last years, we confine our treatment to the above operators which are the most popular; the utility and the nature of some of the operators recently proposed is indeed still under scientific debate and

we refer, for instance, to [15–19] for a critical analysis of the properties which a fractional derivative should (or should not) satisfy.

3. Fractional Derivatives as Limits of Difference Quotients

To better focus on their main characteristic features, we take a look at the fractional derivatives introduced in the previous section from an alternative perspective. We start from recalling the usual definition of the integer-order derivative based on the limit of the difference quotient:

$$f'(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t) - f(t-h)}{h},$$

where obviously we assume that the above limit exists. By recursion this definition can be generalized to higher orders and, indeed, it is simple to evaluate:

$$f''(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f'(t) - f'(t-h)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t) - 2f(t-h) + f(t-2h)}{h^2}$$
$$f'''(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f''(t-h) - f''(t)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t) - 3f(t-h) + 3f(t-2h) - f(t-3h)}{h^3}$$

and, more generally, to prove the following result whose proof is straightforward and hence omitted.

Proposition 3. *Let $t \in \mathbb{R}$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and assume the function f to be n-times differentiable. Then,*

$$f^{(n)}(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^n} \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j \binom{n}{j} f(t - jh), \tag{10}$$

where the binomial coefficients are defined as:

$$\binom{n}{j} = \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-j+1)}{j!} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{n!}{j!(n-j)!} & j = 0, 1, \ldots, n, \\ 0 & j > n. \end{cases} \tag{11}$$

Formula (10) is of interest since a possible generalization to fractional-order can be proposed by replacing the integer n with any real $\alpha > 0$. While this replacement in the power h^n of Formula (10) is straightforward, some difficulties arise in the other two instances of the integer-order n in Formula (10): the upper limit of the summation cannot be replaced by a real number and the binomial coefficients must be properly defined for real parameters.

The first difficulty can be easily overcome since binomial coefficients vanish when $j > n$. Thus, since no contribution in the summation is given from the presence of terms with $j > n$, the upper limit in Formula (10) can be raised to any value greater than n and, hence, the finite summation in Formula (10) can be replaced with the infinite series:

$$f^{(n)}(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^n} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{n}{j} f(t - jh). \tag{12}$$

To extend binomial coefficients and cope with real parameters we use again the Euler gamma function in place of factorials in Formula (11); generalized binomial coefficients are hence defined as:

$$\binom{\alpha}{j} = \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)\cdots(\alpha-j+1)}{j!} = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}{j!\Gamma(\alpha-j+1)}, \quad j = 0, 1, \ldots. \tag{13}$$

Note that the above binomial coefficients are the coefficients in the binomial series:

$$(1-x)^\alpha = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} x^j \tag{14}$$

which for real $\alpha > 0$ converges when $|x| \leq 1$. However, they do not vanish anymore for $j > \alpha$ when $\alpha \notin \mathbb{N}$.

Combining Equation (12) with Equation (13) provides the main justification for the following extension of the integer-order derivative (10) to any real order $\alpha > 0$ which was proposed independently, and almost simultaneously, by Grünwald [20] and Letnikov [21].

Definition 4. *Let $\alpha > 0$. The Grünwald–Letnikov (GL) fractional derivative of order α is:*

$$^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha f(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f(t - jh), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}. \tag{15}$$

Referring to Equation (15) as the Grünwald–Letnikov fractional derivative is quite common in the literature (e.g., see [10] (§2.8) or [12] (§20)). Moreover, once a starting point t_0 has been assigned, for practical reasons the following (truncated) Grünwald–Letnikov fractional derivative [9,22] is often preferred since it can be applied to functions not defined (or simply not known) in $(-\infty, t_0)$.

Definition 5. *Let $\alpha > 0$ and $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. The (truncated) GL fractional derivative of order α is:*

$$^{\mathrm{GL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f(t - jh), \quad N = \left\lceil \frac{t - t_0}{h} \right\rceil, \quad t > t_0. \tag{16}$$

Although they are both named as Grünwald–Letnikov derivatives, $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha$ and $^{\mathrm{GL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha$ are different operators. We note however, that $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha$ corresponds to $^{\mathrm{GL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha$ when $t_0 \to -\infty$, namely $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha = {}^{\mathrm{GL}}D_{-\infty}^\alpha$.

There is a close relationship between the RL derivative and Equation (16). Indeed, it is possible to see that whenever $f \in \mathcal{C}^m[t_0, T]$, with $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$, then [9] (Theorem 2.25),

$$^{\mathrm{GL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = {}^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t), \quad t \in (t_0, T]. \tag{17}$$

The GL derivative (15) possesses similar properties to integer-order derivatives, such as $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha t^k = 0$, for $k < \alpha$, and generalizes in a straightforward way the relationships of Equation (1) since, for instance $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha e^{\Omega t} = \Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ when $\operatorname{Re}\Omega \geq 0$ (we will better investigate these properties later on). Since this last relationship was the starting point of Liouville for the construction of the fractional calculus, the derivative (15) is sometimes recognized as the Liouville derivative (we refer to some papers on this operator and its application, for instance, in signal theory [23,24]).

It is also worthwhile to remark that the GL derivative (15) is closely related to the Marchaud derivative as discussed, for instance, in [12] (Chapter 20) and [25].

Another interesting feature is the correspondence between the standard Cauchy's integral formula:

$$f^{(n)}(z) = \frac{n!}{2\pi \mathrm{i}} \int_{\mathcal{C}} \frac{f(u)}{(u - z)^{n+1}} \mathrm{d}u, \quad z \in \mathbb{C}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N},$$

and its analogous generalized Cauchy fractional derivative which, as proved in [23], once $\mathcal{C}$ is chosen as a complex U-shaped contour encircling the selected branch cut, it is equivalent to $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha$, namely:

$$^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha f(z) = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha + 1)}{2\pi \mathrm{i}} \int_{\mathcal{C}} \frac{f(u)}{(u - z)^{\alpha+1}} \mathrm{d}u, \quad z \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \alpha > 0.$$

In view of all these attractive properties, the GL derivative $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha$ may appear as the ideal generalization, to any positive real order, of the integer-order derivative. Unfortunately, there are instead serious issues discouraging the use of the GL derivative in most applications. We observe that:

- The evaluation of $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha f(t)$ at any point t requires the knowledge of the function $f(t)$ over the whole interval $(-\infty, t]$;

- The series (15) converges only for a restricted range of functions, as for instance for bounded functions in $(-\infty, t]$ or functions which do not increase too fast for $t \to -\infty$ (we refer to [12] (§4.20) for a discussion about the convergence of $^{GL}D^{\alpha}$).

To face the above difficulties, the function $f(t)$ can be replaced with some related functions. Two main options are commonly used to perform this replacement and, as we will see, they actually lead to the RL and Caputo's fractional derivatives introduced in the previous Section.

3.1. Replacement with a Discontinuous Function: The RL Derivative

Once a starting point t_0 has been selected, the function $f(t)$ can be replaced, as illustrated in Figure 1, by a function $f^R(t)$ which is equal to f for $t \geq t_0$ and equal to 0 otherwise:

$$f^R(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & t \in (-\infty, t_0) \\ f(t) & t \geq t_0 \end{cases} ;$$

namely all the past history of the function f is assumed to be equal to 0 before t_0.
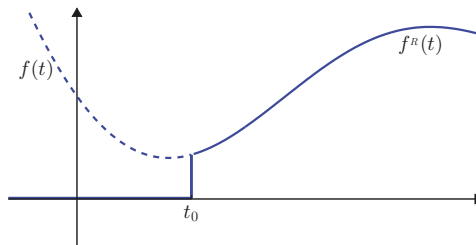
Figure 1. Replacement of $f(t)$ (dotted and solid lines) by $f^R(t)$ (solid line) for a given point t_0.

It is quite intuitive to observe the following relationship between the GL derivative of $f^R(t)$ and the truncated GL derivative (16) of the original function $f(t)$ and, in the end, of its RL derivative.

Proposition 4. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $f \in \mathcal{C}^m[t_0, T]$. Then, for any $t \in (t_0, T]$ it is:*

$$^{GL}D^{\alpha} f^R(t) = {}^{GL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t) = {}^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t).$$

Proof. The application of the GL fractional derivative $^{GL}D^{\alpha}$ to $f^R(t)$ leads to:

$$^{GL}D^{\alpha} f^R(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^{\alpha}} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f^R(t - jh) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^{\alpha}} \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f(t - jh)$$

where $N = \lceil (t - t_0)/h \rceil$ is the smallest integer such that $f^R(t - jh) \equiv 0$ for $j = N+1, N+2, \ldots$ and hence $^{GL}D^{\alpha} f^R(t) = {}^{GL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} f(t)$. The second equality comes from (17). $\square$

Unless $f(t_0) = 0$, the replacement of $f(t)$ with $f^R(t)$ introduces a discontinuity at t_0 and, even when $f(t_0) = 0$, the function $f^R(t)$ may suffer from a lack of regularity at t_0 due to the discontinuity of its higher-order derivatives. As we will see, this discontinuity seriously affects the RL derivative of several functions which, indeed, are often unbounded at t_0. Therefore, to provide a regularization and reduce the lack of smoothness introduced by $f^R(t)$, a different replacement is proposed.

3.2. Replacement with a More Regular Function: The Caputo's Derivative

An alternative approach is based on the replacement, as depicted in Figure 2, of $f(t)$ with a function having a more regular behavior at t_0, and whose regularity depends on α. The proposed function is a continuation of $f(t)$ before t_0 in terms of its Taylor polynomial at t_0, namely:

$$f^C(t) = \begin{cases} T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t) & t \in (-\infty, t_0) \\ f(t) & t \geq t_0 \end{cases}$$

where $T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t)$ is the same Taylor polynomial of f centered at t_0 introduced in (8) and $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$. It is clear that, unlike $f^R(t)$, the function $f^C(t)$ preserves a possible smoothness of $f(t)$ at t_0 since:

$$f^C(t)\Big|_{t \to t_0^-} = f(t_0), \quad \frac{d}{dt} f^C(t)\Big|_{t \to t_0^-} = f'(t_0), \quad \ldots, \quad \frac{d^{m-1}}{dt^{m-1}} f^C(t)\Big|_{t \to t_0^-} = f^{(m-1)}(t_0).$$
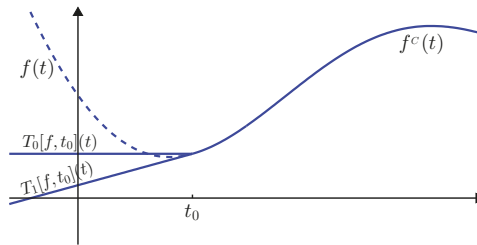
Figure 2. Replacement of $f(t)$ (dotted and solid lines) by $f^C(t)$ (solid line) for a given point t_0 and for $m = 0$ (branch labeled $T_0[f, t_0](t)$) and $m = 1$ (branch labeled $T_1[f, t_0](t)$).

Before showing the effects of the replacement of $f(t)$ by $f^C(t)$ we first have to consider the following preliminary result.

Lemma 1. *Let $\alpha > 0$ and $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$. For any integer $k = 0, 1, \ldots, m - 1$ it is:*

$$\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1) \binom{\alpha}{j} j^k = 0.$$

Proof. When $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$ we refer to [26] (Proposition 2.1). Assume now $\alpha \notin \mathbb{N}$ and, after using the alternative formulation of the binomial coefficients, one obtains:

$$\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1) \binom{\alpha}{j} j^k = \frac{1}{\Gamma(-\alpha)} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(j - \alpha)}{\Gamma(j + 1)} j^k.$$

From [26] (Theorem 3.2) we know that the following asymptotic expansion holds:

$$\sum_{j=0}^{n} \frac{\Gamma(j - \alpha)}{\Gamma(j + 1)} j^k = \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} F_\ell n^{k - \alpha - \ell}, \quad n \to \infty,$$

with coefficients F_ℓ depending on α and k but not on n. The proof hence immediately follows since $k - \alpha < 0$. □

We are now able to study the relationship between the GL derivative of $f^C(t)$ and the truncated GL derivative (16) and the Caputo's derivative (6) of $f(t)$.

Proposition 5. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $f \in \mathcal{C}^m[t_0, T]$. Then, for any $t \in (t_0, T]$ it is:*

$$^{GL}D^\alpha f^C(t) = {}^{GL}D^\alpha_{t_0} \Big(f(t) - T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t) \Big) = {}^{C}D^\alpha_{t_0} f(t).$$

Proof. The application of the GL fractional derivative $^{GL}D^\alpha$ to $f^C(t)$ leads to:

$$^{GL}D^\alpha f^C(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f^C(t - jh)$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \left[\sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} f(t - jh) + \sum_{j=N+1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t - jh) \right]$$

Observe now that:

$$T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t - jh) = \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{(t - jh - t_0)^k}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0) = \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{1}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0) \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} (t - t_0)^\ell (-jh)^{k-\ell}$$

and hence,

$$\sum_{j=N+1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t - jh) = \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{1}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0) \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} (-h)^{k-\ell} (t - t_0)^\ell \sum_{j=N+1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} j^{k-\ell}.$$

Since from Lemma 1 it is:

$$\sum_{j=N+1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} j^k = - \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} j^k$$

we obtain,

$$\sum_{j=N+1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t - jh) = - \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{1}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0) \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} (-h)^{k-\ell} (t - t_0)^\ell \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} j^{k-\ell}$$

$$= - \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{1}{k!} f^{(k)}(t_0) \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} (-hj)^{k-\ell} (t - t_0)^\ell$$

$$= - \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} T_{m-1}[f; t_0](t - jh)$$

from which the first equality follows. The second equality is consequence of Proposition 4 together with Equation (9). □

4. The Mittag–Leffler Function

The Mittag–Leffler (ML) function plays a special role in fractional calculus and in the representation of fractional derivatives of elementary functions and will be better investigated later on. It is therefore mandatory to recall some of the main properties of this function.

The definition of the two-parameter ML function is given by:

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^k}{\Gamma(\alpha k + \beta)}, \quad z \in \mathbb{C}, \tag{18}$$

where α and β are two (possibly complex, but with $\operatorname{Re} \alpha > 0$) parameters.

The importance of the ML function in fractional calculus is particularly related to the fact that it is the eigenfunction of RL and Caputo's fractional derivatives. It is indeed possible to show that for any $t > t_0$ and $j = 0, 1, \ldots, m - 1$, with $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$, it is:

$$^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}y(t) = \Omega y(t), \quad y(t) = (t - t_0)^{\alpha - j - 1} E_{\alpha, \alpha - j}\big(\Omega(t - t_0)^{\alpha}\big),$$
$$^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}y(t) = \Omega y(t), \quad y(t) = (t - t_0)^{j} E_{\alpha, j + 1}\big(\Omega(t - t_0)^{\alpha}\big),$$

and therefore the ML function has in fractional calculus the same importance as the exponential in the integer-order calculus (indeed, the ML function generalizes the exponential since $E_{1,1}(z) = e^z$).

It is useful to introduce the Laplace transform (LT) of the ML function which, for any real $t > 0$ and $z \in \mathbb{C}$, is given by:

$$\mathcal{L}\left(t^{\beta - 1} E_{\alpha, \beta}(t^{\alpha} z) ; s\right) = \frac{s^{\alpha - \beta}}{s^{\alpha} - z}, \quad \mathrm{Re}\, s > 0, \quad |z s^{-\alpha}| < 1, \tag{19}$$

and, for convenience, we impose a branch cut on the negative real semi-axis in order to make the function s^{α} single valued.

The special instance $E_{1,\beta}(z)$ of the ML function will be encountered in the representation of fractional integrals and derivatives of some elementary functions. $E_{1,\beta}(z)$ is closely related to the exponential function and, as for instance emphasized in [27], it is:

$$E_{1,\beta}(z) = e^z \cdot \widehat{P}_{\beta}(z), \quad \widehat{P}_{\beta}(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta - 1)} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-z)^k}{k!(\beta - 1 + k)}.$$

It is however more convenient to express the ML function as a deviation from the exponential function according to the following result which will turn out to be useful in the subsequent sections.

Theorem 1. *Let $\Omega \in \mathbb{C}$ with $|\arg(\Omega)| < \pi$. For any $\beta > -1$ and $t \geq 0$ it is:*

$$t^{-\beta} E_{1,1-\beta}(\Omega t) = \Omega^{\beta} e^{t\Omega} + F_{\beta}(t; \Omega), \tag{20}$$

where,

$$F_{\beta}(t; \Omega) = \frac{\sin(\beta \pi)}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-rt} \frac{r^{\beta}}{r + \Omega} dr. \tag{21}$$

Proof. Thanks to Formula (19) for the LT of the ML we observe that:

$$\mathcal{L}\left(t^{-\beta} E_{1,1-\beta}(\Omega t) ; s\right) = \frac{s^{\beta}}{s - \Omega};$$

thus, the formula for the inversion of the LT allows to write this function as:

$$t^{-\beta} E_{1,1-\beta}(\Omega t) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\sigma - i\infty}^{\sigma + i\infty} e^{st} \frac{s^{\beta}}{s - \Omega} ds, \quad \sigma > \max\{0, \mathrm{Re}\,\Omega\}.$$

The Bromwich line $(\sigma - i\infty, \sigma + i\infty)$ can be deformed into an Hankel contour $\mathcal{H}_{\epsilon}$ starting at $-\infty$ below the negative real semi-axis and ending at $-\infty$ above the negative real semi-axis after surrounding the origin along a circular disc $|s| = \epsilon$. Since Ω does not lie on the branch cut, the contour $\mathcal{H}_{\epsilon}$ can be collapsed onto the branch-cut by letting $\epsilon \to 0$. The contour thus passes over the singularity Ω and the residue subtraction leads to:

$$t^{-\beta} E_{1,1-\beta}(\Omega t) = \mathrm{Res}\left(e^{st} \frac{s^{\beta}}{s - \Omega}, \Omega\right) + F_{\beta}(t; \Omega)$$

where, for shortness, we denoted:

$$F_{\beta}(t; \Omega) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\mathcal{H}_{\epsilon}} e^{st} \frac{s^{\beta}}{s - \Omega} ds.$$

The residue can be easily computed as:

$$\text{Res}\left(e^{st}\frac{s^\beta}{s-\Omega},\Omega\right)=\Omega^\beta e^{\Omega t},$$

whilst to evaluate $F_\beta(t;\Omega)$ we first decompose the Hankel contour into its three main paths:

$$\mathcal{H}_\epsilon=\gamma_1+\gamma_2+\gamma_3,\quad\begin{cases}\gamma_1:s=re^{-i\pi},&\infty>r\geq\epsilon,\\\gamma_2:s=\epsilon e^{i\theta},&-\pi<\theta<\pi,\\\gamma_3:s=re^{i\pi},&\epsilon\leq r<\infty,\end{cases}$$

thanks to which we are able to write:

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{\mathcal{H}_\epsilon}e^{st}\frac{s^\beta}{s-\Omega}ds=I_1+I_2+I_3,\quad I_\ell=\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{\gamma_\ell}e^{st}\frac{s^\beta}{s-\Omega}ds,\quad\ell=1,2,3.$$

Since $e^{i\pi}=e^{-i\pi}=-1$, it is possible to compute:

$$I_1=\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_\infty^\epsilon e^{-rt}\frac{r^\beta e^{-i\beta\pi}e^{-i\pi}}{-r-\Omega}dr=-\frac{e^{-i\beta\pi}}{2\pi i}\int_\epsilon^\infty e^{-rt}\frac{r^\beta}{r+\Omega}dr$$

$$I_2=\frac{\epsilon^{\beta+1}}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^\pi\frac{e^{\epsilon t\cos\theta+i[(\beta+1)\theta+\epsilon t\sin\theta]}}{\epsilon\cos\theta-\Omega+i\epsilon\sin\theta}d\theta$$

$$I_3=\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_\epsilon^\infty e^{-rt}\frac{r^\beta e^{i\beta\pi}e^{i\pi}}{-r-\Omega}dr=\frac{e^{i\beta\pi}}{2\pi i}\int_\epsilon^\infty e^{-rt}\frac{r^\beta}{r+\Omega}dr$$

and we observe that, due to the presence of the term $\epsilon^{\beta+1}$, where we assumed $\beta>-1$, the integral I_2 vanishes when $\epsilon\to0$. For the remaining term I_1+I_2 we note that:

$$\frac{e^{i\beta\pi}}{2\pi i}-\frac{e^{-i\beta\pi}}{2\pi i}=\frac{\sin\beta\pi}{\pi},$$

and, hence, the representation (21) of $F_\beta(t;\Omega)$ easily follows. □

The relationship between the ML function and the exponential is even more clear in the presence of an integer second parameter.

Proposition 6. *Let $m\in\mathbb{N}$ and $\Omega\in\mathbb{C}$. For any $t\in\mathbb{R}$ it is:*

$$t^m E_{1,1+m}(\Omega t)=\frac{1}{\Omega^m}\left(e^{\Omega t}-\sum_{j=0}^{m-1}\frac{\Omega^j t^j}{j!}\right),$$

$$t^{-m}E_{1,1-m}(\Omega t)=\Omega^m e^{\Omega t}.$$

Proof. The first equality directly follows from the definition (18) of the ML function since it is:

$$t^m E_{1,1+m}(\Omega t)=\frac{1}{\Omega^m}\sum_{k=0}^\infty\frac{\Omega^{k+m}t^{k+m}}{\Gamma(k+1+m)}=\frac{1}{\Omega^m}\sum_{j=m}^\infty\frac{\Omega^j t^j}{\Gamma(j+1)}=\frac{1}{\Omega^m}\left(\sum_{j=0}^\infty\frac{\Omega^j t^j}{j!}-\sum_{j=0}^{m-1}\frac{\Omega^j t^j}{j!}\right)$$

whilst the second equality is a special case of Theorem 1. □

The following result will prove its particular utility when studying the asymptotic behavior of the fractional derivatives of some functions which will be expressed, in the next sections, in terms of special instances of the ML function.

Proposition 7. *Let $\beta>-1$, $\Omega\in\mathbb{C}$, $|\arg\Omega|<\pi$, and $t\geq0$. Then,*

$$F_\beta(t;\Omega)=C_\beta\Omega^{-1}t^{-\beta-1}\left(1+\mathcal{O}(t^{-1})\right),\quad t\to\infty,$$

with C_β independent of t and Ω.

Proof. By a change of the integration variable we can write:

$$F_\beta(t;\Omega) = \Omega^\beta \frac{\sin\beta\pi}{\pi} \int_0^\infty e^{-r\Omega t} \frac{r^\beta}{r+1} dr = \Omega^\beta \frac{\sin\beta\pi}{\pi} \Gamma(\beta+1) U(\beta+1,\beta+1,\Omega t)$$

where $U(a,b,z)$ is the Tricomi function (often known as the confluent hypergeometric function of the second kind) defined for $\operatorname{Re} a > 0$ and $\operatorname{Re} z > 0$ and by analytic continuation elsewhere [28] (Chapter 48). After putting $C_\beta = \Gamma(\beta+1)\sin(\beta\pi)/\pi$, it is therefore [29] (Chapter 7, § 10.1),

$$F_\beta(t;\Omega) \sim t^{-\beta-1} C_\beta \Omega^{-1} \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-1)^j \frac{\Gamma(\beta+1+j)}{\Gamma(\beta+1)} t^{-j}\Omega^{-j}, \quad t \to \infty, \quad |\arg\Omega| \le \frac{3}{2}\pi - \delta$$

for arbitrary small $\delta > 0$. Hence the proof follows since the selection of the branch cut on the negative real semi-axis. □

5. Fractional Integral and Derivatives of the Power Function

Basic results on fractional integral and derivatives of the power function $(t-t_0)^\beta$, for $\beta > -1$, are available in the literature; see, for instance [9] for the RL integral:

$$J_{t_0}^\alpha (t-t_0)^\beta = \frac{\Gamma(\beta+1)}{\Gamma(\beta+\alpha+1)} (t-t_0)^{\beta+\alpha}, \tag{22}$$

for the RL derivative (as usual, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$):

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha (t-t_0)^\beta = \begin{cases} 0 & \beta \in \{\alpha-m, \alpha-m+1, \ldots, \alpha-1\} \\ \dfrac{\Gamma(\beta+1)}{\Gamma(\beta-\alpha+1)} (t-t_0)^{\beta-\alpha} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{23}$$

and for the Caputo's derivative:

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^\alpha (t-t_0)^\beta = \begin{cases} 0 & \beta \in \{0,1,\ldots,m-1\} \\ \dfrac{\Gamma(\beta+1)}{\Gamma(\beta-\alpha+1)} (t-t_0)^{\beta-\alpha} & \beta > m-1 \\ \text{non existing} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

The absence of the Caputo's derivative of $(t-t_0)^\beta$ for real $\beta < m-1$ with $\beta \notin \{0,1,\ldots,m-1\}$ is related to the fact that once the m-th order derivative of $(t-t_0)^\beta$ is evaluated the integrand in Equation (6) is no longer integrable.

For general power functions independent from the starting point, i.e., for t^k instead of $(t-t_0)^k$, we can provide the following results.

Proposition 8. *Let $\alpha > 0$ and $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$. Then for any $k \in \mathbb{N}$:*

1. $^{GL}D^\alpha t^k = 0$ *for $k < \alpha$;*

2. $^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha t^k = \displaystyle\sum_{\ell=0}^k \frac{k!}{(k-\ell)!\Gamma(\ell+1-\alpha)} (t-t_0)^{\ell-\alpha} t_0^{k-\ell};$

3. $^{C}D_{t_0}^\alpha t^k = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } k < \alpha \\ \displaystyle\sum_{\ell=m}^k \frac{k!}{(k-\ell)!\Gamma(\ell+1-\alpha)} (t-t_0)^{\ell-\alpha} t_0^{k-\ell} & \text{otherwhise} \end{cases}$

Proof. For $^{GL}D^\alpha t^k$ we first write:

$$(t - jh)^k = \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} t^\ell (-h)^{k-\ell} j^{k-\ell}$$

and hence by using the Definition 4 it is possible to see that:

$$^{GL}D^\alpha t^k = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} (t - jh)^k = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} t^\ell (-h)^{k-\ell} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} j^{k-\ell} = 0$$

where we applied Lemma 1. For $^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha t^k$ we expand:

$$t^k = \sum_{\ell=0}^{k} \binom{k}{\ell} (t - t_0)^\ell t_0^{k-\ell}$$

and hence the proof immediately follows from Equation (23). Similarly for $^C D_{t_0}^\alpha t^k$ by using Equation (24). □

Note that $^{GL}D^\alpha t^k$ diverges when $k > \alpha$. A representation of $^C D_{t_0}^\alpha t^\beta$, for general real but not integer β, is provided in terms of the hypergeometric $_2F_1$ function in [9] (Appendix B).

6. Fractional Integral and Derivatives of the Exponential Function

The exponential function is of great importance in mathematics and in several applications, also to approximate other functions. We therefore study here fractional integral and derivatives of the exponential function.

Proposition 9. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. For any $\Omega \in \mathbb{C}$ and $t > t_0$ the exponential function $e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ has the following fractional integral and derivatives:*

$$J_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = (t - t_0)^\alpha E_{1,1+\alpha}(\Omega(t - t_0)),$$
$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = (t - t_0)^{-\alpha} E_{1,1-\alpha}(\Omega(t - t_0)),$$
$$^C D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \Omega^m (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha} E_{1,m-\alpha+1}(\Omega(t - t_0)),$$

and, moreover, for any $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\mathrm{Re}(\Omega) \geq 0$ it is:

$$^{GL}D^\alpha e^{\Omega t} = \Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega t}.$$

Proof. By applying a term-by-term integration to the series expansion of the exponential function:

$$e^{\Omega t} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Omega^k t^k}{k!}, \tag{25}$$

and thanks to Equation (22) and to Definition (18) of the ML function, we obtain:

$$J_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Omega^k}{k!} J_{t_0}^\alpha (t - t_0)^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Omega^k}{\Gamma(k + \alpha + 1)} (t - t_0)^{k+\alpha} = (t - t_0)^\alpha E_{1,1+\alpha}(\Omega(t - t_0)).$$

For the evaluation of the RL derivative $^{RL}D_0^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ we again consider the series expansion Equation (25) and, by differentiating term by term thanks to Equation (23), it is:

$$\mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k(t-t_0)^k}{k!} = \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k}{k!} \mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha (t-t_0)^k = \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k(t-t_0)^{k-\alpha}}{\Gamma(k-\alpha+1)}$$

from which the proof follows thanks again to Definition (18) of the ML function. We proceed in a similar way for $\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ for which it is:

$$\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \left(\sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \frac{\Omega^k(t-t_0)^k}{k!} + \sum_{k=m}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k(t-t_0)^k}{k!} \right) = \sum_{k=m}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k}{k!} \mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha (t-t_0)^k = \sum_{k=m}^\infty \frac{\Omega^k(t-t_0)^{k-\alpha}}{\Gamma(k-\alpha+1)}$$

and, after a change $j = k - m$ in the summation index and rearranging some terms we obtain:

$$\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \sum_{j=0}^\infty \frac{\Omega^{j+m}(t-t_0)^{j+m-\alpha}}{\Gamma(j+m-\alpha+1)} = \Omega^m(t-t_0)^{m-\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^\infty \frac{\Omega^j(t-t_0)^j}{\Gamma(j+m-\alpha+1)}$$

from which, again, the proof follows from Definition (18) of the ML function. To finally evaluate the GL derivative $\mathrm{^{GL}}D^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ we first apply its definition from Equation (15)

$$\mathrm{^{GL}}D^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-jh)} = \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h^\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} \mathrm{e}^{-jh\Omega}$$

and, since we are assuming $\mathrm{Re}(\Omega) \ge 0$, it is $|\mathrm{e}^{-h\Omega}| \le 1$ and hence the binomial series converges:

$$\sum_{j=0}^\infty (-1)^j \binom{\alpha}{j} \mathrm{e}^{-jh\Omega} = (1 - \mathrm{e}^{-h\Omega})^\alpha \tag{26}$$

thanks to which we can easily evaluate:

$$\mathrm{^{GL}}D^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} = \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{(1-\mathrm{e}^{-h\Omega})^\alpha}{h^\alpha} = \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} \lim_{h\to 0} \left(\frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{-h\Omega}}{h} \right)^\alpha = \Omega^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$$

to conclude the proof: $\quad\square$

Whenever $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$, and hence $m = \alpha$, the standard integer-order results,

$$J_{t_0}^m \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \frac{1}{\Omega^m} \left(\mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} - \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} \frac{(t-t_0)^j}{j!} \right), \qquad D^m \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \Omega^m \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$$

are recovered. This is a direct consequence of Proposition 6 for $J_{t_0}^\alpha$ and $\mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha$ whilst it comes from the equivalence $\mathrm{e}^z = E_{1,1}(z)$ for $\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha$. It is moreover obvious for $\mathrm{^{GL}}D^\alpha$, for which we just observed that the restriction $\mathrm{Re}(\Omega) \ge 0$ is no longer necessary when $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$ since the binomial series (26) has just a finite number of nonzero terms and hence converges for any $\Omega \in \mathbb{C}$.

The correspondence $\mathrm{^{GL}}D^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t} = \Omega^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ appears as the most natural generalization of the integer-order derivatives but it holds only when $\mathrm{Re}(\Omega) \ge 0$. By combining Proposition 9 and Theorem 1 it is immediately seen that $\mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ can be represented as a deviation from $\Omega^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ as stated in the following result.

Proposition 10. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. For any $\Omega \in \mathbb{C}$, $|\arg \Omega| < \pi$, and $t > t_0$ it is:*

$$\mathrm{^{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \Omega^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} + F_\alpha(t-t_0; \Omega),$$
$$\mathcal{D}_{t_0}^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \Omega^\alpha \mathrm{e}^{\Omega(t-t_0)} + \Omega^m F_{\alpha-m}(t-t_0; \Omega).$$

The terms $F_\alpha(t - t_0, \Omega)$ and $\Omega^m F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0, \Omega)$ describe the deviation of $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ from the ideal value $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$. From Proposition 7 we know that these deviations decrease in magnitude, until they vanish, as $t \to \infty$. Consequently, $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ asymptotically tend to $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ (and hence to $^{\mathrm{GL}}D^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ when $\mathrm{Re}\,\Omega \geq 0$), namely:

$$^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} \sim {}^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} \sim \Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}, \quad t \to \infty, \quad |\arg \Omega| < \pi.$$

This asymptotic behavior can be explained by recalling that the above derivatives differ from the way in which the function is assumed before the starting point t_0 and the influence of the function on $(-\infty, t_0)$ clearly becomes of less and less importance as t goes away from t_0, namely as $t \to \infty$.

We observe from Figure 3, where the values $\alpha = 0.7$ and $\Omega = -0.5 + 2i$ have been considered, that actually both $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ converge towards $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$, in quite a fast way, as t increases. In all the experiments we used, for ease of presentation, $t_0 = 0$ and the ML function was evaluated by means of the Matlab code described in [30] and based on some ideas previously developed in [31].
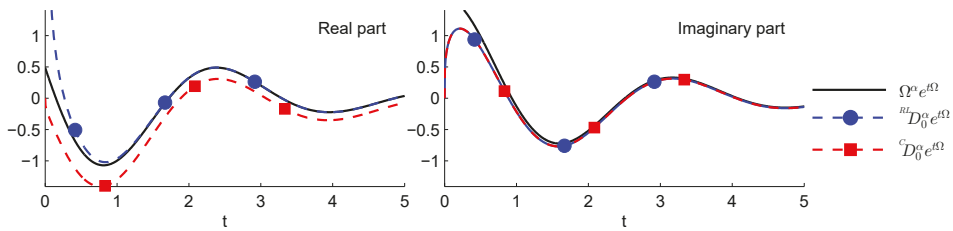

Figure 3. Comparison of $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_0^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_0^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ with $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ for $\alpha = 0.7$ and $\Omega = -0.5 + 2i$.

The unbounded nature of the real part of $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ at the origin is due to the presence of the factor $(t - t_0)^{-\alpha}$ (see Proposition 9) but it can also be interpreted as a consequence of the replacement of $f(t)$ by $f^{\mathrm{R}}(t)$ in the RL derivative, as discussed in Section 3.1, which introduces a discontinuity at the starting point; the same phenomena will be observed for the cosine function but, obviously, not for the sine function for which the value at 0 is the same forced in $(-\infty, 0)$.

It is not surprising that $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ have the same imaginary part (which indeed overlap in the second plot of Figure 3) when $0 < \alpha < 1$. The imaginary part of the exponential is indeed zero at the origin and hence RL and Caputo's derivatives coincide since relation in Equation (9) for $0 < \alpha < 1$ simply reads as $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = {}^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \big(f(t) - f(t_0)\big)$.

From Figure 3 we observe that the RL derivative converges faster to $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ than the Caputo derivative. This behavior can be easily explained by observing from Proposition 10 that as $t \to \infty$:

$$^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} - \Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = F_\alpha(t - t_0; \Omega) \sim (t - t_0)^{-\alpha-1}$$
$$^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} - \Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)} = \Omega^m F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0; \Omega) \sim (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha-1}$$

which tell us that while $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ converges towards $\Omega^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ according to a power law with exponent $-1 < m - \alpha - 1 < 0$, the RL derivative $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega(t-t_0)}$ converges according to a power law with exponent $-\alpha - 1 < -1$.

Similar behaviors, showing the convergence for $t \to \infty$ of the different derivatives, are obtained also for $\alpha = 1.7$ and $\Omega = -0.5 + 2i$ as we can observe from Figure 4. In this case, however, the imaginary parts of $^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ and $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha e^{\Omega t}$ are no longer the same since when $1 < \alpha < 2$ the relationship between the two derivatives is given by $^{\mathrm{C}}D_{t_0}^\alpha f(t) = {}^{\mathrm{RL}}D_{t_0}^\alpha \big(f(t) - f(t_0) - (t - t_0)f'(t_0)\big)$ and the imaginary part of $f'(t_0)$ is not equal to 0 as the imaginary part of $f(t_0)$.
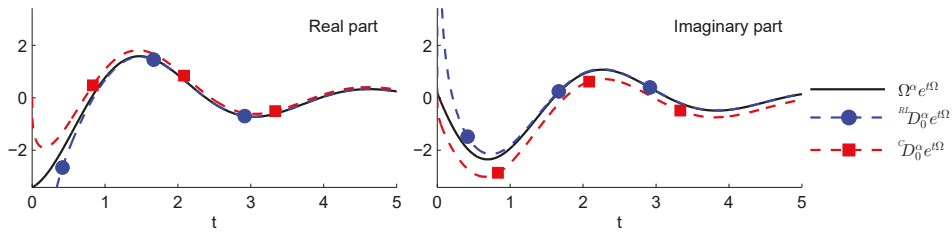
Figure 4. Comparison of $^{\text{RL}}D_0^{\alpha}\mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ and $^{\text{C}}D_0^{\alpha}\mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ with $\Omega^{\alpha}\mathrm{e}^{\Omega t}$ for $\alpha = 1.7$ and $\Omega = -0.5 + 2\mathrm{i}$.

7. Fractional Integral and Derivatives of Sine and Cosine Functions

Once fractional derivatives of the exponential are available, the fractional derivatives of the basic trigonometric functions can be easily evaluated by means of the well-known De Moivre formulas:

$$\sin \Omega t = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Omega t} - \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Omega t}}{2\mathrm{i}}, \quad \cos \Omega t = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Omega t} + \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Omega t}}{2},$$

which allow to state the following results.

Proposition 11. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $\Omega \in \mathbb{R}$. For $t \geq t_0$ the function $\sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$ has the following fractional integral and derivatives:*

$$J_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \frac{(t - t_0)^{\alpha}}{2\mathrm{i}} \left(E_{1,1+\alpha}(+\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) - E_{1,1+\alpha}(-\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) \right)$$

$$^{\text{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \frac{(t - t_0)^{-\alpha}}{2\mathrm{i}} \left(E_{1,1-\alpha}(+\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) - E_{1,1-\alpha}(-\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) \right)$$

$$^{\text{C}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \mathrm{i}^m \Omega^m \frac{(t - t_0)^{m-\alpha}}{2\mathrm{i}} \left(E_{1,m-\alpha+1}(+\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) - (-1)^m E_{1,m-\alpha+1}(-\mathrm{i}\Omega(t - t_0)) \right)$$

and, moreover, for any $t \in \mathbb{R}$ it is:

$$^{\text{GL}}D^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t\right) = \Omega^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right).$$

Proof. The proof for $J_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$, $^{\text{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$ and $^{\text{C}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$ is a straightforward consequence of Proposition 9. For $^{\text{GL}}D^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t\right)$ we observe that the direct application of Proposition 9 leads to:

$$^{\text{GL}}D^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t\right) = \frac{(+\mathrm{i})^{\alpha} \Omega^{\alpha} \mathrm{e}^{+\mathrm{i}\Omega t} - (-\mathrm{i})^{\alpha} \Omega^{\alpha} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Omega t}}{2\mathrm{i}} \tag{27}$$

and since $\mathrm{e}^{\pm \mathrm{i}\Omega t} = \cos \Omega t \pm \mathrm{i} \sin \Omega t$ and $(\pm \mathrm{i})^{\alpha} = \mathrm{e}^{\pm \mathrm{i}\alpha\pi/2}$, the proof follows from the application of basic trigonometric rules. $\square$

Note that the assumption $\operatorname{Re}\Omega \geq 0$ is no longer necessary for $^{\text{GL}}D^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t\right)$ since the arguments of the exponential functions in Equation (27) are always on the imaginary axis. Similar results can also be stated for the cosine function and the proofs are omitted since they are similar to the previous ones.

Proposition 12. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $\Omega \in \mathbb{R}$. For $t \geq t_0$ the function $\cos(\Omega(t - t_0))$ has the following fractional integral and derivatives:*

$$J_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \frac{(t - t_0)^{\alpha}}{2} \Big(E_{1,1+\alpha}(+i\Omega(t - t_0)) + E_{1,1+\alpha}(-i\Omega(t - t_0)) \Big)$$

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \frac{(t - t_0)^{-\alpha}}{2} \Big(E_{1,1-\alpha}(+i\Omega(t - t_0)) + E_{1,1-\alpha}(-i\Omega(t - t_0)) \Big)$$

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) = i^m \Omega^m \frac{(t - t_0)^{m-\alpha}}{2} \Big(E_{1,m-\alpha+1}(+i\Omega(t - t_0)) + (-1)^m E_{1,m-\alpha+1}(-i\Omega(t - t_0)) \Big)$$

and, moreover, for any $t \in \mathbb{R}$ it is:

$$^{GL}D^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega t) = \Omega^{\alpha} \cos\left(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right).$$

As for the exponential function, we observe that with the basic trigonometric functions, the GL derivative $^{GL}D^{\alpha}$ generalizes the known results holding for integer-order derivatives.

Furthermore, in this case, with the help of Proposition 1, it is possible to see that the RL and Caputo's derivatives of $\sin(\Omega(t - t_0))$ and $\cos(\Omega(t - t_0))$ can be expressed as deviations from $\Omega^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2})$ and $\Omega^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2})$ respectively. The following results (whose proof is omitted since it is obvious) can indeed be provided.

Proposition 13. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $\Omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Then for any $t \geq t_0$ it is:*

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \Omega^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0) + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{F_{\alpha}(t - t_0; i\Omega) - F_{\alpha}(t - t_0; -i\Omega)}{2i}$$

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \Omega^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0) + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + i^m \Omega^m \frac{F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0; i\Omega) - (-1)^m F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0; -i\Omega)}{2i}$$

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \Omega^{\alpha} \cos\left(\Omega(t - t_0) + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{F_{\alpha}(t - t_0; i\Omega) + F_{\alpha}(t - t_0; -i\Omega)}{2}$$

$$^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) = \Omega^{\alpha} \cos\left(\Omega(t - t_0) + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + i^m \Omega^m \frac{F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0; i\Omega) + (-1)^m F_{\alpha-m}(t - t_0; -i\Omega)}{2}$$

Since the function $F_{\beta}(t; \pm i\Omega)$ asymptotically vanishes when $t \to \infty$, we can argue that:

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega(t - t_0)) \sim {}^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega(t - t_0)) \sim \Omega^{\alpha} \sin\left(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \quad t \to \infty$$

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) \sim {}^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos(\Omega(t - t_0)) \sim \Omega^{\alpha} \cos\left(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \quad t \to \infty \tag{28}$$

as we can clearly observe from Figure 5 and 6.

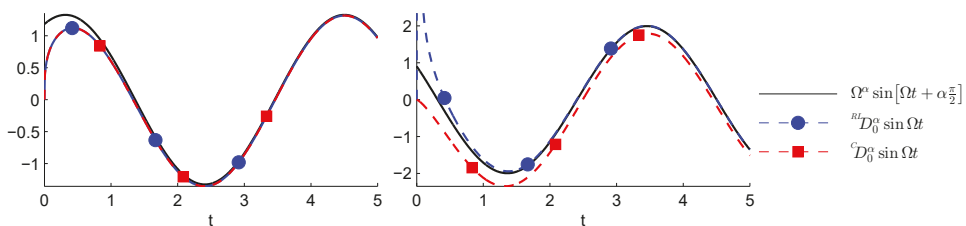**Figure 5.** Comparison of $^{RL}D_0^{\alpha} \sin \Omega t$ and $^{C}D_0^{\alpha} \sin \Omega t$ with $\Omega^{\alpha} \sin(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2})$ for $\Omega = 1.5$, $\alpha = 0.7$ (**left plot**) and $\alpha = 1.7$ (**right plot**).
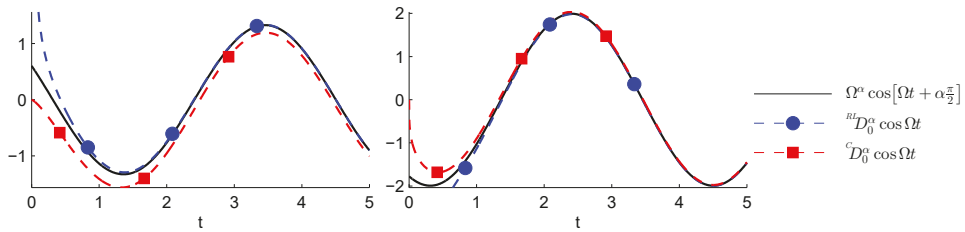
Figure 6. Comparison of $^{RL}D_0^\alpha \cos \Omega t$ and $^C D_0^\alpha \cos \Omega t$ with $\Omega^\alpha \cos\left(\Omega t + \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ for $\Omega = 1.5$, $\alpha = 0.7$ (**left plot**) and $\alpha = 1.7$ (**right plot**).

The above results are mainly useful for studying the asymptotic behavior of different operators applied to the sine and cosine functions. The representation of integrals and derivatives can be simplified thanks to the following results.

Proposition 14. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $\Omega \in \mathbb{R}$. For $t \geq t_0$ the function $\sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$ has the following fractional integral and derivatives:*

$$J_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \Omega(t - t_0)^{1+\alpha} E_{2,2+\alpha}\left(-\Omega^2(t - t_0)^2\right)$$

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \Omega(t - t_0)^{1-\alpha} E_{2,2-\alpha}\left(-\Omega^2(t - t_0)^2\right)$$

$$^C D_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{\frac{m-1}{2}} \Omega^m (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha} E_{2,m-\alpha+1}\left(-\Omega^2(t - t_0)^2\right) & odd\ m \\ (-1)^{\frac{m}{2}} \Omega^{m+1} (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha+1} E_{2,m-\alpha+2}\left(-\Omega^2(t - t_0)^2\right) & even\ m \end{cases}$$

Proof. By using the series expansion of the ML function in Equation (18), for any $\beta \in \mathbb{C}$ it is:

$$G_{m,\beta}(z) := E_{1,m+\beta}(+\mathrm{i}z) - (-1)^m E_{1,m+\beta}(-\mathrm{i}z) = \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{i}^k z^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)}\left(1 - (-1)^{m+k}\right)$$

and since,

$$1 - (-1)^j = \begin{cases} 0 & even\ j \\ 2 & odd\ j \end{cases},$$

it is simple to evaluate:

$$G_{m,\beta}(z) = \begin{cases} 2 \displaystyle\sum_{\substack{k=0 \\ even\ k}}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{i}^k z^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)} = 2 \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{i}^{2k} z^{2k}}{\Gamma(2k + m + \beta)} = 2 E_{2,m+\beta}(-z^2) & odd\ m \\ 2 \displaystyle\sum_{\substack{k=0 \\ odd\ k}}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{i}^k z^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)} = 2 \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{i}^{2k+1} z^{2k+1}}{\Gamma(2k + 1 + m + \beta)} = 2\mathrm{i}z E_{2,m+\beta+1}(-z^2) & even\ m \end{cases}.$$

Moreover it is sufficient to observe, thanks to Proposition 11, that:

$$J_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \frac{(t - t_0)^\alpha}{2\mathrm{i}} G_{0,1+\alpha}\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$$

$$^{RL}D_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \frac{(t - t_0)^{-\alpha}}{2\mathrm{i}} G_{0,1-\alpha}\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$$

$$^C D_{t_0}^\alpha \sin\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right) = \mathrm{i}^m \Omega^m \frac{(t - t_0)^{m-\alpha}}{2\mathrm{i}} G_{m,1-\alpha}\left(\Omega(t - t_0)\right)$$

from which the proof immediately follows. □

Proposition 15. *Let $\alpha > 0$, $m = \lceil \alpha \rceil$ and $\Omega \in \mathbb{R}$. For $t \geq t_0$ the function $\cos\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big)$ has the following fractional integral and derivatives:*

$$J_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big) = (t - t_0)^{\alpha} E_{2,1+\alpha}\big(-\Omega^2 (t - t_0)^2\big)$$

$$^{\text{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big) = (t - t_0)^{-\alpha} E_{2,1-\alpha}\big(-\Omega^2 (t - t_0)^2\big)$$

$$^{\mathcal{C}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{\frac{m+1}{2}} \Omega^{m+1} (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha+1} E_{2,m-\alpha+2}\big(-\Omega^2 (t - t_0)^2\big) & odd\ m \\ (-1)^{\frac{m}{2}} \Omega^m (t - t_0)^{m-\alpha} E_{2,m-\alpha+1}\big(-\Omega^2 (t - t_0)^2\big) & even\ m \end{cases}$$

Proof. The proof is similar to the proof of Proposition 14 where we consider now the function:

$$H_{m,\beta}(z) := E_{1,m+\beta}(+\mathrm{i}z) + (-1)^m E_{1,m+\beta}(-\mathrm{i}z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{i}^k \Omega^k (t - t_0)^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)}\big(1 + (-1)^{m+k}\big)$$

with,

$$1 + (-1)^j = \begin{cases} 2 & even\ j \\ 0 & odd\ j \end{cases}$$

and for which we obtain:

$$H_{m,\beta}(z) = \begin{cases} 2 \displaystyle\sum_{\substack{k=0 \\ odd\ k}}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{i}^k z^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)} = 2 \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{i}^{2k+1} z^{2k+1}}{\Gamma(2k + 1 + m + \beta)} = 2\mathrm{i}z E_{2,m+\beta+1}(-z^2) & odd\ m \\ 2 \displaystyle\sum_{\substack{k=0 \\ even\ k}}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{i}^k z^k}{\Gamma(k + m + \beta)} = 2 \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{i}^{2k} z^{2k}}{\Gamma(2k + m + \beta)} = 2 E_{2,m+\beta}(-z^2) & even\ m \end{cases}$$

thanks to which the proof follows by applying Proposition 12. □

The representation of $^{\text{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \sin\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big)$ and $^{\text{RL}}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \cos\big(\Omega(t - t_0)\big)$, together with other related results, was already provided in [32] ([Remark 3). The above Propositions allow to extend to the RL integral and to the Caputo's derivative the results given in [32] solely for the RL derivative.

8. Concluding Remarks

We have discussed the evaluation of fractional integrals and fractional derivatives of some elementary functions. An alternative way of deriving RL and Caputo's derivatives from the GL has also been presented. We have observed that for several functions, the GL derivative generalizes, in a quite direct way, classic rules for integer-order differentiation. The RL and Caputo's derivatives of exponential, sine and cosine function have also been evaluated and represented in terms of special instances of the ML function. We have also shown that they appear as deviations from the GL derivative. The RL derivative converges, as the independent variable $t \to \infty$, faster than the Caputo's counterpart towards the GL derivative and an analytical explanation based on the asymptotic behavior of the ML function has been provided. Thanks to available codes for the evaluation of the ML function, the accurate computation of fractional derivatives of several elementary functions is possible.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manuscript:

FDE	Fractional differential equation
GL	Grünwald–Letnikov
LT	Laplace transform
ML	Mittag–Leffler
RL	Riemann–Liouville

References

1. Caponetto, R.; Dongola, G.D.; Fortuna, L.; Petráš, I. *Fractional Order Systems: Modeling and Control Applications*; Series on Nonlinear Science, Series A; World Scientific Publishing Co.: Singapore, 2010; Volume 72, p. xxi+178.
2. Herrmann, R. *Fractional Calculus: An Introduction for Physicists*; World Scientific Publishing Co.: Hackensack, NJ, USA, 2018; p. xxiv+610.
3. Mainardi, F. *Fractional Calculus and Waves in Linear Viscoelasticity*; Imperial College Press: London, UK, 2010; p. xx+347.
4. Ostalczyk, P. *Discrete Fractional Calculus: Applications in Control and Image Processing*; Series in Computer Vision; World Scientific Publishing Co.: Hackensack, NJ, USA, 2016; Volume 4, p. xxxi+361.
5. Podlubny, I. Fractional differential equations. In *Mathematics in Science and Engineering*; Academic Press Inc.: San Diego, CA, USA, 1999; Volume 198, p. xxiv+340.
6. Povstenko, Y. *Linear Fractional Diffusion-Wave Equation for Scientists and Engineers*; Springer: Cham, Switzerland, 2015; p. xiv+460.
7. Tarasov, V.E. *Fractional Dynamics*; Nonlinear Physical Science; Springer: Heidelberg, Germany; Higher Education Press: Beijing, China, 2010; p. xvi+504.
8. West, B.J. *Nature's Patterns and the Fractional Calculus*; Fractional Calculus in Applied Sciences and Engineering; De Gruyter: Berlin, Germany, 2017; Volume 2, p. xiii+199.
9. Diethelm, K. *The Analysis of Fractional Differential Equations*; Lecture Notes in Mathematics; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2010; Volume 2004, p. viii+247.
10. Kilbas, A.A.; Srivastava, H.M.; Trujillo, J.J. *Theory and Applications of Fractional Differential Equations*; North-Holland Mathematics Studies; Elsevier Science B.V.: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2006; Volume 204, p. xvi+523.
11. Miller, K.S.; Ross, B. *An Introduction to the Fractional Calculus and Fractional Differential Equations*; John Wiley & Sons, Inc.: New York, NY, USA, 1993; p. xvi+366.
12. Samko, S.G.; Kilbas, A.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Fractional Integrals and Derivatives*; Gordon and Breach Science Publishers: Yverdon, Switzerland, 1993; p. xxxvi+976.
13. Gorenflo, R.; Mainardi, F. Fractional calculus: integral and differential equations of fractional order. In *Fractals and Fractional Calculus in Continuum Mechanics (Udine, 1996)*; CISM Courses and Lect.; Springer: Vienna, Austria, 1997; Volume 378, pp. 223–276.
14. Mainardi, F.; Gorenflo, R. Time-fractional derivatives in relaxation processes: A tutorial survey. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2007**, *10*, 269–308.
15. Hilfer, R.; Luchko, Y. Desiderata for Fractional Derivatives and Integrals. *Mathematics* **2019**, *7*, 149. [CrossRef]
16. Giusti, A. A comment on some new definitions of fractional derivative. *Nonlinear Dyn.* **2018**, *93*, 1757–1763. [CrossRef]
17. Ortigueira, M.D.; Tenreiro Machado, J.A. What is a fractional derivative? *J. Comput. Phys.* **2015**, *293*, 4–13. [CrossRef]
18. Tarasov, V.E. No violation of the Leibniz rule. No fractional derivative. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2013**, *18*, 2945–2948. [CrossRef]
19. Tarasov, V.E. No nonlocality. No fractional derivative. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2018**, *62*, 157–163. [CrossRef]

20. Grünwald, A. Uber "begrenzte" Derivationen und deren Anwendung. *Z. Angew. Math. Phys.* **1867**, *12*, 441–480.

21. Letnikov, A. Theory of differentiation with an arbitrary index. *Mat. Sb.* **1868**, *3*, 1–68. (In Russian)

22. Oldham, K.B.; Spanier, J. *The Fractional Calculus*; Academic Press: New York, NY, USA; London, UK, 1974; p. xiii+234.

23. Ortigueira, M.D.; Coito, F. From differences to derivatives. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2004**, *7*, 459–471.

24. Ortigueira, M.D. Comments on "Modeling fractional stochastic systems as non-random fractional dynamics driven Brownian motions". *Appl. Math. Model.* **2009**, *33*, 2534–2537. [CrossRef]

25. Ferrari, F. Weyl and Marchaud Derivatives: A Forgotten History. *Mathematics* **2018**, *6*, 6. [CrossRef]

26. Garrappa, R. Some formulas for sums of binomial coefficients and gamma functions. *Int. Math. Forum* **2007**, *2*, 725–733. [CrossRef]

27. Paris, R.B. Asymptotics of the special functions of fractional calculus. In *Handbook of Fractional Calculus with Applications Volume 1: Basic Theory*; Kochubei, A., Luchko, Y., Eds.; De Gruyter GmbH: Berlin, Germany, 2019; pp. 297–325.

28. Oldham, K.; Myland, J.; Spanier, J. *An Atlas of Functions*, 2nd ed.; Springer: New York, NY, USA, 2009; p. xii+748.

29. Olver, F.W.J. *Asymptotics and Special Functions*; AKP Classics; A K Peters, Ltd.: Wellesley, MA, USA, 1997; p. xviii+572.

30. Garrappa, R. Numerical evaluation of two and three parameter Mittag-Leffler functions. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **2015**, *53*, 1350–1369. [CrossRef]

31. Garrappa, R.; Popolizio, M. Evaluation of generalized Mittag-Leffler functions on the real line. *Adv. Comput. Math.* **2013**, *39*, 205–225. [CrossRef]

32. Ciesielski, M.; Blaszczyk, T. An exact solution of the second-order differential equation with the fractional/generalised boundary conditions. *Adv. Math. Phys.* **2018**, *2018*, 7283518. [CrossRef]

Article

Subordination Approach to Space-Time Fractional Diffusion

Emilia Bazhlekova * and Ivan Bazhlekov

Institute of Mathematics and Informatics, Bulgarian Academy of Sciences, Acad. G. Bonchev str., Bld. 8, Sofia 1113, Bulgaria; i.bazhlekov@math.bas.bg
* Correspondence: e.bazhlekova@math.bas.bg

Abstract: The fundamental solution to the multi-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation is studied by applying the subordination principle, which provides a relation to the classical Gaussian function. Integral representations in terms of Mittag-Leffler functions are derived for the fundamental solution and the subordination kernel. The obtained integral representations are used for numerical evaluation of the fundamental solution for different values of the parameters.

Keywords: space-time fractional diffusion equation; fractional Laplacian; subordination principle; Mittag-Leffler function; Bessel function

MSC: 26A33; 33E12; 35R11; 47D06

1. Introduction

This work is concerned with the n-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation

$$\mathbb{D}_t^\beta u(\mathbf{x}, t) = -(-\Delta)^\alpha u(\mathbf{x}, t), \quad t > 0, \ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n; \quad u(\mathbf{x}, 0) = v(\mathbf{x}); \tag{1}$$

where $0 < \alpha, \beta \leq 1$, $\mathbb{D}_t^\beta$ is the Caputo time-fractional derivative [1,2]

$$\mathbb{D}_t^\beta f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(1-\beta)} \frac{d}{dt} \int_0^t \frac{f(t) - f(0)}{(t-\tau)^\beta} \, d\tau, \ t > 0, \ 0 < \beta < 1, \tag{2}$$

and $-(-\Delta)^\alpha$, $\alpha \in (0, 1)$, is the full-space fractional Laplace operator in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Ten equivalent definitions of the fractional Laplacian $-(-\Delta)^\alpha$ are given in the survey paper [3]. In particular, it can be defined as a pseudo-differential operator, as follows:

$$\mathcal{F}\{-(-\Delta)^\alpha f; \kappa\} = -|\kappa|^{2\alpha} \mathcal{F}\{f; \kappa\}, \ \kappa \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

where $\mathcal{F}\{f; \kappa\}$ denotes the Fourier transform of a function f at the point κ. In the one-dimensional case $-(-\Delta)^\alpha$ is the Riesz space-fractional derivative of order 2α.

The space-time fractional diffusion Equation (1) has been extensively studied [4–15]. The solution $u(\mathbf{x}, t)$ of Problem (1) is given in terms of the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha, \beta, n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ and the initial function $v(\mathbf{x})$, as follows:

$$u(\mathbf{x}, t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} G_{\alpha, \beta, n}(\mathbf{y}, t) v(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \, d\mathbf{y}, \ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \ t > 0.$$

Therefore, the behavior of the solution to Problem (1) is determined by the properties of the fundamental solution. In this paper, we limit our attention to representations of the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha, \beta, n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$.

In the classical case $\alpha = \beta = 1$, Equation (1) reduces to the standard diffusion equation with the fundamental solution $G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$, given by the Gaussian function (see e.g., [16]):

$$G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{1}{(4\pi t)^{n/2}} e^{-|\mathbf{x}|^2/4t}, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \, t > 0. \tag{3}$$

In the fractional-order setting, the following closed-form representations for the fundamental solution are known:

$$G_{\frac{\alpha}{2},\alpha,1}(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \frac{t^\alpha |x|^{\alpha-1} \sin(\alpha\pi/2)}{t^{2\alpha} + 2t^\alpha |x|^\alpha \cos(\alpha\pi/2) + |x|^{2\alpha}}, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \, t > 0, \, 0 < \alpha \le 1; \tag{4}$$

$$G_{\alpha,\alpha,2}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{1}{4\pi t} \left(\frac{|\mathbf{x}|^2}{4t}\right)^{\alpha-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}\left(-\left(\frac{|\mathbf{x}|^2}{4t}\right)^\alpha\right), \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2, \, t > 0, \, 0 < \alpha \le 1; \tag{5}$$

$$G_{\frac{1}{2},\frac{1}{2},1}(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi^{3/2}\sqrt{t}} e^{x^2/4t} \mathcal{E}_1\left(\frac{x^2}{4t}\right), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \, t > 0; \tag{6}$$

$$G_{\frac{1}{2},\frac{1}{2},n}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)}{2^n \pi^{n/2+1} t^{n/2}} U\left(\frac{n+1}{2}, \frac{n+1}{2}, \frac{|\mathbf{x}|^2}{4t}\right), \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \, t > 0; \tag{7}$$

where $E_{\alpha,\alpha}$ denotes the Mittag-Leffler function (see (18)), $\mathcal{E}_1$ is the exponential integral [17]

$$\mathcal{E}_1(r) = \int_r^\infty \frac{e^{-\xi}}{\xi} d\xi, \tag{8}$$

and U is the Tricomi's confluent hypergeometric function [17]

$$U(a, b, r) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(a)} \int_0^\infty \xi^{a-1}(1+\xi)^{b-a-1} e^{-r\xi} d\xi, \, a > 0, r > 0. \tag{9}$$

Representation (4) can be found in a more general setting in [5]. Formula (5) was first derived in the paper [10]. Formula (6) is established in the early work [4]. A derivation of representations (4)–(7) using the subordination relation (see (10)) can be found in [15]. In [13,15], additional closed-form representations for the fundamental solution were derived from (4)–(6) by applying the relations between $G_{\alpha,\beta,n+2}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ and $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$. However, all such simple closed-form expressions for the fundamental solution in terms of known special functions are limited to particular values of the parameters.

Extensive research has been devoted to representations of the fundamental solution in the form of the Mellin-Barnes integral or the Fox H-function, such as in [5,6,11] for the one-dimensional and [12–14] for the multi-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion-wave equation. One of the advantages of such representations is that the asymptotic behavior of the fundamental solution can be derived from them, because the asymptotic behavior of the Fox H-function has been well-studied (see e.g., [18] or [19]).

An alternative approach to dealing with the space-time fractional diffusion Equation (1) is based on the subordination formula, which relates the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ and the Gaussian function $G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ as follows [14,15]

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t, \tau) G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) \, d\tau, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \, t > 0, \tag{10}$$

where $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t, \tau)$ is a unilateral probability density function (pdf) in τ, that is:

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t, \tau) \ge 0, \quad \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t, \tau) \, d\tau = 1. \tag{11}$$

The subordination kernel $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ depends on the similarity variable $\tau t^{-\beta/\alpha}$ and admits the representation [14]

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) = t^{-\beta/\alpha} K_{\alpha,\beta}(\tau t^{-\beta/\alpha}), \tag{12}$$

where the function $K_{\alpha,\beta}(r)$ can be defined as the inverse Laplace transform of the Mittag-Leffler function $E_\beta(-\lambda^\alpha)$, that is:

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-\lambda r} K_{\alpha,\beta}(r)\, dr = E_\beta(-\lambda^\alpha). \tag{13}$$

The Laplace transform pair (13) was first derived in [14] (see Remark 4.4).

It is worth noting that some known basic properties of $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$ follow in a straightforward way from the subordination relation (10), taking into account that the subordination kernel is a pdf. In this way, we can prove that for any dimension $n \geq 1$, the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$ is a spatial pdf evolving in time:

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) \geq 0, \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)\, d\mathbf{x} = 1.$$

Therefore, $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$, $0 < \alpha,\beta \leq 1$, inherits this property of the classical Gaussian kernel $G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$. In a similar way, estimates for the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$ can be derived from known estimates for the Gaussian kernel $G_{1,1,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$. For example, since $\|G_{1,1,n}(\cdot,t)\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)} = 1$ (see e.g., [16], Remark 3.7.10.), the subordination Formula (10), together with properties (11) imply

$$\|G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\cdot,t)\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)} \leq \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) \|G_{1,1,n}(\cdot,\tau)\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)}\, d\tau \leq \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)\, d\tau = 1.$$

A principle of subordination is closely related to the concept of subordination in stochastic processes [20,21]. It has been extensively studied and employed in the context of fractional order equations. The subordination principle for space-fractional evolution equations has been established in [22] in the setting of abstract Cauchy problems. Subordination formulae for the one-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation have been studied in [6,9]. In [14,15], subordination principles for the multi-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation are deduced. In the case of time-fractional evolution equations with general time-fractional operators, subordination principles have been studied and employed in [23–28].

Based on the subordination principles for space- and time-fractional diffusion equations and the dominated convergence theorem, exact asymptotic expressions for the fundamental solution of the multi-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation and more general nonlocal equations have recently been established in [29]. For completeness, we next present the asymptotic expansions for $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$, $\alpha,\beta \in (0,1)$, from [29], Corollary 2.6 (written in our notations and in a slightly more compact form):

If $|\mathbf{x}|^{-2\alpha} t^\beta \to \infty$, then

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) \sim \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{2\alpha \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2\alpha}\right)\Gamma\left(1-\frac{\beta}{2\alpha}\right)} t^{-\frac{\beta}{2\alpha}}, & n=1, \alpha \in (1/2,1), \\[2ex] \dfrac{\beta}{\pi\Gamma(1-\beta)} t^{-\beta} \ln\left(t|x|^{-1/\beta}\right), & n=1, \alpha = 1/2, \\[2ex] \dfrac{1}{4^\alpha \pi^{n/2}} \dfrac{\Gamma(n/2-\alpha)}{\Gamma(\alpha)\Gamma(1-\beta)} \dfrac{t^{-\beta}}{|\mathbf{x}|^{n-2\alpha}}, & n > 2\alpha. \end{cases} \tag{14}$$

If $|\mathbf{x}|^{-2\alpha} t^\beta \to 0$, then

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) \sim \frac{4^\alpha}{\pi^{n/2}} \frac{\alpha\Gamma(n/2+\alpha)}{\Gamma(1-\alpha)\Gamma(\beta+1)} \frac{t^\beta}{|\mathbf{x}|^{n+2\alpha}}. \tag{15}$$

The asymptotic expansions (14) and (15) are in agreement with those obtained for particular ranges of parameter values in, for example, [5,11,15], as well as with the asymptotic behavior of the

closed-form solutions (4)–(7), which can be checked by taking into account the asymptotic expansions for the exponential integral ([17], Eqs. 5.1.11 and 5.1.51)

$$\mathcal{E}_1(r) \sim \ln\left(\frac{1}{r}\right), \ \ r \to 0; \quad \mathcal{E}_1(r) \sim \frac{e^{-r}}{r}\left(1 - \frac{1}{r}\right), \ \ r \to +\infty, \tag{16}$$

and for the Tricomi's confluent hypergeometric function ([17], Section 13.5)

$$U(a,b,r) \sim \frac{\Gamma(b-1)}{\Gamma(a)} r^{1-b}, \ \ r \to 0, \ b > 1; \quad U(a,b,r) \sim r^{-a}, \ \ r \to +\infty, \tag{17}$$

and using some basic properties of the Gamma function.

In the present work, the subordination Formula (10) serves as a starting point for deriving integral representations for the fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$. First, an integral representation for the subordination kernel $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ is established in terms of the Mittag-Leffler function of complex argument. Let us note that a study of the function $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ is of interest, since it also plays the role of subordination kernel related to problems with more general spatial operators, such as in [15]. In addition, $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,x)$ coincides with the solution of the one-dimensional space-time fractional diffusion equation with the Riesz-Feller space-fractional derivative of order α and skewness $-\alpha$, as well as the Caputo time-derivative of order β, studied in [5] (see [15], Remark 3). Next, based on the subordination Formula (10), we derive integral representations for the fundamental solution in terms of Mittag-Leffler functions, which are appropriate for numerical implementation.

The paper is organized as follows. Definitions and basic properties of Mittag-Leffler functions and Bessel functions of the first kind are listed in the next section. In Section 3, an integral representation for the subordination kernel is established. In Section 4, computable integral representations for the fundamental solution are derived for $n = 1, 2, 3$ and used for numerical experiments.

2. Preliminaries

The Mittag-Leffler function is an entire function defined by the series [1,2,30]

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^k}{\Gamma(\alpha k + \beta)}, \ \ E_\alpha(z) = E_{\alpha,1}(z), \ \ \alpha, \beta, z \in \mathbb{C}, \ \Re\alpha > 0. \tag{18}$$

For $0 < \alpha < 2$ and $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$, the following asymptotic expansion for large $|z|$ holds true in the sector of the complex plane $|\arg(-z)| < (1 - \alpha/2)\pi$

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) = -\sum_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{z^{-k}}{\Gamma(\beta - \alpha k)} + O(|z|^{-N}), \ \ |z| \to \infty. \tag{19}$$

Therefore, taking into account the identity $\Gamma(z)^{-1} = 0$ for $z = 0, -1, -2, \ldots$ we derive from (19) two useful asymptotic expressions for $|z| \to \infty$ and $|\arg z| < (1 - \alpha/2)\pi$

$$E_\alpha(-z) \sim \frac{z^{-1}}{\Gamma(1-\alpha)}; \quad E_{\alpha,\beta}(-z) \sim -\frac{z^{-2}}{\Gamma(\beta - 2\alpha)}, \ \ \beta - \alpha = 0, -1, -2, \ldots \tag{20}$$

The faster decay for large $|z|$ of the second function in (20), compared to the first, will be used essentially in this work.

The relations

$$\frac{d}{dz}E_\alpha(-z^\alpha) = -z^{\alpha-1}E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-z^\alpha), \ \ \frac{d}{dz}\left(z^{\alpha-1}E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-z^\alpha)\right) = z^{\alpha-2}E_{\alpha,\alpha-1}(-z^\alpha), \tag{21}$$

can be derived directly from the definition (18) of the Mittag-Leffler function; (21) and (20) imply that, by differentiation of the Mittag-Leffler function $E_\alpha(-z^\alpha)$, a faster decay for large $|z|$ can be achieved.

We point out the following representation of the Mittag-Leffler functions as Laplace transforms (see [31]):

$$t^{\beta-1}E_{\alpha,\beta}(-\mu t^\alpha) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty e^{-rt} \frac{r^\alpha \sin \beta\pi + \mu \sin(\beta-\alpha)\pi}{r^{2\alpha} + 2\mu r^\alpha \cos \alpha\pi + \mu^2} r^{\alpha-\beta} \, dr, \tag{22}$$

where $\mu > 0$, $0 < \alpha, \beta \le 1$, excluding the case $\alpha = \beta = 1$. Expression (22) is appropriate for numerical computation of the Mittag-Leffler functions. Let us note, however, that (22) is valid only for real values of μ. For computation of the Mittag-Leffler function of complex arguments, another technique should be used (see e.g., [32]).

The Bessel function of the first kind $J_\nu(z)$ is defined by the series [17]

$$J_\nu(z) = \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{(-1)^k (z/2)^{\nu+2k}}{k! \Gamma(\nu+k+1)}. \tag{23}$$

The following particular expressions are of interest in the present work:

$$J_{-1/2}(z) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi z}} \cos z, \quad J_{1/2}(z) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi z}} \sin z, \quad J_0(z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \cos(z \cos \theta) \, d\theta. \tag{24}$$

The asymptotic expansions of the Bessel function $J_\nu(r)$ for small and large real arguments are as follows:

$$J_\nu(r) \sim \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu+1)} \left(\frac{r}{2}\right)^\nu, \quad r \to 0; \quad J_\nu(r) \sim \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi r}} \cos(r - \nu\pi/2 - \pi/4), \quad r \to +\infty. \tag{25}$$

For more details on Mittag-Leffler and Bessel functions, we refer to [2,17,30,33,34].

3. An Integral Representation for the Subordination Kernel

Representations of the subordination kernel $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ are useful in view of the integral expression (10) for the fundamental solution. In a limited number of particular cases, the subordination kernel can be expressed in terms of elementary functions [15,16,22]:

$$\psi_{\frac{1}{2},1}(t,\tau) = \frac{t e^{-t^2/4\tau}}{2\sqrt{\pi}\tau^{3/2}}, \quad \psi_{1,\frac{1}{2}}(t,\tau) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} e^{-\tau^2/4t}, \tag{26}$$

$$\psi_{\alpha,\alpha}(t,\tau) = \frac{1}{\pi} \frac{t^\alpha \tau^{\alpha-1} \sin \alpha\pi}{t^{2\alpha} + 2t^\alpha \tau^\alpha \cos \alpha\pi + \tau^{2\alpha}}, \quad 0 < \alpha < 1. \tag{27}$$

However, for arbitrary values of the fractional parameters, explicit expressions are not available and other types of representations are needed.

The following Laplace transform pairs for the subordination kernel $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ can be derived from (12) and (13) (see also [15]):

$$\int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) e^{-\lambda\tau} \, d\tau = E_\beta(-\lambda^\alpha t^\beta), \tag{28}$$

and

$$\int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) e^{-st} \, dt = s^{\beta-1} \tau^{\alpha-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-s^\beta \tau^\alpha). \tag{29}$$

In this section, we deduce an integral representation of the subordination kernel $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ by inversion of the Laplace transform pair (29). We choose (29) instead of (28), because of the faster decay for large arguments of the correponding Mittag-Leffler function (see (20)).

Assume $0 < \alpha, \beta \leq 1$ and $\alpha + \beta < 2$. Applying the complex Laplace inversion formula to (29) yields:

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) = \frac{\tau^{\alpha-1}}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} e^{st} s^{\beta-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha s^\beta)\, ds, \quad c > 0, \tag{30}$$

where $s^\beta = \exp(\beta \ln s)$ means the principal branch of the corresponding multi-valued function defined in the whole complex plane cut along the negative real semi-axis. Since the Mittag-Leffler function is an entire function, $E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha s^\beta)$ is analytic for $s \in \mathbb{C}\backslash(-\infty, 0]$. Therefore, by the Cauchy's theorem, the integral in (30) can be replaced by an integral over the composite contour $\Gamma = \Gamma_1^- \cup \Gamma_2^- \cup \Gamma_3 \cup \Gamma_2^+ \cup \Gamma_1^+$, where

$$\Gamma_1^\pm = \{s = q \pm iR,\ q \in (0,c)\}, \Gamma_2^\pm = \{s = re^{\pm i\pi/2},\ r \in (\rho, R)\}, \ \Gamma_3 = \{s = \rho e^{i\theta},\ \theta \in (-\pi/2, \pi/2)\},$$

with an appropriate orientation (see Figure 1) and letting $\rho \to 0$, $R \to \infty$.
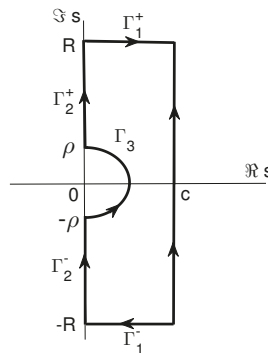
Figure 1. Contour Γ.

Since $(q + iR)^\beta \sim R^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2}$ as $R \to \infty$, for the integration on Γ_1^+ as $R \to \infty$ we obtain

$$\left| \int_{\Gamma_1^+} e^{st} s^{\beta-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha s^\beta)\, ds \right| \leq C \int_0^c e^{qt} R^{\beta-1} |E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha R^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})|\, dq \to 0, \quad R \to \infty, \tag{31}$$

due to the asymptotic expansion (20) for the Mittag-Leffler function, which is satisfied since $|\arg(\tau^\alpha R^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})| = \beta\pi/2 < (1 - \alpha/2)\pi$. The integral on Γ_1^- is treated in the same way.

Concerning the integral over Γ_3, we have

$$\left| \int_{\Gamma_3} e^{st} s^{\beta-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha s^\beta)\, ds \right| \leq \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} e^{\rho t \cos\theta} \rho^\beta |E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha \rho^\beta e^{i\beta\theta})|\, d\theta \to 0, \quad \rho \to 0, \tag{32}$$

since the Mittag-Leffler function under the integral sign is bounded as $\rho \to 0$. Therefore, (30)–(32) imply that $\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau)$ is given by the integral over $\Gamma_2^+ \cup \Gamma_2^-$ along the imaginary axis with $\rho \to 0$ and $R \to \infty$. This implies:

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) = \frac{\tau^{\alpha-1}}{2\pi i} \int_{-i\infty}^{i\infty} e^{st} s^{\beta-1} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha s^\beta)\, ds$$

$$= \frac{\tau^{\alpha-1}}{2\pi i} \left(\int_0^\infty \exp(rte^{i\pi/2}) r^{\beta-1} e^{i\beta\pi/2} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha r^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})\, dr \right.$$

$$\left. + \int_0^\infty \exp(rte^{-i\pi/2}) r^{\beta-1} e^{-i\beta\pi/2} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha r^\beta e^{-i\beta\pi/2}\, dr \right).$$

Therefore,

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) = \frac{\tau^{\alpha-1}}{\pi} \int_0^\infty r^{\beta-1} \Im\left\{e^{i(rt+\beta\pi/2)} E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha r^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})\right\} dr. \tag{33}$$

We observe that the integral in (33) is convergent, since the integrand behaves as $r^{\beta-1}$ for $r \to 0$ and as $r^{-\beta-1}$ for $r \to \infty$ due to the asymptotic Expansion (20) for the Mittag-Leffler function. The representation (33) can also be rewriten in the form

$$\psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) = \frac{\tau^{\alpha-1}}{\pi} \int_0^\infty r^{\beta-1} \left(\cos(rt+\beta\pi/2) I_{\alpha,\beta}(r,\tau) + \sin(rt+\beta\pi/2) R_{\alpha,\beta}(r,\tau)\right) dr, \tag{34}$$

where

$$I_{\alpha,\beta}(r,\tau) = \Im\{E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha r^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})\}, \quad R_{\alpha,\beta}(r,\tau) = \Re\{E_{\alpha,\alpha}(-\tau^\alpha r^\beta e^{i\beta\pi/2})\}.$$

For the numerical implementation of Formula (34), the real and imaginary parts above can be numerically calculated by employing a method of computation of the Mittag-Leffler function of complex arguments.

In the particular case of $\alpha = 1$ (time-fractional diffusion), representation (34) yields the following simpler formula for the subordination kernel

$$\psi_{1,\beta}(t,\tau) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty r^{\beta-1} \sin\left(rt+\beta\pi/2 - \tau r^\beta \sin\beta\pi/2\right) \exp(-\tau r^\beta \cos\beta\pi/2) dr. \tag{35}$$

Let us recall the relation $\psi_{1,\beta}(t,\tau) = t^{-\beta} M_\beta(\tau t^{-\beta})$, where $M_\beta(\cdot)$ denotes the Mainardi function (see [30]). Numerical results based on Formula (35) for the subordination kernel $\psi_{1,\beta}(t,\tau)$ are given in Figure 2.
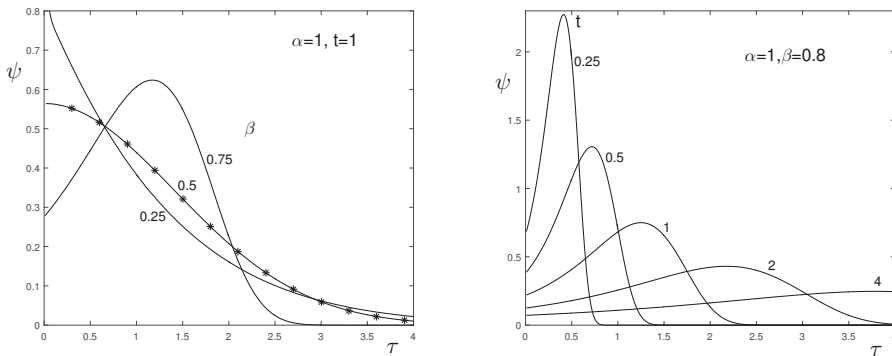
Figure 2. Subordination kernel $\psi_{1,\beta}(t,\tau)$ as a function of τ for: $t = 1$ and different values of β (**left**); $\beta = 0.8$ and different values of t (**right**). Numerical computations are based on Equation (35). The exact Expression (26) for $\alpha = 1, \beta = 0.5$, is given by symbols (∗).

4. Integral Representations for the Fundamental Solution

According to the subordination Relation (10) and the formula for the Gaussian kernel (3), the fundamental solution of Problem (1) admits the representation

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{(4\pi)^{n/2}} \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\tau) \tau^{-n/2} e^{-|\mathbf{x}|^2/4\tau} d\tau, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \ t > 0. \tag{36}$$

Subordination Formula (36) yields after the change of variables $\sigma = 1/\tau$

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{(4\pi)^{n/2}} \int_0^\infty \psi_{\alpha,\beta}(t,\sigma^{-1})\sigma^{n/2-2}e^{-a\sigma}\,d\sigma, \quad a = |\mathbf{x}|^2/4. \tag{37}$$

Applying the formula for the Laplace transform ([35], Section 4.1, Eq. (25))

$$\int_0^\infty \sigma^{\nu-1} f(\sigma^{-1})e^{-a\sigma}\,d\sigma = a^{-\frac{1}{2}\nu} \int_0^\infty s^{\frac{1}{2}\nu} J_\nu(2\sqrt{as})g(s)\,ds, \quad Re\,\nu > -1,$$

where $J_\nu(\cdot)$ denotes the Bessel Function (23) and $g(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f;s\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-s\sigma}f(\sigma)\,d\sigma$, we deduce from (37) and (28) the following representation:

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{|\mathbf{x}|^{1-\frac{n}{2}}}{(2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}}} \int_0^\infty \sigma^{\frac{n}{2}} J_{\frac{n}{2}-1}(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma)E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t^\beta)\,d\sigma. \tag{38}$$

The obtained integral representation (38) is not new—see, for example, [12–14], where it is deduced by applying a different argument.

Let us first note that for $\beta = 1$, the integral in (38) is always convergent and gives the following representation for the fundamental solution to the space-fractional diffusion equation:

$$G_{\alpha,1,n}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{|\mathbf{x}|^{1-\frac{n}{2}}}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \int_0^\infty \sigma^{n/2} J_{\frac{n}{2}-1}(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma)\exp(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t)\,d\sigma.$$

We observe, however, that if $\beta < 1$, the integral in (38) is convergent only for very limited ranges for the values of the other two parameters. Indeed, according to the asymptotic expansions of the Bessel and the Mittag-Leffler functions, (25) and (20), the integral in (38) is convergent only in the following cases: $n = 1$ and $\alpha > 1/2$ or $n = 2$ and $\alpha > 3/4$. If $n \geq 3$, the integral is divergent for any $\alpha \in (0,1)$. Our aim here is to derive from (38) convergent integral representations for $n = 1,2,3$, which hold for all $\alpha, \beta \in (0,1)$.

First, let $n = 1$. Plugging in (38), the representation for $J_{-\frac{1}{2}}(\cdot)$ from (24) yields:

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,1}(x,t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \cos(|x|\sigma)E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t^\beta)\,d\sigma, \tag{39}$$

which, according to (20), is convergent at $+\infty$ only if $2\alpha > 1$, unless $\beta = 1$. However, we can improve the convergence by performing integration by parts in (39). We use the identity

$$\frac{d}{d\sigma}E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t^\beta) = -\frac{2\alpha}{\beta}\sigma^{2\alpha-1}t^\beta E_{\beta,\beta}(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t^\beta), \tag{40}$$

which is derived from (21). In this way, the following integral representation is established:

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,1}(x,t) = \frac{2\alpha}{\beta}\frac{t^\beta}{\pi|x|} \int_0^\infty \sin(|x|\sigma)\sigma^{2\alpha-1}E_{\beta,\beta}(-\sigma^{2\alpha}t^\beta)\,d\sigma. \tag{41}$$

The asymptotic Expression (20) indicates that the integral in (41) is convergent for all $0 < \alpha, \beta \leq 1$. In the particular case $\alpha = \beta/2$, representation (41) can also be found in [15], Equation 4.13.

Representation (41) was used for the numerical evaluation of the one-dimensional fundamental solution, and the results are given in Figure 3. For numerical computation of the Mittag-Leffler function in (41), the integral representation (22) was used. Figure 3 shows that the numerical results based on Formula (41) are in good agreement with the exact solutions, (4) and (6).
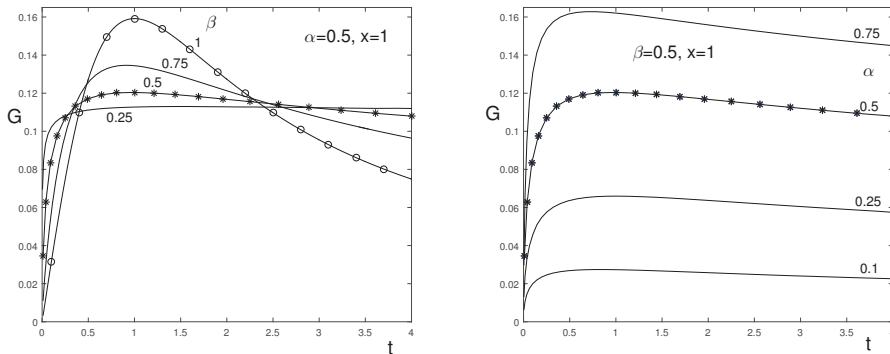
Figure 3. The fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,1}(x,t)$ as a function of t for: $x = 1$, $\alpha = 0.5$ and different values of β (**left**); $x = 1$, $\beta = 0.5$ and different values of α (**right**). Numerical computations are based on Formula (41). Exact Solution (6) for $\alpha = \beta = 0.5$ is given by symbols ($*$); exact solution for $\alpha = 0.5$, $\beta = 1$ computed using (4) is given by symbols ($\circ$).

Next, let us consider $n = 3$. Plugging in the general Formula (38), the representation for $J_{\frac{1}{2}}(\cdot)$ from (24) yields:

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,3}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2|\mathbf{x}|} \int_0^\infty \sigma \sin(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma) E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\alpha) \, d\sigma.$$

This integral is divergent for all $0 < \alpha, \beta < 1$. Integration by parts gives

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,3}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2|\mathbf{x}|^2} \int_0^\infty \cos(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma) \frac{d}{d\sigma} \left(\sigma E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\alpha) \right) \, d\sigma$$

and, by applying Formula (40), we obtain the following integral expression for the three-dimensional fundamental solution

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,3}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2|\mathbf{x}|^2} \int_0^\infty \cos(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma) F_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) \, d\sigma, \tag{42}$$

where

$$F_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) = E_\beta(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\beta) - \frac{2\alpha}{\beta} \sigma^{2\alpha} t^\beta E_{\beta,\beta}(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\beta). \tag{43}$$

The asymptotic Expansions (20) of the Mittag-Leffler functions imply that the integral in (42) is convergent for $1/2 < \alpha < 1$ and $0 < \beta \leq 1$. Again applying integration by parts in (42) yields

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,3}(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2|\mathbf{x}|^3} \int_0^\infty \sin(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma) H_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) \, d\sigma, \tag{44}$$

where $H_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) = -\frac{d}{d\sigma} F_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t)$ and therefore, by (43) and (21),

$$H_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) = \frac{2\alpha}{\beta} \sigma^{2\alpha-1} t^\beta \left(\left(1 + \frac{2\alpha}{\beta}\right) E_{\beta,\beta}(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\beta) + \frac{2\alpha}{\beta} E_{\beta,\beta-1}(-\sigma^{2\alpha} t^\beta) \right). \tag{45}$$

The asymptotic behavior of the Mittag-Leffler functions (20) implies that the integral in (44) is convergent for all $0 < \alpha, \beta < 1$.

In an analogous way, for $n = 2$, we deduce from (38) and (24)

$$G_{\alpha,\beta,2}(\mathbf{x},t) = -\frac{1}{2\pi^2|\mathbf{x}|^2} \int_0^\pi \frac{1}{\cos^2\theta} \left(1 + \int_0^\infty \cos(|\mathbf{x}|\sigma \cos\theta) H_{\alpha,\beta}(\sigma,t) \, d\sigma \right) d\theta, \tag{46}$$

where the function $H_{\alpha,\beta}$ is defined in (45). The integral in (46) is convergent for all $0 < \alpha, \beta < 1$.

It is verified numerically that integral representations (41), (46) and (44) for the two- and three-dimensional fundamental solutions are in agreement with the exact Solutions (5) and (7). For the numerical computation of the Mittag-Leffler functions in $H_{\alpha,\beta}$, the integral representation (22) is used.

Numerical results and comparison of the one- and two-dimensional fundamental solutions are given in Figure 4.
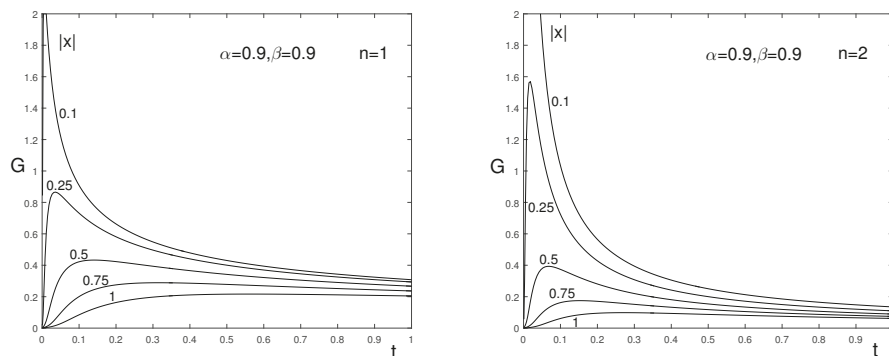
Figure 4. The fundamental solution $G_{\alpha,\beta,n}(\mathbf{x},t)$ for $n = 1$ and $n = 2$ as a function of t for $\alpha = \beta = 0.9$ and different values of $|\mathbf{x}|$. One-dimensional solution (**left**) and two-dimensional solution (**right**).

For a discussion on other integral representations for the fundamental solution, we refer to [7,12]. All numerical computations in this work were performed with the help of MATLAB.

5. Concluding Remarks

The subordination principle for space-time fractional diffusion equations is a useful tool for finding integral representations of the fundamental solution. The derived integral representations (41), (46) and (44) for $n = 1, 2, 3$, respectively, are appropriate for numerical implementation. The performed numerical experiments confirm that the analytical findings in this work are in agreement with the known exact solutions.

The technique used in the present work for deriving the integral representation for the subordination kernel does not rely on the scaling property and can be extended to equations with more general nonlocal operators in space, such as those considered in [36], as well as operators with a general memory kernel in time, as in [24,37].

References

1. Podlubny, I. *Fractional Differential Equations*; Academic Press: San Diego, CA, USA, 1999.
2. Kilbas, A.A.; Srivastava, H.M.; Trujillo, J.J. *Theory and Applications of Fractional Differential Equations*; North-Holland Mathematics Studies; Elsevier: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2006.
3. Kwaśnicki, M. Ten equivalent definitions of the fractional Laplace operator. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2017**, *20*, 7–51. [CrossRef]

4. Saichev, A.; Zaslavsky, G. Fractional kinetic equations: Solutions and applications. *Chaos* **1997**, *7*, 753–764. [CrossRef]

5. Mainardi, F.; Luchko, Y.; Pagnini, G. The fundamental solution of the space-time fractional diffusion equation. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2001**, *4*, 153–192.

6. Mainardi, F.; Pagnini, G.; Gorenflo, R. Mellin transform and subordination laws in fractional diffusion processes. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2003**, *6*, 441–459.

7. Hanyga, A. Multi-dimensional solutions of space-time-fractional diffusion equations. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. A* **2002**, *458*, 429–450. [CrossRef]

8. Meerschaert, M.M.; Sikorski, A. *Stochastic Models for Fractional Calculus*; De Gruyter Studies in Math; Walter de Gruyter: Berlin, Germany; Boston, MA, USA, 2012; Volume 43.

9. Gorenflo, R.; Mainardi, F. Subordination pathways to fractional diffusion. *Eur. Phys. J. Spec. Top.* **2011**, *193*, 119–132. [CrossRef]

10. Luchko, Y. A new fractional calculus model for the two-dimensional anomalous diffusion and its analysis. *Math. Model. Nat. Phenom.* **2016**, *11*, 1–17. [CrossRef]

11. Luchko, Y. Entropy production rate of a one-dimensional alpha-fractional diffusion process. *Axioms* **2016**, *5*, 6. [CrossRef]

12. Luchko, Y. On some new properties of the fundamental solution to the multi-dimensional space- and time-fractional diffusion-wave equation. *Mathematics* **2017**, *5*, 76. [CrossRef]

13. Boyadjiev, L.; Luchko, Y. Mellin integral transform approach to analyze the multidimensional diffusion-wave equations. *Chaos Solit. Fract.* **2017**, *102*, 127–134. [CrossRef]

14. Luchko, Y. Subordination principles for the multi-dimensional space-time-fractional diffusion-wave equation. *Theory Probab. Math. Stat.* **2018**, *98*, 121–141.

15. Bazhlekova, E. Subordination principle for space-time fractional evolution equations and some applications. *Integr. Transf. Spec. Funct.* **2019**, *30*, 431–452. [CrossRef]

16. Arendt, W.; Batty, C.J.K.; Hieber, M.; Neubrander, F. *Vector-Valued Laplace Transforms and Cauchy Problems*; Birkhäuser: Basel, Switzerland, 2011.

17. Abramowitz, M.; Stegun, I. *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*; Dover: New York, NY, USA, 1964.

18. Braaksma, B.L.J. Asymptotic expansions and analytic continuations for a class of Barnes-integrals. *Compos. Math.* **1963**, *15*, 239–341.

19. Kilbas, A.A.; Saigo, M. *H-Transforms: Theory and Applications*; Chapman & Hall/CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL, USA, 2004.

20. Feller, W. *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*; Willey: New York, NY, USA, 1971; Volume 2.

21. Schilling, R.; Song R.; Vondraček, Z. *Bernstein Functions: Theory and Applications*; De Gruyter: Berlin, Germany, 2010.

22. Yosida, K. *Functional Analysis*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 1965.

23. Kochubei, A.N. Distributed order calculus and equations of ultraslow diffusion. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.* **2008**, *340*, 252–281. [CrossRef]

24. Kochubei, A.; Kondratiev, Y.; da Silva, J.L. Random time change and related evolution equations. *arXiv* **2019**, arXiv:1901.10015.

25. Bazhlekova, E. Subordination principle for a class of fractional order differential equations. *Mathematics* **2015**, *3*, 412–427. [CrossRef]

26. Bazhlekova, E.; Bazhlekov, I. Subordination approach to multi-term time-fractional diffusion-wave equation. *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **2018**, *339*, 179–192. [CrossRef]

27. Bazhlekova, E. Subordination in a class of generalized time-fractional diffusion-wave equations. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2018**, *21*, 869–900.

28. Sandev, T.; Tomovski, Ž.; Dubbeldam, J.; Chechkin, A. Generalized diffusion-wave equation with memory kernel. *J. Phys. A Math. Theor.* **2019**, *52*, 015201. [CrossRef]

29. Deng, C.-S.; Schilling, R.L. Exact asymptotic formulas for the heat kernels of space and time-fractional equations. *arXiv* **2019**, arXiv:1803.11435v2.

30. Gorenflo, R.; Kilbas, A.A.; Mainardi, F.; Rogosin, S.V. *Mittag-Leffler Functions: Related Topics and Applications*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2014.

31. Gorenflo, R.; Mainardi, F. Fractional calculus: Integral and differential equations of fractional order. In *Fractals and Fractional Calculus in Continuum Mechanics*; Carpinteri, A., Mainardi, F., Eds.; Springer: Wien, Austria; New York, NY, USA, 1997; pp. 223–276.

32. Gorenflo, R.; Loutchko, J.; Luchko, Y. Computation of the MittagLeffler function and its derivatives. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2002**, *5*, 491–518.

33. Paneva-Konovska, J. *From Bessel to Multi-Index Mittag-Leffler Functions: Enumerable Families, Series in Them and Convergence*; World Sci. Publ.: London, UK, 2016.

34. Paneva-Konovska, J. Differential and integral relations in the class of multi-index Mittag-Leffler functions. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2018**, *21*, 254–265. [CrossRef]

35. Erdelyi, A.; Magnus, W.; Oberhettinger, F.; Tricomi, F.G. *Tables of Integral Transforms*; McGraw-Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1954; Volume 1.

36. Biswas, A.; Lörinczi, J. Maximum principles for the time-fractional Cauchy problems with spatially non-local components. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2018**, *21*, 1335–1359. [CrossRef]

37. Tomovski, Ž.; Sandev, T.; Metzler, R.; Dubbeldam, J. Generalized space–time fractional diffusion equation with composite fractional time derivative. *Physica A* **2012**, *391*, 2527–2542. [CrossRef]

The Role of the Central Limit Theorem in the Heterogeneous Ensemble of Brownian Particles Approach

Silvia Vitali *,†, Iva Budimir †, Claudio Runfola and Gastone Castellani

Department of Physics and Astronomy; University of Bologna, Viale Berti Pichat 6/2, 40127 Bologna, Italy;
iva.budimir.os@gmail.com (I.B.); claudio.runfola@gmail.com (C.R.); gastone.castellani@unibo.it (G.C.)
* Correspondence: silvia.vitali4@unibo.it
† These authors contributed equally to this work.

Abstract: The central limit theorem (CLT) and its generalization to stable distributions have been widely described in literature. However, many variations of the theorem have been defined and often their applicability in practical situations is not straightforward. In particular, the applicability of the CLT is essential for a derivation of heterogeneous ensemble of Brownian particles (HEBP). Here, we analyze the role of the CLT within the HEBP approach in more detail and derive the conditions under which the existing theorems are valid.

Keywords: central limit theorem; anomalous diffusion; stable distribution; fractional calculus; power law

1. Introduction

The heterogeneous ensemble of Brownian particle (HEBP) [1,2] describes a large class of anomalous diffusion phenomena, observed in many physical and biological systems [3–6]. The HEPB approach is based on the Langevin stochastic equation of diffusion of a free particle, i.e., the mesoscopic description of Brownian motion (Bm). The relaxation time (τ) and the diffusivity (ν) of the particle constitute two important scales of Bm process. In the classic Langevin approach, τ and ν are constant parameters. Instead, in the HEPB approach, it is assumed that τ and ν are time-independent random variables. In HEPB the single-particle trajectory (SPT) follows a classic Langevin dynamics and it is characterized by a stochastic realization of the parameters (τ_i and ν_i for particle i). The random nature of the scales τ and ν of the SPTs mimics the heterogeneity of the environment and/or the heterogeneity of an ensemble of particles diffusing in the environment. In fact, the anomalous diffusion behavior described by HEPB is generated by the heterogeneity of τ and ν values in different SPT realizations.

Long time and space correlation, characteristics of many anomalous diffusion processes [7–9], are often introduced by modifying the laws of the dynamics, by including memory kernels and/or integral operators [10,11] in the equations, for example, the fractional derivatives [12]. These changes in the dynamics introduce often non-Markovianity and/or non-locality in the processes.

The HEPB approach maintains the Markovianity of the process because the fundamental process remains the classical Brownian motion (Bm), but the heterogeneity of the scales involved in the system permits to describe a process with stationary features different from the Bm [13]. We will refer to this heterogeneity as to a *population of scales*, because the values of these scales follow a given probability distribution. Furthermore, the model structure permits to keep the standard dynamical laws, with integer time derivative of physical variables like the velocity (V) and the spatial coordinate (X) of the particle, and to avoid the introduction of fractional time derivatives.

One of the random scales contributing to the anomalous behavior the Langevin description of HEPB [1] is the time scale τ. When the distribution of τ is properly chosen and ν is kept constant, the HEPB describes the same one-time one-point probability density function (PDF) of the fractional Brownian motion (fBm), i.e., a normal distribution with variance (the mean squared displacement of the process, MSD) scaling as a power law of time in the long time limit:

$$\sigma_x^2(t) = \langle (x(t + t_0) - x(t_0))^2 \rangle = D_\alpha t^\alpha , \tag{1}$$

where $0 < \alpha \leq 2$ and D_α is the constant playing the role of diffusion coefficient. Depending on the value of the exponent α, it is possible to distinguish what is called super-diffusion and sub-diffusion, associated respectively to super-linear and sub-linear values of the parameter.

The convergence of the PDF to a normal distribution depends on the applicability of the classical central limit theorem (CLT). We will demonstrate later that by choosing properly the population of the time scales according to certain PDFs, both the Gaussian shape of the PDF and the anomalous scaling of the variance can be guaranteed.

The CLT represents a cornerstone in probability theory. It states that when a large amount of one -or multi-dimensional, real-valued and independent (or weakly dependent [14]) random variables are summed, the probability distribution of their sum will tend to the Gaussian distribution $\mathcal{G}$, defined by its characteristic function:

$$\hat{g}_\mathcal{G}(k) = exp(-i\mu k - \frac{k^2 \sigma}{2}). \tag{2}$$

This result has been generalized by the generalized CLT to a larger class of stable distributions described by the following characteristic function [15]:

$$\hat{g}_\alpha(k) = exp(-i\mu k - C|k|^\alpha [1 + i\beta(sign(k))\omega(k, \alpha)]), \tag{3}$$

where $\alpha, \beta, \mu, C \in \mathbb{R}$, $\omega(k, \alpha) = tan(\alpha\pi/2)$ if $\alpha \neq 1$, else $\omega(k, \alpha) = 2/\pi ln(|k|)$. The Gaussian distribution can be found to be a special yet fundamental case when $\alpha = 2$.

The generalized CLT [15] describes the convergence of the sum of stable variables with also infinite variance, for example, the symmetric Levy stable distribution. The stability property of the symmetric Levy stable distribution is fundamental to obtain a random walk with infinite large displacements as the well known Lévy–Feller diffusion process [8,16,17]. The PDF of this process converges in fact to the non-Gaussian but symmetric Levy stable distributions.

In the following sections, we briefly review the CLT formulation, then we introduce the problem of the convergence in the distribution of a mixture of Gaussian random components with random variances when the variance distribution is particularly extreme. Thereafter we recall the HEBP model formulation and define the sufficient conditions over τ to obtain a fBm-like process.

2. The Classical CLT Formulation

For completeness, we summarize here the most famous versions of the CLT and introduce some useful notation and definitions.

For parameters $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}_+$, a normal (or Gaussian) distribution $\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ is a continuous probability distribution defined by its density function

$$f(x \mid \mu, \sigma^2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} e^{-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}}, \tag{4}$$

where μ and σ^2 are the expectation and variance of the distribution, respectively. For $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$, we obtain what is usually called the standard normal distribution $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$.

For the sequence of random variables $(X_n)_{n \geq 1}$, we define random variables $(S_n)_{n \geq 1}$ as partial sums $S_n = X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n$. The theory of central limit theorem derives conditions for which there

exist sequences of constants $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$, $a_n > 0$, and $(b_n)_{n \geq 1}$ such that the sequence $\left(\frac{S_n - b_n}{a_n} \right)_{n \geq 1}$ converges in distribution to a non-degenerate random variable. In particular, CLT describes the convergence to standard normal distribution with constants defined as $a_n^2 = \sum_{k=1}^n Var[X_k]$ and $b_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbb{E}[X_k]$.

Different constraints on variables $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ lead to different versions of the CLT. We will briefly review the most prominent results of the theory of central limit theorems. For a more pedagogical and/or historical perspective, see [18–24].

We start with the case when variables $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ are independent and identically distributed. With additional requirements of finite mean μ and positive and finite variance σ^2, we obtain:

$$\frac{S_n - n\mu}{\sigma \sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{d} \mathcal{N}(0,1) \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty. \tag{5}$$

Dealing with independent, but not necessary identically distributed, random variables $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ with finite variance, we define $\mu_k = \mathbb{E}X_k$, $\sigma_k^2 = VarX_k$ and $s_n^2 = \sum_{k=1}^n \sigma_k^2$ for every $k \geq 1$. To obtain the main result, we need two Lindeberg's conditions:

$$L_1(n) = \max_{1 \leq k \leq n} \frac{\sigma_k^2}{s_n^2} \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty, \tag{6}$$

and

$$L_2(n) = \frac{1}{s_n^2} \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbb{E}|X_k - m_k|^2 I\{|X_k - m_k| > \epsilon s_n\} \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty \quad \text{(for every } \epsilon > 0). \tag{7}$$

The Lindeberg–Lévy–Feller theorem provides sufficient and necessary conditions for the following result:

$$\frac{S_n - \mathbb{E}S_n}{s_n} \xrightarrow{d} \mathcal{N}(0,1) \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty. \tag{8}$$

Lindeberg and Lévy proved (using different techniques) that if (7) holds, so do (6) and (8). Feller proved that if both (6) and (8) are satisfied, then so is (7).

Since Lindeberg's condition (7) can be hard to verify, we can instead use the Lyapounov's condition which assumes that for some $\delta > 0$, $\mathbb{E}|X_k|^{2+\delta} < \infty$ (for all $k \geq 1$) and

$$\frac{1}{s_n^{2+\delta}} \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbb{E}|X_k - \mu_k|^{2+\delta} \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty. \tag{9}$$

If for independent random variables $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ the Lyapounov's condition is satisfied, then the central limit theorem (8) holds. Since the Lyapounov's condition implies the Linderberg's second condition this result follows directly from the Lindeberg–Lévy theorem.

In all versions of the CLT mentioned so far, the assumption of finite variance was crucial. To extend our observations to the case when variance does not exist (or is infinite), we introduce the notion of domains of attraction. We are observing a sequence $X, X_1, X_2, \ldots$ of independent, identically distributed random variables. We say that X, or, equivalently, its distribution function F_X, belongs to the domain of attraction of the (non-degenerate) distribution G if there exist normalizing sequences $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$, $a_n > 0$, and $(b_n)_{n \geq 1}$, such that

$$\frac{S_n - b_n}{a_n} \xrightarrow{d} G \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty. \tag{10}$$

Another important concept is the one of stable distribution. Retaining the same notion, the distribution X is stable if there exist constants $(c_n)_{n \geq 1}$, $c_n > 0$, and $(d_n)_{n \geq 1}$ such that $S_n \overset{d}{=} c_n X + d_n$ (for all $n \geq 1$).

It can be shown that only stable distributions possess a domain of attraction [18]. The most notable stable distribution is Gaussian and by the classical CLT we know that all distributions X with finite variance belong to the domain of attraction of the Gauss Law. However, there are also some distributions with infinite variance that belong to it. More precisely, it can be shown [25] that random variable X with the distribution function F_X belongs to the domain of the attraction of the Gauss law if and only if

$$\lim_{x \to +\infty} \frac{x^2 \left[1 - F_X(x) + F_X(-x) \right]}{\int_{-x}^{x} t^2 dF_X(t)} = 0. \tag{11}$$

3. CLT for a Population of Gaussian Random Variables

We reviewed the fundamental theorems related to the classical CLT, having the Gaussian distribution as limit distribution of the sum of random variables S_n. The recurrent and sufficient (but not necessary) condition leading to the classical CLT description is that the variance of the i.i.d. random variables that are summed should be finite. However, there exist distributions with infinite variance that fall in the Gaussian domain of attraction [15,25]. In this paragraph, we provide a preparatory example to introduce the role of the CLT in the HEBP. The sum of a population of Gaussian variables with random variances (which may tend to infinity), is here rewritten as the sum of i.i.d. random variables defined as the mixture of random Gaussian components with random variances. If such a mixture has finite variance, the standard CLT conditions are satisfied. In fact, as it will be explained in more details hereafter, the convergence in distribution of the sum to a Gaussian is not always guaranteed when some extreme distribution of the random variance is considered.

Let us consider partial sums of independent Gaussian random variables

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} X_k, \tag{12}$$

where, denoting with $f_k(x_k)$ the PDF of X_k, we have:

$$f_k(x) \sim N(0, \sigma_k^2). \tag{13}$$

The distribution of the sum of n random variables can be exploited in term of a convolution integral. Thus, we can derive explicitly the limit distribution of Equation (12) by inverting the characteristic function $\phi(\omega)$ of S_n, which corresponds to the product of the characteristics $\phi_k(\omega)$ of X_k:

$$\phi(\omega) = \Pi_{k=1}^{n} \phi_k(\omega), \tag{14}$$

which gives

$$\phi(\omega) = \Pi_{k=1}^{n} \left(e^{-\frac{\omega^2}{2}\sigma_k^2} \right) \tag{15}$$

$$= e^{-\frac{\omega^2}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{n}\sigma_k^2}. \tag{16}$$

Let us assume $\sigma_k \sim \sqrt{\Lambda}$, with Λ distributed according to a generic PDF $f(\lambda)$. If the first moment of Λ exists in the limit of large n, by applying the law of large numbers, we can well approximate the Equation (16) in terms of $\mathbb{E}\Lambda$:

$$\phi(\omega) = e^{-\frac{\omega^2}{2} \cdot n \cdot \mathbb{E}\Lambda}, \tag{17}$$

which is indeed the characteristic function of a Gaussian distribution with variance $n \cdot \mathbb{E}\Lambda$ for finite expectation of $f(\lambda)$ even if the supremum of Λ does not exists.

The convergence of S_n can be proven using the CLT for the sequence of independent, identically distributed random variables $X, X_1, X_2, \ldots$ with $X \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \Lambda)$. These variables, in general, will not

have a Gaussian shape and can equivalently be defined as the product of the independent random variables:

$$X = \sqrt{\Lambda} \cdot Z, \tag{18}$$

where $Z \sim f_1(z) = N(0,1)$, $\Lambda \sim f_2(\lambda)$, $\Lambda \in \mathbf{R}_+$. The PDF $f(x)$ of X can be represented by the integral form [26]

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty f_1(x/\sqrt{\lambda}) f_2(\lambda) \frac{d\lambda}{\sqrt{\lambda}}. \tag{19}$$

Since Z is a Gaussian distribution, it follows that $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda}} f_1(x/\sqrt{\lambda}) = N(0, \lambda)$. Using Fubini's theorem, now it is easy to compute the second moment of X:

$$\begin{aligned} Var X &= \int_{-\infty}^\infty x^2 \int_0^\infty f_1(x/\sqrt{\lambda}) f_2(\lambda) \frac{d\lambda}{\sqrt{\lambda}} dx && (20) \\ &= \int_0^\infty \lambda f_2(\lambda) d\lambda = \mathbb{E}\Lambda. && (21) \end{aligned}$$

If $\mathbb{E}\Lambda$ is finite the partial sums $S_n = X_1 + \cdots + X_n$ of i.i.d. random variables X_k converge in distribution to a Gaussian

$$\frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{d} \mathcal{N}(0, \mathbb{E}\Lambda). \tag{22}$$

If $\mathbb{E}\Lambda$ is not finite, the distribution $f(x)$ may fall out of the Gaussian domain of attraction. For example, by choosing Λ (the random variance) to be the extremal Lévy density distribution, it follows that $f(x)$ (the mixture defined by Equation (19)) corresponds to the symmetric Lévy stable distribution [27]. In fact in the case $f(x)$ is itself a stable distribution, like the Levy stable distribution is, its sum belongs to its own domain of attraction.

However, infinite variance is not a synonym of stability. In fact, despite the presence of infinite $\mathbb{E}\Lambda$, under certain constraints on the tail of the distribution $f(x)$, $f(x)$ still satisfies (11) and falls in Gaussian domain of attraction, for example if its PDF for large x is proportional to $x^{-3}, x^{-3}log(x), x^{-3}/log(x)$ [15].

4. Application of the CLT in the HEBP

In the HEBP Langevin model [1] the anomalous time scaling of the ensemble-averaged MSD is generated by the superposition of a population of Bm processes in a similar way to equation (12), where each single process is characterized by its own independent timescale, and with frequency of appearance of such timescale described by the same PDF.

CLT applicability guarantees that after averaging over a properly chosen timescale distribution the shape of the PDF will remain Gaussian despite the time scaling will change from being linear in time to be a power low of time in the long time limit, following Equation (1). In order to show this applicability let first introduce the HEPB construction.

Let us start with the classic Langevin equation describing the dynamics of a free particle moving in a viscous medium (or Bm):

$$dV = -\frac{1}{\tau} V dt + \sqrt{2\nu} dW, \tag{23}$$

where V is the random process representing the particle velocity, τ in classical approach corresponds to the characteristic time scale of the process, i.e., the scale of decorrelation of the system. In the classic Langevin description the timescale is defined by the ratio $\frac{m}{\gamma}$, with m being the mass of the diffusing particle and γ the Stoke's drag force coefficient of the velocity. The multiplicative constant of the Wiener noise increment dW in the square root, ν, represents the velocity diffusivity and is related to the drag term by the fluctuation-dissipation theorem (FDT) [28]. This relation does not depend on the mass of the particle but on the average energy of the environment (the fluid) and the cross-sectional interaction between the medium and the particle moving. The Wiener increment dW is the increment

per infinitesimal time induced by the presence of a Gaussian white noise with unit variance and is hence fully characterized by its first two moments:

$$\langle dW(t)\rangle = 0, \qquad \langle dW(t)^2\rangle = t. \tag{24}$$

The presence of Gaussian increments in the stochastic equation leads to the stationary state $V \sim N(0, kT/m)$ and, being $V = dX/dt$, to the stationary increments process $X(t) \sim N(x_0, \sigma_x^2(t))$, with $\sigma_x^2(t) = \nu\tau^2 t$.

Let now the parameters ν and τ be time independent random variables: $\nu \sim p_\nu(\nu)$ and $\tau \sim p_\tau(\tau)$. The way it will affect $V(t)$ and $X(t)$ is clear in the case of ν, but more complicated to specify in the case of τ.

Let us consider the velocity defined as a product of random variables $V = \sqrt{\nu}V'$. It is easy to show that $\sqrt{\nu}$ factorizes out from the stochastic differential equation, resulting in the following description of the evolution of V':

$$dV' = -\frac{1}{\tau}V'dt + \sqrt{2}dW. \tag{25}$$

Therefore, the PDF associated to the processes $V(t)$ and $X(t)$ can be derived by applying the same integral formula of Equation (19), eventually producing non-Gaussian PDF and weak ergodicity breaking stochastic processes as result [29–31].

Dealing with random timescales is much more tricky because the variable τ is embedded in the correlation functions and is not possible to factorize it out without simultaneously transforming the time variable. Furthermore, because of the time variable transformation different realizations of the process would not be comparable directly anymore without reverse transformation.

To avoid these complications, we define V' as the superposition of N_τ independent Bm processes each with its own timescale:

$$V'(t) = \frac{1}{N_\tau}\sum_\tau V''(t|\tau), \tag{26}$$

where $V''(t)$ can still be described by the Equation (25). If the resulting process $V'(t)$ is still a Gaussian process, the previously described approach to derive $V = \sqrt{\nu}V'$ can be applied without further changes. However, all the correlation functions of V' and moments will become the sum of the correlation functions of the single processes $V''(t|\tau)$, which is equivalent to averaging with respect to $p_\tau(\tau)$. A careful choice of this distribution permits to obtain non-linear time scaling of the MSD of V'.

Let us demonstrate the applicability of the CLT explicitly making use of the Equation (17). Assuming that a global stationary state (in the sense of stationary increments) has been reached, the relation between the MSD and the VACF determined by the free particle Langevin dynamics can be expressed by:

$$\sigma_x^2(t, \tau) = 2\int_0^t (t-s)R(s, \tau)\,ds, \tag{27}$$

where $R(t, \tau) = \nu\tau e^{-t/\tau}$, with ν being an arbitrary constant, is the stationary VACF of the process associated to the realization τ of the timescale, $V''(t|\tau)$.

By omitting time dependence for sake of conciseness, we can define $\lambda = \sigma_x^2 = f(\tau)$, which can be considered as a random variable itself distributed according to the PDF $P(\lambda) = p_\tau(f^{-1}(\lambda)) \cdot \partial_\lambda(f^{-1}(\lambda))$. The average over λ is thus equivalent to computation of the expectation $\langle f(\tau)\rangle$ with respect to τ.

In principle we may compute the expectation after the integration of Equation (27), however, it is much easier to compute it before performing the integration to avoid self-canceling terms:

$$\langle\lambda\rangle = 2\int_0^t (t-s)\langle R(s, \tau)\rangle_\tau\,ds, \tag{28}$$

For a generic PDF $p_\tau(\tau)$ we obtain:

$$\langle R(t,\tau)\rangle_\tau = \nu \int_0^\infty \tau e^{-t/\tau} p_\tau(\tau) d\tau. \tag{29}$$

This expression is finite for any value of time only if $\langle \tau \rangle$ is finite. Moreover, this is a very important physical condition. In fact, when times goes to zero, $\langle R(t=0,\tau)\rangle_\tau$ is proportional to the average kinetic energy of the system.

The distribution $p_\tau(\tau)$ should have a power-law tail to introduce the desired anomalous time scaling of λ but a finite value of the first moment of τ to maintain CLT applicability. The importance of this assumption can be seen explicitly by solving the integral in Equation (29) for the distribution employed in [1]:

$$p_\tau(\tau) = \frac{\alpha}{\Gamma(1/\alpha)} \frac{1}{\tau} L_\alpha^\alpha\left(\frac{\tau}{C}\right), \tag{30}$$

where the constant $C = \langle \tau \rangle \frac{\Gamma(1/\alpha)}{\alpha}$ serves to control the value of the average and $L_\alpha^\alpha(\cdot)$ is the extreme Levy density distribution [10].

By considering the integral representation of the extremal Lévy density distribution and the Euler's gamma function with some more simplification (see Section 3.5, equation 3.109 in [32]), the result in (29) can be represented by the integral form:

$$R(t) = \nu\langle\tau\rangle \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} \frac{\Gamma(z/\alpha+1)\Gamma(-z)}{\Gamma(z+1)} \left(\frac{t}{C}\right)^z dz. \tag{31}$$

This expression can be solved through the residues theorem considering the poles $z/\alpha+1 = -n$ or $z = n$, with $n = 0,1,2,\ldots,\infty$, to obtain the short or the long time scaling of the variable. An interested reader can verify the explicit derivation in [1,32]. By plugging this result in Equation (28), without any assumption about time values, we observe that the condition of finite $\langle \tau \rangle$ is necessary to guarantee $\langle \lambda \rangle$ to be finite too, ensuring the Gaussian form of the PDF.

5. Discussions

The CLT has a fundamental role in the HEBP approach and, generally, in the theory of stochastic processes. The domain of attraction of the distribution of the increments determines the shape of the PDF of the stochastic process in the long time limit. In this work, we reviewed the main conditions of the classical CLT, by including also the less known case of distributions with infinite variance which fall in the Gaussian domain (with slower convergence). We proposed and analyzed a preparatory exercise to give the mathematical foundations to understand the approach used in HEBP to generate PDFs with Gaussian shape and non-linear scaling of the variance in time for the long time limit. It is shown that the sum of such a population of Gaussian random variables is mathematically defined by the sum of a more complex, and in general non-Gaussian, i.i.d. random variables. The population of Gaussian distributions can be interpreted, within a Bayesian approach, as the likelihood modulated by the prior distribution of a parameter of the model. The formal randomization of the parameter of the distribution (Equation (19)) is equivalent to the computation of the marginal likelihood, which corresponds indeed to the PDF of the i.i.d. random variables. This approach could be easily generalized to other distributions and parameters for statistical application purposes. The role of CLT in HEPB is then clarified. After recalling the derivation of the model, the conditions obtained in the preparatory example have been explicitly proven.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manuscript:

MDPI	Multidisciplinary Digital Publishing Institute
CLT	Central Limit Theorem
MSD	Mean squared displacement
VACF	Velocity auto-correlation function
Bm	Brownian motion
HEPB	Heterogeneous ensemble of Brownian particles
PDF	Probability density function

References

1. Vitali, S.; Sposini, V.; Sliusarenko, O.; Paradisi, P.; Castellani, G.; Pagnini, G. Langevin equation in complex media and anomalous diffusion. *J. R. Soc. Interface* **2018**, *5*, 20180282. [CrossRef]
2. Sliusarenko, O.Y.; Vitali, S.; Sposini, V.; Paradisi, P.; Chechkin, A.; Castellani, G.; Pagnini, G. Finite–energy Lévy–type motion through heterogeneous ensemble of Brownian particles. *J. Phys. A Math. Theor.* **2019**, *52*, 9. [CrossRef]
3. Golding, I.; Cox, E.C. Physical nature of bacterial cytoplasm. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **2006**, *96*, 098102. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
4. Hofling, F.; Franosch, T. Anomalous transport in the crowded world of biological cells. *Rep. Prog. Phys.* **2013**, *76*, 046602. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
5. Javer, A.; Kuwada, N.; Long, Z.; Benza, V.; Dorfman, K.; Wiggins, P.; Cicuta, P.; Lagomarsino, M. Persistent super-diffusive motion of escherichia coli chromosomal loci. *Nat. Commun.* **2014**, *5*, 3854. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
6. Caspi, A.; Granek, R.; Elbaum, M. Enhanced diffusion in active intracellular transport. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **2000**, *85*, 5655–5658. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
7. Mandelbrot, B.B.; Van Ness, J.W. Fractional brownian motions, fractional noises and applications. *SIAM Rev.* **1968**, *10*, 422–437. [CrossRef]
8. Dubkov, A.A.; Spagnolo, B.; Uchaikin, V.V. Lévy flight superdiffusion: An introduction. *Int. J. Bifurc. Chaos* **2008**, *18*, 2649–2672. [CrossRef]
9. Eliazar, I.I.; Shlesinger, M.F. Fractional motions. *Phys. Rep.* **2013**, *527*, 101–129. [CrossRef]
10. Mainardi, F; Luchko, Y.; Pagnini, G. The fundamental solution of the space-time fractional diffusion equation. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2001**, *4*, 153–192.
11. Lutz, E. Fractional Langevin equation. *Phys. Rev. E* **2001**, *64*, 051106. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
12. Mainardi, F. *Fractional Calculus and Waves in Linear Viscoelasticity*; Imperial College Press: London, UK, 2010; p. 340, ISBN 978-1-84816-329-4.
13. D'Ovidio, M.; Vitali, S.; Sposini, V.; Sliusarenko, O.; Paradisi, P.; Castellani, G.; Pagnini, G. Centre-of-mass like superposition of Ornstein–Uhlenbeck processes: A pathway to non-autonomous stochastic differential equations and to fractional diffusion. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2018** *21*, 1420–1435. [CrossRef]
14. Fischer, J.W. *A History of Central Limit Theorem—from Classical to Modern Probability Theory*; Buchwald, J.Z., Berggren, J.L., Lützen, J., Eds; Springer: New York, NY, USA, 2011.
15. Bouchaud, P.; Georges, A. Anomalous diffusion in disordered media: statistical mechanics, models and physical applications. *Phys. Rep. (Rev. Sec. Phys. Lett.)* **1990**, *195*, 127–293. [CrossRef]
16. Montroll, E.W.; Shlesinger, O.F. The wonderful world of random walks. In *Non Equilibrium Phenomena. From Stochastics to Hydrodynamics*; Lebow tz, J.L., Montroll, E.W., Eds.; North-Holland Physics Publishing (Studies in Statistical Mechanics): Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1984; Volume 11.

17. Gorenflo, R.; De Fabritiis, G.; Mainardi, F. Discrete random walk models for symmetric Lévy–Feller diffusion processes. *Physica A* **1999**, *269*, 79–89. [CrossRef]
18. Gut, A. *Probability: A Graduate Course*; Casella, G., Fienberg, S., Olkin, I., Eds.; Springer: New York, NY, USA, 2005.
19. Le Cam, L.M. The Central Limit Theorem around 1935. *Stat. Sci.* **1986**, *1*, 78–96. [CrossRef]
20. Chebyshev, P.L. Sur deux théorèmes relatifs aux probabilités. *Acta Math.* **1891**, *14*, 305–315.
21. Markov, A.A. Sur les racines de l'équation $e^{x^2} \frac{d^l e^{-x^2}}{dx^l}$. *Bull. Acad. Impériale Sci. St. Pètersbourg* **1898**, *9*, 435–446.
22. Seneta, E. The Central Limit Problem and Linear Least Squares in Pre-Revolutionary Russia: The Background. *Math. Sci.* **1983**, *9*, 37–77.
23. Lindeberg, J.W. Über das Gauss'sche Fehlergesetz. *Skand. Aktuarietidskr.* **1922**, *5*, 217–234.
24. Billingsley, P. The Central Limit Theorem. In *Probability and Measure*, 3rd ed.; John Wiley & Sons, Inc.: Toronto, ON, Canada, 1995; pp. 357–363.
25. Mainardi, F.; Rogosin, S.V. *The Legacy of A.Ya. Khintchine's Work in Probability Theory*; Cambridge Scientific Publishers: Cambridge, UK, 2010.
26. Mainardi, F.; Pagnini, G.; Gorenflo, R. Mellin transform and subordination laws in fractional diffusion processes. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2003**, *6*, 441–459.
27. Pagnini, G.; Paradisi, P. A stochastic solution with Gaussian stationary increments of the symmetric space-time fractional diffusion equation. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2016**, *19*, 408–440. [CrossRef]
28. Kubo, R. The fluctuation-dissipation theorem. *Rep. Progr. Phys.* **1966**, *29*, 255. [CrossRef]
29. Molina-García, D.; Minh Pham, T.; Paradisi, P.; Manzo, C.; Pagnini, G. Fractional kinetics emerging from ergodicity breaking in random media. *Phys. Rev. E* **2016**, *94*, 052147. [CrossRef]
30. Mura, A. Non-Markovian Stochastic Processes and their Applications: from Anomalous Diffusion to Time Series Analysis. *Alma Mater. Tesi* **2008**, *25*, 207.
31. Sposini, V.; Chechkin, A.; Metzler, R. First passage statistics for diffusing diffusivity. *J. Phys. A Math. Theor.* **2018**, *52*, 4. [CrossRef]
32. Vitali, S. Modeling of Birth-Death and Diffusion Processes in Biological Complex Environments. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Bologna, Bologna, Italy, 2018.

Article

On the Matrix Mittag–Leffler Function: Theoretical Properties and Numerical Computation

Marina Popolizio [1,2]

1   Department of Electrical and Information Engineering, Polytechnic University of Bari, Via E. Orabona n.4, 70125 Bari, Italy; marina.popolizio@poliba.it
2   INdAM Research Group GNCS, Istituto Nazionale di Alta Matematica "Francesco Severi", Piazzale Aldo Moro 5, 00185 Rome, Italy

Abstract: Many situations, as for example within the context of Fractional Calculus theory, require computing the Mittag–Leffler (ML) function with matrix arguments. In this paper, we collect theoretical properties of the matrix ML function. Moreover, we describe the available numerical methods aimed at this purpose by stressing advantages and weaknesses.

Keywords: Mittag–Leffler function; matrix function; Schur decomposition; Laplace transform; fractional calculus

1. Introduction

The Mittag–Leffler (ML) function has earned the title of "Queen function of fractional calculus" [1–3] for the fundamental role it plays within this subject. Indeed, the solution of many integral or differential equations of noninteger order can be expressed in terms of this function.

For this reason, the accurate evaluation of the ML function has deserved great attention, not least because of the serious difficulties this computation raises. We cite, among the most fruitful contributions, the papers [4–8].

We have recently observed an increasing interest in computing the ML function for matrix arguments (e.g., see [9–15]): this need occurs, for example, when dealing with multiterm Fractional Differential Equations (FDEs), or with systems of FDEs, or to decide the observability and controllability of fractional linear systems.

In this paper, we want to collect the main results concerning the matrix ML function: we will start from the theoretical properties to move to the practical aspects related to its numerical approximation. Our inspiring work is the milestone paper by Moler and van Loan [16], dating back to 1978, dealing with the several ways to compute the matrix exponential. The authors offered indeed a review of the available methods which were declaimed, already in the paper's title, as "dubious" in the sense that none of them can be considered the top-ranked. Due to the great interest of the topic, twenty-five years later, the same authors published a revised version of this paper [17] to discuss important contributions given in the meantime. In this paper, we would like to use the same simple approach to highlight the difficulties related to the numerical approximation of the matrix ML function.

It is worth stressing that the exponential function is a special ML function; however, it has very nice properties that are not valid for any other instance of ML functions. The semi-group property is one of these and the impossibility to apply it enables, for example, the use of local approximations (which, in the case of the exponential, can be generalized to any argument by exploiting the cited property). Moreover, several methods for the matrix exponential computation were deduced from the fact that this function can be regarded as the solution of simple ordinary differential equations. An analog of this strategy for the ML function presents more difficulties since it can be regarded as a solution of the more involved FDEs.

It becomes clear then that the difficult goal of settling the best numerical method for the exponential function becomes even more tough when treating the matrix ML function. However, in this case, we can affirm that a top-ranked method exists; it was recently proposed [18] and is based on the combination of the Schur–Parlett method [19] and the Optimal Parabolic Contour (OPC) method [4] for the scalar ML function and its derivative. Roughly speaking, this method starts from a Schur decomposition, with reordering and blocking, of the matrix argument and then applies the Parlett's recurrence to compute the function in the triangular factor. Since this step involves the computation of the ML scalar function and its derivatives, the OPC method [4] is, with some suitable modification, fruitfully applied, as we will accurately describe in the following.

The paper is organized as follows: in Section 2, we recall the definition of the ML function and some basic facts about it. In Section 3, we collect the main theoretical properties of the ML function when evaluated in matrix arguments. We then move to the description of the numerical methods for the matrix ML function in Section 4 and to the computation of its action on given vectors in Section 5. Finally, some concluding remarks are collected in Section 6.

2. The Matrix ML Function

The ML function is defined for complex parameters α and β, with $\Re(\alpha) > 0$, by means of the series

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)}, \quad z \in \mathbb{C}, \tag{1}$$

with the Euler's gamma function $\Gamma(z) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{z-1} e^{-t} dt$.

It was introduced for $\beta = 1$ by the Swedish mathematician Magnus Gustaf Mittag–Leffler at the beginning of the twentieth century [20,21] and then generalized to any complex β by Wiman [22]. Throughout the paper, we will consider real parameters α and β since they are the most common.

The exponential is trivially a ML function for $\alpha = \beta = 1$.

Even the numerical computation of the scalar ML function is not a trivial task, and several studies have been devoted to it [4–6,23]. They all agree that the best approach to numerically evaluate $E_{\alpha,\beta}(z)$ is based on a series representation for small values of $|z|$, asymptotic expansions for large arguments, and special integral representations for intermediate values of z. Finally, Garrappa [4] proposed an effective code, based on some ideas previously developed in [5], which allows for reaching any desired accuracy on the whole complex plane. It is implemented in Matlab (2019, MathWorks Inc., Natick, MA, USA) and we will use this routine for the numerical tests in the following .

The simplest way to compute the matrix ML function is for diagonal arguments. Indeed, if A is a diagonal matrix with eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n$, then $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$ is also a diagonal matrix, namely $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = \text{diag}(E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_1), \ldots, E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_n))$, and only the ML function for scalar arguments comes into play.

There are many equivalent ways to extend the definition of the ML function to matrix arguments, as for more general functions [24]. Here, we recall some of them:

Definition 1. *Let $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$, α and β complex values with $\Re(\alpha) > 0$. Then, the following equivalent definitions hold for the matrix ML function:*

- *Taylor series*

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{A^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)}. \tag{2}$$

- *Jordan canonical form*
  Let $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_p$ be the distinct eigenvalues of A; then, A can be expressed in the Jordan canonical form

$$A = ZJZ^{-1} = Z diag(J_1, \ldots, J_p)Z^{-1}$$

with

$$J_k = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_k & 1 & & 0 \\ & \lambda_k & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ 0 & & & \lambda_k \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{C}^{m_k \times m_k} \tag{3}$$

and

$$m_1 + \ldots + m_p = n.$$

Then,

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = Z E_{\alpha,\beta}(J) Z^{-1} = Z diag(E_{\alpha,\beta}(J_1), \ldots, E_{\alpha,\beta}(J_p)) Z^{-1}$$

with

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(J_k) = \begin{bmatrix} E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k) & E'_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k) & \cdots & \frac{E^{(m_k-1)}_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k)}{(m_k-1)!} \\ & E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k) & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & \ddots & E'_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k) \\ 0 & & & E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_k) \end{bmatrix}.$$

- *Cauchy integral*

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) := \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_\Gamma E_{\alpha,\beta}(z)(zI - A)^{-1} dz, \tag{4}$$

  where Γ is a simple closed rectifiable curve that strictly encloses the spectrum of A.
- *Hermite interpolation*
  If A has the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_p$ with multiplicities $m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_p$, then

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) := r(A),$$

  where r is the unique Hermite interpolating polynomial of degree less than $\sum_{i=1}^{p} m_i$ that satisfies the interpolation conditions

$$r^{(j)}(\lambda_i) = E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_i), \ \ j = 0, \ldots, m_i - 1, \ i = 1, \ldots, p.$$

3. Theoretical Properties of the Matrix ML Function

We collect here the main theoretical properties of the matrix ML function [24–26]: the first 11 hold for general matrix functions while the remaining are specific for the ML function.

Proposition 1. *Let $A, B \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$, $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ with $\alpha > 0$. Let I and 0 denote the identity and the zero matrix, respectively, of dimension n. Then,*

1. *$A E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) A$;*
2. *$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A^T) = (E_{\alpha,\beta}(A))^T$;*
3. *$E_{\alpha,\beta}(XAX^{-1}) = X E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) X^{-1}$ for any nonsingular matrix $X \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$;*
4. *the eigenvalues of $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$ are $E_{\alpha,\beta}(\lambda_i)$ where λ_i are the eigenvalues of A;*
5. *if B commutes with A, then B commutes with $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$;*
6. *if $A = (A_{ij})$ is block triangular, then $F = E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$ is block triangular with the same block structure of A and $F_{ii} = E_{\alpha,\beta}(A_{ii})$;*
7. *if $A = diag(A_{11}, \ldots, A_{mm})$ is block diagonal, then*

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = diag(E_{\alpha,\beta}(A_{11}), \ldots, E_{\alpha,\beta}(A_{mm}));$$

8. $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A \otimes I) = E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) \otimes I$, *where $\otimes$ is the Kronecker product;*

9. $E_{\alpha,\beta}(I \otimes A) = I \otimes E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$;

10. *there is a polynomial $p(t)$ of degree at most $n-1$ such that $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = p(A)$.*

11. $E_{\alpha,\beta}(AB)A = A E_{\alpha,\beta}(BA)$;

12. $E_{\alpha,\beta}(0) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} I$;

13. $m E_{m\alpha,\beta}(A^m) = \sum\limits_{k=0}^{m-1} E_{\alpha,\beta}(e^{2\pi ki/m} A)$ *for any natural number $m \geq 1$;*

14. $m A^r E_{m\alpha,\beta+r\alpha}(A^m) = \sum\limits_{k=0}^{m-1} e^{2\pi ki(m-r)/m} E_{\alpha,\beta}(e^{2\pi ki/m} A)$ *for any natural numbers m and r with $m \geq 1$ and $m > r$;*

15. $A^m E_{\alpha,\beta+m\alpha}(A) = E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) - \sum\limits_{k=0}^{m-1} \dfrac{A^k}{\Gamma(\alpha k + \beta)}$ *for $\beta \geq 0$.*

   If A has no eigenvalues on the negative real axis, then

16. $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = \frac{1}{m} \sum\limits_{k=0}^{m-1} E_{\alpha/m,\beta}(e^{2\pi ki/m} A^{1/m})$;

17. $E_{2\alpha,\beta}(A) = \frac{1}{2}[E_{\alpha,\beta}(A^{1/2}) + E_{\alpha,\beta}(-A^{1/2})]$.

4. Numerical Evaluation of the Matrix ML Function

We give now an overview of different methods for the numerical evaluation of the matrix ML function, with emphasis on the strengths and weaknesses of each of them.

4.1. Series Expansion

As for the exponential, the Taylor series expansion (2) may be regarded as the most direct way to compute the matrix ML function. Indeed, in this definition, only matrix products appear thus to make the approach ideally very simple to implement. In practice, once a fixed number K of terms is chosen, one can use the approximation

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) \approx \sum_{j=0}^{K} \frac{A^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)}. \tag{5}$$

However, by following exactly the example presented in [16] for the exponential, we show the weakness of this approach. Indeed, we consider the matrix argument

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -49 & 24 \\ -64 & 31 \end{bmatrix}, \tag{6}$$

whose eigenvectors and eigenvalues are explicitly known,

$$V = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \ D = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -17 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then, the exact solution can be directly computed as $V E_{\alpha,\beta}(D) V^{-1}$ and $E_{\alpha,\beta}(D)$ is the diagonal matrix of diagonal entries $E_{\alpha,\beta}(-1)$ and $E_{\alpha,\beta}(-17)$. In Figure 1, we relate the relative error, in norm, between the exact solution and the approximation (5) as K varies, for three different values of α and $\beta = 1$.

Figure 1 clearly shows that the numerical approximation (5) can give unreliable results. In this specific example, the impressive growth of the error is due to numerical cancellation; indeed, the summation terms in Equation (5) get larger as j enlarges and they change sign by passing from the jth

power to the next one. This means that we sum up terms with very large modulus and opposite sign, and this is an undisputed source of catastrophic errors.
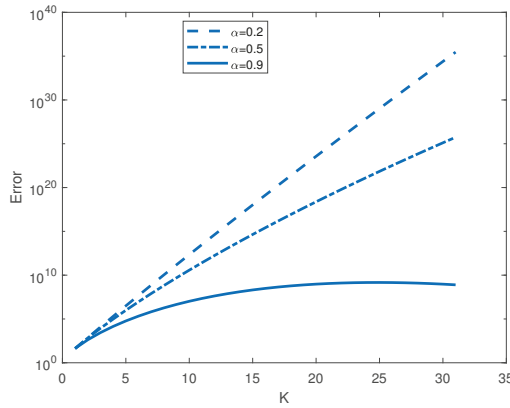
Figure 1. Relative error Vs number of terms K in the series (5) for three values of α, $\beta = 1$ and the matrix A as in Equation (6).

4.2. Polynomial Methods

Methods based on the minimal polynomial or the eigenpolynomial of a matrix have been proposed to numerically evaluate the matrix ML function. This kind of approach is in general poor and we show the weak points (which are exactly the same we encounter in applying it for the matrix exponential [16]).

The first thing to stress is that they require the eigenvalues' knowledge. This is usually not a priori available and numerical methods for their computation are usually very expensive. Thus, their application is limited to the case in which eigenvalues are at one's disposal.

Although in general the minimal polynomial and the eigenpolynomial are very difficult to compute, the latter is simpler to calculate and we focus on this approach.

Let $c(z)$ denote the characteristic polynomial of A with

$$c(z) = \det(zI - A) = z^n - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c_k z^k.$$

Then, by means of the Cayley–Hamilton theorem, it is easy to prove that any power of A can be expressed as a linear combination of $I, A, \dots, A^{n-1}$. Thus, also $E_{\alpha,\beta}(tA)$ is a polynomial in A with analytic coefficients in t; indeed, formula (2) for the matrix ML function reads

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(tA) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^j A^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)} \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} p_{jk} A^k \right)$$
$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} p_{jk} \frac{t^j}{\Gamma(\alpha j + \beta)} \right) A^k = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \tilde{p}_k(t) A^k.$$

The expression of coefficients p_{jk} is simply obtained once the coefficients c_j are known. However, the weak point is related to their numerical computation since it is very prone to round off error (as shown in [16] already for the 1-by-1 case). For this reason, methods of this kind are strongly discouraged.

4.3. The Schur–Parlett Method Combined with the OPC Method

The third property of Proposition 1 suggests looking for a suitable similarity transformation which moves the attention to the matrix function evaluated in a different argument, hopefully simpler to deal with. In particular, among the best conditioned similarity transformations, one can resort to the Schur one. Indeed, it factors a matrix A as

$$A = QTQ^*$$

with T upper triangular and Q unitary. Then,

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) = QE_{\alpha,\beta}(T)Q^*. \tag{7}$$

The Schur decomposition is among the best factorization one can consider since its computation is perfectly stable, unlike other decompositions, as the Jordan one that we will describe in the following. For this reason, it is commonly employed for computing matrix functions [27,28]. The actual evaluation of Equation (7) requires the computation of the ML function for a triangular matrix factor. This topic has been properly addressed for general functions by Parlett in 1976 [29], resulting in a cheap method. Unfortunately, Parlett's recurrence can give inaccurate results when T has close eigenvalues. In 2003, Higham and Davies [19] proposed an improved version of this method: once the Schur decomposition is computed, the matrix T is reordered and blocked according to its eigenvalues resulting in a matrix, say $\tilde{T}$. Specifically, each diagonal block of $\tilde{T}$ has "close" eigenvalues and distinct diagonal blocks have "sufficiently distinct" eigenvalues. In this way, Parlett's recurrence works well even in the presence of closed eigenvalues of T. Just a final reordering is required at the end of the process to recover $E_{\alpha,\beta}(T)$ from $E_{\alpha,\beta}(\tilde{T})$.

The evaluation of $E_{\alpha,\beta}(\tilde{T})$ starts from the evaluation of the ML function of its diagonal blocks, which are still triangular matrices whose eigenvalues are "close". Let T_{ii} be one of these diagonal blocks and σ denotes the mean of these eigenvalues. Then, $T_{ii} = \sigma I + M$ and

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(T) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{E_{\alpha,\beta}^{(k)}(\sigma)}{k!} M^k, \tag{8}$$

with $E_{\alpha,\beta}^{(k)}$ denoting the k-th order derivative of $E_{\alpha,\beta}$. The powers of M are expected to decay quickly since the eigenvalues of T_{ii} are close. This means that only a few terms of (8), usually less than the dimension of the block T_{ii}, suffice to get a good accuracy.

Evidently, the computation of (8) involves the computation of the derivatives of the scalar ML function, up to an order depending on the eigenvalues' properties. This issue has been completely addressed in [18], and we refer to it for the details.

In particular, the analysis of the derivatives of the ML function has been facilitated by resorting to the three parameters' ML function (also known as the Prabhakar function)

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}^{\gamma}(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\gamma)} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(\gamma + k)z^k}{k!\Gamma(\alpha k + \beta)}, \quad \alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \Re(\alpha) > 0,$$

since

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}^{(m)}(t) = m!E_{\alpha,\beta+\alpha m}^{m+1}(t). \tag{9}$$

The Prabhakar function is an important function occurring in the description of many physical models [30–35].

In practice, as for the scalar ML function, one could compute the Prabhakar function, or equivalently the ML derivatives, by the Taylor series for small arguments, the asymptotic expansion for large arguments and an integral representation in the remaining cases. In [18], however, to obtain

the same accuracy for all arguments, the inverse Laplace transform has been used in all cases to obtain the simple expression

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}^{\gamma}(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi\mathrm{i}} \int_{\mathcal{C}} e^s \frac{s^{\alpha\gamma-\beta}}{(s^\alpha - z)^\gamma} \mathrm{d}s,$$

with $\mathcal{C}$ any suitable contour in the complex plane encompassing at the left the singularities of the integrand. This last issue is quite delicate: indeed, from a theoretical point of view, the contours chosen to define the inverse Laplace transform are all equivalent while they can lead to extremely different results when the numerical evaluation of these integrals comes into play. Then, an accurate analysis is needed to choose the "optimal" contour which guarantees the desired accuracy, minimizes the computational complexity, and results in a simple implementation. The method proposed in [18], grounded on well established analysis [4,5,15], actually fulfills these requirements since the obtained accuracy is in any case close to the machine precision and the computational complexity is very reasonable. The Matlab code `ml_matrix.m` implements this method and will be used in the following for numerical tests.

4.4. Jordan Canonical Form

The expression of the matrix ML function in terms of its Jordan canonical form, as stated in Equation (3), could be a direct way to numerically evaluate it. However, the true obstacle in using it is the high sensitivity of the Jordan canonical form to numerical errors (in general, "there exists no numerically stable way to compute Jordan canonical forms" [36]).

To give an example, we consider the Matlab code by Matychyn [37], which implements this approach. We restrict the attention to the exponential case (that is, $\alpha = \beta = 1$) to have as reference solution the result of the well-established `expm` code by Matlab.

We consider the Chebyshev spectral differentiation matrix of dimension 10. Oddly, even for this "simple" function, the relative error is quite high, namely proportional to 10^{-3}.

The error source is almost certainly the well-known ill-conditioning of the eigenvector matrix. Indeed, the code `ml_matrix` gives a relative error proportional to 10^{-7} since it does not involve the Jordan canonical form.

Now, we consider as example the test matrix in [36]

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \varepsilon & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

as matrix argument; as before, we just consider the simplest case $\alpha = \beta = 1$ as a significant example.

For small values of ε, say $\varepsilon < 10^{-16}$, the code [37] stops running, since, when computing the Jordan canonical form, Matlab recognizes that the matrix is singular. On the other hand, the code `ml_matrix` works very well even for tiny values, say ε equal to the Matlab machine precision.

Analogously, let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ \varepsilon & & & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

be a $n \times n$ matrix. For $n = 16$ and $\varepsilon = 10^{-16}$, the code [37] just reaches an accuracy proportional to 10^{-2}, while the code `ml_matrix` reaches 10^{-17}.

From these examples, we can appreciate the high accuracy reached by the code `ml_matrix` described in Section 4.3. Moreover, its computational cost is lower than the code based on the Jordan canonical form and, far more important, it does not suffer from the eigenvalues' conditioning.

4.5. Rational Approximations

Among the nineteen methods to approximate the matrix exponential, Moler and van Loan [16] consider the "exact" evaluation of a rational approximation of the exponential function evaluated in the desired matrix argument. This is indeed a very common approach when dealing with more general functions having good rational approximations (see, e.g., [38–40]).

Indeed, let p_μ and q_ν be polynomials of degree μ and ν, respectively, such that, for scalar arguments z,

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) \approx \frac{p_\mu(z)}{q_\nu(z)}.$$

To evaluate the approximation above in the matrix case, we use a partial fraction expansion of the right-hand side above, leading to

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(z) \approx \tilde{p}_\ell(z) + \sum_{i=1}^{\nu} \omega_i \frac{1}{z - \sigma_i}, \tag{10}$$

in this way, the computation of $\tilde{p}_\ell(A)$ is trivial while the sum requires the computation of ν matrix inversions, namely $(A - \sigma_i I)^{-1}$, for $i = 1, \dots, \nu$.

Once the rational approximation is fixed, the sum (10) can be computed by actually inverting the matrices $(A - \sigma_i I)^{-1}$ if A is a small well-conditioned matrix or, if it is large, incomplete factorizations of A can be cheaply applied [40].

For the ML function, the problem is the detection of a suitable rational approximation to use. The Padé and the Chebyshev rational approximation are commonly preferred for the exponential; this choice is mainly due to their good approximation properties, to the fact that they are explicitly known, and the error analysis is well established.

A key feature of the Padé approximation is that it can be used if $\|A\|$ is not too large. This does not represent a restriction for the exponential function since it is endowed with the fundamental property

$$\exp(A) = (\exp(A/m))^m,$$

it allows for computing the exponential of an arbitrarily small argument A/m to then extend it to the original argument A. In general, m is chosen as a power of two in order to require only the repeated squaring of the matrix argument.

The property above is only valid for the exponential function, meaning that, for the ML function, there is no direct way to extend the local approximation to the global case.

Some years ago, a global Padé approximation to the ML function was proposed [8] working on the whole real semiaxis $(-\infty, 0]$. In the matrix case, this restricts the applicability to matrix arguments with real positive eigenvalues. Moreover, the computation of the coefficients is arduous; for this reason, small degrees are considered in [8], which lead to quite important errors.

We now describe the Carathéodory–Fejér approximation of the ML function as an effective tool when a rational approximation is needed.

Carathéodory–Fejér Approximation of the ML Function

As concerns the ML function, Trefethen was the first to address the problem of finding rational approximations when $\alpha = 1$ and $\beta \in \mathbb{N}$ [41]. Later on, the most general case has been deeply analyzed [11] grounding on the Carathéodory–Fejér (CF) theory; this theory is important since it allows for constructing a near best rational approximation of the ML function. In practice, once we fix a given degree ν, the residues $\omega_0, \dots, \omega_\nu$ and the poles $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_\nu$ are found that define the CF approximation of degree ν of the ML function. Thus,

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A) \approx \omega_0 I + \sum_{j=1}^{\nu} \omega_j (A - \sigma_j I)^{-1}. \tag{11}$$

When dealing with real arguments, the sum can be arranged as to almost halve the number of terms to compute. Moreover, since a small degree ν usually suffices to give a good approximation, only a few matrix inverses are actually required. Obviously, this approach is meaningful only for matrix arguments whose inversion can be computed in a stable and reliable way.

5. Numerical Computation of $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b$ for a Given Vector b

In many situations, the interest is in the computation of $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b$ for a given vector b. Any method described so far can be applied to compute $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)$ and then multiply it by the vector b. However, when the dimension of the matrix argument A is very large, ad hoc strategies have to be preferred.

The rational approximation (11) is, for example, a good solution; indeed, it reads

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b \approx \omega_0 b + \sum_{j=1}^{\nu} \omega_j (A - \sigma_j I)^{-1} b$$

and, rather than matrix inversions, the right-hand side requires only solving linear systems. This approach is effective even for small matrix arguments A, in which case direct methods can be applied for the linear systems involved. When the matrix argument is very large, several alternatives are at one's disposal: iterative methods can be, for example, applied (see [11]) and, when preconditioning is needed, the same preconditioner can be computed just once and then applied to all shifted systems. Incomplete factorizations of A can be used for example as preconditioners for the systems involved (we refer to [40] for a deep description of the approach).

Krylov subspace methods are an effective tool for the numerical approximation of vectors like $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b$; their first application was related to the exponential and then they have been successfully employed for general functions [38,42,43]. In particular, for the ML function, we refer to [11,12]. The idea is to approximate $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b$ in Krylov subspaces defined as

$$\mathcal{K}_m(A, b) \equiv span\{b, Ab, \dots, A^{m-1}b\}, \ m \in \mathbb{N}.$$

The matrix A is projected in these spaces as $H_m = V_m^T A V_m$, where $V_m \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times m}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{K}_m(A, b)$ built by applying the Gram–Schmidt procedure with $b/\|b\|$ as starting vector and $H_m \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ is an unreduced Hessenberg matrix whose entries are the coefficients of the orthonormalization process.

Then,

$$E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b \approx \|b\| V_m E_{\alpha,\beta}(H_m) e_1, \tag{12}$$

where e_1 denotes the first column of the identity matrix of dimension $m \times m$.

The potency of these techniques is that usually a small dimension m is enough to get a sufficiently accurate approximation; thus, some classical method usually works to compute $E_{\alpha,\beta}(H_m)$.

The convergence of Krylov subspace methods can be quite slow when the spectrum of A is large; this phenomenon was primarily studied for the exponential [44] and successively for the ML function [12]. In these cases, the Rational Arnoldi method can be successfully used, with superb results already for the "one-pole case" [12,45–47]. The idea of this method, known as Shift and Invert in the context of eigenvalue problems, is to fix a parameter γ and to approximate $E_{\alpha,\beta}(A)b$ in the Krylov subspaces generated by $Z = (I + \gamma A)^{-1}$, rather than A and b.

The computational complexity is larger than for standard Krylov subspace methods since the construction of the Krylov subspaces requires computing vectors of the form $(I + \gamma A)^{-1}y$, that is, solving several linear systems with the same shifted coefficient matrix. However, for suitable shift parameters, the convergence becomes much faster, to thus compensate the additional cost.

We refer to [12] for a comprehensive description of this method applied to the computation of the matrix ML function, together with the numerical tests to show the effectiveness of the approach. Moreover, for completeness, we want to stress that the actual computation of the matrix ML function in [12] was accomplished by combining the Schur–Parlett recurrence and the Matlab code `mlf.m` by Podlubny and Kacenak [48]. However, this approach cannot handle the derivatives of the ML scalar function; therefore, to treat more general situations, as, for example, matrix arguments with repeated eigenvalues, the approach described in Section 4.3 has to be considered within the implementation.

6. Conclusions

This paper offers an overview of the matrix ML function: the most important theoretical properties are collected to serve as a review and to help in the treatment of this function. Moreover, the existing methods for its numerical computation are presented, by following the plot used by Moler and Van Loan [16] to describe the methods for the numerical computation of the matrix exponential.

From this analysis, we may conclude that the approach based on the combination of the Schur–Parlett method and the OPC method is the most efficient: it is indeed cheap, accurate, and easy to implement.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manuscript:

CF   Carathéodory–Fejér
FDE   Fractional Differential Equation
ML   Mittag–Leffler
OPC   Optimal Parabolic Contour

References

1. Gorenflo, R.; Kilbas, A.A.; Mainardi, F.; Rogosin, S. *Mittag–Leffler Functions. Theory and Applications*; Springer Monographs in Mathematics; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2014; pp. xii, 420p.
2. Gorenflo, R.; Mainardi, F. Fractional calculus: Integral and differential equations of fractional order. In *Fractals and Fractional Calculus in Continuum Mechanics (Udine, 1996)*; Springer: Vienna, Austria, 1997; Volume 378, pp. 223–276.
3. Mainardi, F.; Mura, A.; Pagnini, G. The *M*-Wright function in time-fractional diffusion processes: A tutorial survey. *Int. J. Differ. Equ.* **2010**, *2010*, 104505. [CrossRef]
4. Garrappa, R. Numerical evaluation of two and three parameter Mittag-Leffler functions. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **2015**, *53*, 1350–1369. [CrossRef]
5. Garrappa, R.; Popolizio, M. Evaluation of generalized Mittag–Leffler functions on the real line. *Adv. Comput. Math.* **2013**, *39*, 205–225. [CrossRef]
6. Gorenflo, R.; Loutchko, J.; Luchko, Y. Computation of the Mittag-Leffler function $E_{\alpha,\beta}(z)$ and its derivative. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2002**, *5*, 491–518.
7. Valério, D.; Tenreiro Machado, J. On the numerical computation of the Mittag–Leffler function. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2014**, *19*, 3419–3424. [CrossRef]
8. Zeng, C.; Chen, Y. Global Padé approximations of the generalized Mittag–Leffler function and its inverse. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2015**, *18*, 1492–1506. [CrossRef]
9. Garrappa, R.; Moret, I.; Popolizio, M. Solving the time-fractional Schrödinger equation by Krylov projection methods. *J. Comput. Phys.* **2015**, *293*, 115–134. [CrossRef]
10. Garrappa, R.; Moret, I.; Popolizio, M. On the time-fractional Schrödinger equation: Theoretical analysis and numerical solution by matrix Mittag-Leffler functions. *Comput. Math. Appl.* **2017**, *74*, 977–992. [CrossRef]

11. Garrappa, R.; Popolizio, M. On the use of matrix functions for fractional partial differential equations. *Math. Comput. Simul.* **2011**, *81*, 1045–1056. [CrossRef]
12. Moret, I.; Novati, P. On the Convergence of Krylov Subspace Methods for Matrix Mittag–Leffler Functions. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **2011**, *49*, 2144–2164. [CrossRef]
13. Popolizio, M. Numerical solution of multiterm fractional differential equations using the matrix Mittag–Leffler functions. *Mathematics* **2018**, *1*, 7. [CrossRef]
14. Rodrigo, M.R. On fractional matrix exponentials and their explicit calculation. *J. Differ. Equ.* **2016**, *261*, 4223–4243. [CrossRef]
15. Weideman, J.A.C.; Trefethen, L.N. Parabolic and hyperbolic contours for computing the Bromwich integral. *Math. Comp.* **2007**, *76*, 1341–1356. [CrossRef]
16. Moler, C.; Van Loan, C. Nineteen dubious ways to compute the exponential of a matrix. *SIAM Rev.* **1978**, *20*, 801–836. [CrossRef]
17. Moler, C.; Van Loan, C. Nineteen dubious ways to compute the exponential of a matrix, twenty-five years later. *SIAM Rev.* **2003**, *45*, 3–49. [CrossRef]
18. Garrappa, R.; Popolizio, M. Computing the matrix Mittag–Leffler function with applications to fractional calculus. *J. Sci. Comput.* **2018**, *77*, 129–153. [CrossRef]
19. Davies, P.I.; Higham, N.J. A Schur-Parlett algorithm for computing matrix functions. *SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl.* **2003**, *25*, 464–485. [CrossRef]
20. Mittag-Leffler, M.G. Sopra la funzione $E_\alpha(x)$. *Rend. Accad. Lincei* **1904**, *13*, 3–5.
21. Mittag-Leffler, M.G. Sur la représentation analytique d'une branche uniforme d'une fonction monogène-cinquième note. *Acta Math.* **1905**, *29*, 101–181. [CrossRef]
22. Wiman, A. Ueber den Fundamentalsatz in der Teorie der Funktionen $E_\alpha(x)$. *Acta Math.* **1905**, *29*, 191–201. [CrossRef]
23. Garrappa, R. Numerical Solution of Fractional Differential Equations: A Survey and a Software Tutorial. *Mathematics* **2018**, *6*, 16. [CrossRef]
24. Higham, N.J. *Functions of Matrices*; Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM): Philadelphia, PA, USA, 2008; pp. xx, 425p.
25. Horn, R.; Johnson, C. *Topics in Matrix Analysis*; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 1994.
26. Sadeghi, A.; Cardoso, J.R. Some notes on properties of the matrix Mittag–Leffler function. *Appl. Math. Comput.* **2018**, *338*, 733–738. [CrossRef]
27. Del Buono, N.; Lopez, L.; Politi, T. Computation of functions of Hamiltonian and skew-symmetric matrices. *Math. Comp. Simul.* **2008**, *79*, 1284–1297. [CrossRef]
28. Politi, T.; Popolizio, M. On stochasticity preserving methods for the computation of the matrix pth root. *Math. Comput. Simul.* **2015**, *110*, 53–68. [CrossRef]
29. Parlett, B.N. A Recurrence Among the Elements of Functions of Triangular Matrices. *Linear Algebra Appl.* **1976**, *14*, 117–121. [CrossRef]
30. Mainardi, F.; Garrappa, R. On complete monotonicity of the Prabhakar function and non-Debye relaxation in dielectrics. *J. Comput. Phys.* **2015**, *293*, 70–80. [CrossRef]
31. Garrappa, R. Grünwald–Letnikov operators for fractional relaxation in Havriliak–Negami models. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2016**, *38*, 178–191. [CrossRef]
32. Garrappa, R.; Mainardi, F.; Maione G. Models of dielectric relaxation based on completely monotone functions. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2016**, *19*, 1105–1160. [CrossRef]
33. Garra, R.; Garrappa, R. The Prabhakar or three parameter Mittag-Leffler function: Theory and application. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2018**, *56*, 314–329. [CrossRef]
34. Giusti, A.; Colombaro, I. Prabhakar-like fractional viscoelasticity. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2018**, *56*, 138–143. [CrossRef]
35. Colombaro, I.; Garra, R.; Garrappa, R.; Giusti, A.; Mainardi, F.; Polito, F.; Popolizio, M. A practical guide to Prabhakar fractional calculus. **2019**, preprint.
36. Horn, R.; Johnson, C. *Matrix Analysis*; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 1990.
37. Matychyn, I. Matrix Mittag–Leffler function. In *MATLAB Central, File Exchange, File ID: 62790*; MathWorks, Inc.: Natick, MA, USA, 2017.
38. Lopez, L.; Simoncini, V. Analysis of projection methods for rational function approximation to the matrix exponential. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **2006**, *44*, 613–635. [CrossRef]

39. Trefethen, L.N.; Weideman, J.A.C.; Schmelzer, T. Talbot quadratures and rational approximations. *BIT* **2006**, *46*, 653–670. [CrossRef]

40. Bertaccini, D.; Popolizio, M.; Durastante, F. Efficient approximation of functions of some large matrices by partial fraction expansions. *Int. J. Comput. Math.* **2019**, *96*, 1799–1817. [CrossRef]

41. Schmelzer, T.; Trefethen, L.N. Evaluating matrix functions for exponential integrators via Carathéodory-Fejér approximation and contour integrals. *Electron. Trans. Numer. Anal.* **2007**, *29*, 1–18.

42. Saad, Y. Analysis of some Krylov subspace approximations to the matrix exponential operator. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **1992**, *29*, 209–228. [CrossRef]

43. Frommer, A.; Simoncini, V. Matrix Functions. In *Mathematics in Industry*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2008; Volume 13, pp. 275–303.

44. Hochbruck, M.; Lubich, C. On Krylov subspace approximations to the matrix exponential operator. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **1997**, *34*, 1911–1925. [CrossRef]

45. Moret, I.; Novati, P. RD-Rational Approximations of the Matrix Exponential. *BIT Numer. Math.* **2004**, *44*, 595–615. [CrossRef]

46. van den Eshof, J.; Hochbruck, M. Preconditioning Lanczos approximations to the matrix exponential. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **2006**, *27*, 1438–1457. [CrossRef]

47. Popolizio, M.; Simoncini, V. Acceleration techniques for approximating the matrix exponential. *SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl.* **2008**, *30*, 657–683. [CrossRef]

48. Podlubny, I.; Kacenak, M. The Matlab mlf code. In *MATLAB Central File Exchange, 2001–2009. File ID: 8738.2001*; MathWorks, Inc.: Natick, MA, USA, 2017.

A Note on the Generalized Relativistic Diffusion Equation

Luisa Beghin *,†**, Roberto Garra** *,†

Dipartimento di Scienze Statistiche, "Sapienza" Università di Roma, P. le A. Moro 5, 00185 Roma, Italy

*   Correspondence: luisa.beghin@uniroma1.it (L.B.); roberto.garra@sbai.uniroma1.it (R.G.)

†   These authors contributed equally to this work.

Abstract: We study here a generalization of the time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation based on the application of Caputo fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function. We find the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution and discuss the probabilistic meaning of the results obtained in relation to the time-scaled fractional relativistic stable process. We briefly consider also the application of fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function in order to generalize fractional Riesz-Bessel equations, suggesting their stochastic meaning.

Keywords: relativistic diffusion equation; Caputo fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function; Bessel-Riesz motion

MSC: 33E12; 34A08

1. Introduction

In recent papers, relativistic diffusion equations have been investigated both from the physical [1] and mathematical [2,3] points of view. It is well known that these kinds of space-fractional equations are strictly related to relativistic stable processes (see, e.g., [2]).

In [2], a fractional relativistic stable process was considered, connected with a time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation involving a derivative in the sense of Caputo. In [3], the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution and the probabilistic interpretation of the solution for the Cauchy problem of a time-fractional relativistic equation was discussed. On the other hand, the fractional derivative of a function with respect to another function is a useful mathematical tool that is recently gaining more interest in relation to models involving time-varying coefficients, see, e.g., [4–6] and the references therein.

The aim of this short paper is to consider the generalization of the time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation by means of a Caputo fractional derivative of a function with respect to another function.

We are able to find the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution for this new class of generalized relativistic diffusion equations. Moreover, we discuss its probabilistic meaning, showing the role of the time-scaling involved in the application of time-fractional operators. A time-scaled fractional tempered stable process is considered in connection to this class of equations. The time-scaled fractional relativistic stable process is also analyzed by evaluating the covariance and correlation coefficient and the connections with fractional-type equations.

We finally apply fractional derivatives with respect to another function in order to generalize the fractional Bessel-Riesz motion recently considered in [7].

2. Preliminaries on Fractional Relativistic Stable Processes and Fractional Operators

2.1. Fractional Relativistic Diffusion and Relativistic Stable Processes

The tempered stable subordinator (TSS) $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)$, $t > 0$, with stability index $\alpha \in (0,1)$ and tempering parameter $\mu > 0$, is a Lévy process with Laplace transform

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{-s\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)}) = e^{-t((s+\mu)^\alpha - \mu^\alpha)} \tag{1}$$

and transition density

$$f_{\mu,\alpha}(x,t) := e^{-\mu x + \mu^\alpha t} h_\alpha(x,t), \tag{2}$$

where $h_\alpha(x,t) = Pr\{\mathcal{H}_\alpha(t) \in dx\}$ and $\mathcal{H}_\alpha(t)$ is the α-stable subordinator. Moreover, let us denote with $\mathcal{L}_\alpha(t) := \inf\{s : \mathcal{H}_\alpha(s) > t\}$, $t \geq 0$, $\alpha \in (0,1)$ the inverse of the α-stable subordinator. For more details about TSS and applications we refer, for example, to [8,9].

The relativistic α-stable process is defined as a Brownian motion (hereafter denoted by $B(t), t \geq 0$) subordinated via an independent TSS, i.e.,

$$\mathcal{X}_{\mu,\alpha}(t) := B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)), \quad t > 0. \tag{3}$$

Following the notation used, for example, in [3], in this paper we generalize the relativistic diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = H_{\alpha,m} u, \tag{4}$$

where the spatial differential operator

$$H_{\alpha,m} := m - \left(m^{\frac{2}{\alpha}} - \Delta\right)^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}, \quad \alpha \in (0,2), \ m > 0, \tag{5}$$

is a relativistic diffusion operator, i.e., the infinitesimal generator of the relativistic stable process. In [3] the time-fractional generalization has been considered by replacing the first-order time-derivative with a Caputo fractional derivative. The related stochastic process has interesting properties, as discussed in [2,3].

We here briefly recall the notion of fractional tempered stable (TS) process introduced in [2].

Definition 1. *Let $\mathcal{L}_\beta(t)$, $t \geq 0$ be the inverse of the stable subordinator, then the fractional TS process is defined as*

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^\beta(t) := \mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(\mathcal{L}_\beta(t)), \quad t \geq 0, \mu \geq 0, \alpha, \beta \in (0,1) \tag{6}$$

where $\mathcal{L}_\beta$ is independent of the tempered stable subordinator (TSS) $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}$.

The density of the fractional TS process $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^\beta(t)$ satisfies the fractional equation (see [2] Theorem 6)

$$D_t^\beta f = \left[\mu^\alpha - \left(\mu + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)^\alpha\right] f, \quad \alpha \in (0,1), \ \mu \geq 0, \tag{7}$$

under initial-boundary conditions

$$\begin{cases} f(x,0) = \delta(x), \\ f(0,t) = 0. \end{cases} \tag{8}$$

We here denote by D_t^β the Caputo fractional derivative of order $\beta \in (0,1)$, i.e.,

$$D_t^\beta f(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(1-\beta)} \int_0^t (t-\tau)^{-\beta} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \tau} d\tau. \tag{9}$$

Definition 2. *The fractional relativistic stable process is defined as the time-changed Brownian motion*

$$\mathcal{X}^{\beta}_{\mu,\alpha}(t) := B(\mathcal{T}^{\beta}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)), \quad t \geq 0. \tag{10}$$

The density of the fractional relativistic stable process $\mathcal{X}^{\beta}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)$ coincides with the solution of the time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation ([2], Theorem 16)

$$D^{\beta}_t g = \left[\mu^{\alpha} - (\mu - \Delta)^{\alpha} \right] g, \tag{11}$$

under initial and boundary conditions

$$\begin{cases} g(x,0) = \delta(x), \\ \lim_{|x| \to \infty} g(x) = 0, \\ \lim_{|x| \to \infty} \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} g(x) = 0. \end{cases} \tag{12}$$

We will here present some generalizations of Equations (7) and (11) obtained by using fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function.

2.2. Fractional Derivatives of a Function with Respect to Another Function

Fractional derivatives of a function with respect to another function have been considered in the classical monograph by Samko et al. [10] and Kilbas et al. [11] (Section 2.5). Recently they were reconsidered by Almeida in [4] where the Caputo-type regularization of the existing definition and some interesting properties are provided. We recall the basic definitions and properties for the reader's convenience.

Let $v > 0$, $f(t) \in C^1([a,t])$ an increasing function such that $f'(t) \neq 0$ in $[a,t]$, the fractional integral of a function $g(t)$ with respect to another function $f(t)$ is given by

$$I^{v,f}_{a^+} g(t) := \frac{1}{\Gamma(v)} \int_a^t f'(\tau)(f(t) - f(\tau))^{v-1} g(\tau) d\tau. \tag{13}$$

Observe that for $f(t) = t^{\beta}$ we recover the definition of Erdélyi-Kober fractional integral recently applied, for example, in connection with the Generalized Grey Brownian Motion [12].

The corresponding Caputo-type evolution operator (according to our notation) is given by

$$\mathcal{O}^{v,f}_t g(t) := I^{n-v,f}_{a^+} \left(\frac{1}{f'(t)} \frac{d}{dt} \right)^n g(t), \tag{14}$$

where $n = [v] + 1$. Here we have used the symbol $\mathcal{O}^{v,f}_t(\cdot)$ in order to underline the generic integro-differential nature of the time-evolution operator, beyond the fractional calculus theory.

A relevant property of Equation (14) is that, if $g(t) = (f(t) - f(a))^{\beta-1}$ with $\beta > 1$, then (see Lemma 1 of [4])

$$\mathcal{O}^{v,f}_t g(t) = \frac{\Gamma(\beta)}{\Gamma(\beta - v)} (f(t) - f(a))^{\beta-v-1}. \tag{15}$$

As a consequence, the composite Mittag-Leffler function (see [6,13] for Mittag-Leffler functions)

$$g(t) = E_v(\lambda(f(t) - f(a))^v) \tag{16}$$

is an eigenfunction of the operator $\mathcal{O}^{v,f}_t$. In the next section we will consider $a = 0$.

Hereafter we denote by $\widehat{f}(k)$ the Fourier transform of a given function $f(x)$.

3. On the Generalized Relativistic Diffusion Equation

Theorem 1. *Let $f(t) \in C^2[0, T]$, such that $f(0) = 0$ and $f' \neq 0 \; \forall t \in (0, T]$, then the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution of the generalized time-fractional relativistic diffusion equation*

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} u(x,t) = \left[m - (m^{2/\alpha} - \Delta)^{\alpha/2} \right] u(x,t), \quad \alpha \in (0,2), \nu \in (0,1), \tag{17}$$

is given by

$$\widehat{u}(k,t) = E_\nu(-\theta(|k|)(f(t))^\nu), \tag{18}$$

where

$$\theta(|k|) = (m^{\frac{\alpha}{2}} + |k|^2)^{\alpha/2} - m. \tag{19}$$

Moreover, in the case $\nu = 1$, the fundamental solution of the equation

$$\left(\frac{1}{f'(t)} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right) u(x,t) = \left[m - (m^{2/\alpha} - \Delta)^{\alpha/2} \right] u(x,t), \quad \alpha \in (0,2) \tag{20}$$

is given by

$$\widehat{u}(k,t) = e^{-\theta(|k|)f(t)}. \tag{21}$$

Proof. By taking the spatial Fourier transform of Equation (17), we have that

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} \widehat{u}(k,t) = -\{(m^{\frac{\alpha}{2}} + |k|^2)^{\alpha/2} - m\} \widehat{u}(k,t) = -\theta(|k|) \widehat{u}(k,t), \tag{22}$$

under the initial condition $\widehat{u}(k,0) = 1$. Then, by using the fact that

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} E_\nu(-\theta(|k|)(f(t))^\nu) = -\theta(|k|) E_\nu(-\theta(|k|)(f(t))^\nu), \tag{23}$$

we obtain the claimed result.

The case $\nu = 1$ can be checked by simple calculations. □

Remark 1. *Observe that, for $m = 0$, we obtain the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution of the generalized space-time-fractional diffusion equation*

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} u(x,t) = -(-\Delta)^{\alpha/2} u(x,t), \quad \alpha \in (0,2), \nu \in (0,1), \tag{24}$$

while, for $\alpha = 2$, $m = 0$, we have the Fourier transform of the generalized time-fractional heat equation

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} u(x,t) = \Delta u(x,t), \quad \nu \in (0,1). \tag{25}$$

In the latter, some interesting cases have been considered in the literature. In particular

- *if $f(t) = t$, we recover the time-fractional diffusion equation, which is widely studied in the literature, (we refer, for example, to [14,15]).*
- *if $f(t) = (1 - e^{-\beta t})/\beta$, we have the fractional Dodson diffusion equation studied in [6].*
- *if $f(t) = \ln t$, we have the time-fractional diffusion involving a regularized Hadamard fractional derivative.*

Remark 2. *In Theorem 1, we take for simplicity the condition that $a = 0$ in the definition of the fractional operator $\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f}$ and we consider the renstriction to functions f such that $f(0) = 0$. In the more general case $a > 0$, $f(a) \neq 0$, we have that the Fourier transform of the fundamental solution for Equation (17) is given by*

$$\widehat{u}(k,t) = E_\nu(-\theta(|k|)(f(t) - f(a))^\nu). \tag{26}$$

Much care should be given, for example, to the case of logarithmic functions, where "a" must be greater than zero.

Remark 3. *Equation* (20) *with* $\alpha = 1$ *can be euristically interpreted as a relativistic Schrödinger-type equation with time-dependent mass.*

4. Time-Scaled Fractional Tempered Stable Process

Let us consider the following equation

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\beta,f} h = \left[\mu^\alpha - (\mu + \frac{\partial}{\partial x})^\alpha \right] h, \tag{27}$$

under the initial-boundary conditions

$$\begin{cases} h(x,0) = \delta(x), \\ h(0,t) = 0. \end{cases} \tag{28}$$

Let us denote by $\widetilde{f}$ the Laplace transform of a function f, i.e., $\widetilde{f}(\eta) := \int_0^{+\infty} e^{-\eta x} f(x) dx$. We now evaluate the Laplace transform, with respect to the space argument, of Equation (27), which reads

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\beta,f} \widetilde{h}(\eta,t) = \psi_{\alpha,\mu}(\eta) \widetilde{h}(\eta,t), \qquad \eta > 0,$$

with initial condition $\widetilde{h}(\eta,0) = 1$ and where $\psi_{\alpha,\mu}(\eta) := (\eta + \mu)^\alpha - \mu^\alpha$ (see [2] for details). Thus, we can write its solution as

$$\widetilde{h}(\eta,t) = E_\beta(-\psi_{\alpha,\mu}(\eta)[f(t) - f(0)]^\beta). \tag{29}$$

By comparing Equation (29) with Equation (20) in [2], we can derive the following relationship holding for the corresponding process $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t)$, for any $t > 0$

$$\mathbb{E}e^{-\eta \mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t)} = \mathbb{E}e^{-\eta \mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^\beta(f(t))} = E_\beta(-\psi_{\alpha,\mu}(\eta)[f(t) - f(0)]^\beta) \tag{30}$$

and, by the unicity of the Laplace transform, we can write the following equality of the one-dimensional distributions

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t) \overset{d}{=} \mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^\beta(f(t)),$$

which holds for any $t > 0$. Thus the process $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}$ can be called time-scaled fractional tempered stable process.

Therefore, we have the following:

Theorem 2. *The density of the time-scaled fractional TS process $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^\beta(f(t))$ satisfies the fractional Equation* (27) *under the initial-boundary Conditions* (28).

From the finiteness of the moments of the standard tempered stable process and by taking into account Equation (6), we can draw the conclusion that the moment generating function of $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}$ exists, for any f and $\alpha, \beta \in (0,1)$, and is equal to Equation (30), for $\kappa = -\eta$. By differentiating

$$\mathbb{E}e^{\kappa \mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t)} = E_\beta(-\psi_{\alpha,\mu}(-\kappa)[f(t) - f(0)]^\beta),$$

we then obtain the first and second moments of $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}$ as follows

$$\mathbb{E}\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t) = \frac{\alpha \mu^{\alpha-1}[f(t) - f(0)]^\beta}{\Gamma(\beta+1)} \tag{31}$$

and

$$\mathbb{E}\left[\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t)\right]^2 = \frac{\alpha(1-\alpha)\mu^{\alpha-2}[f(t)-f(0)]^\beta}{\Gamma(\beta+1)} + \frac{2\alpha^2\mu^{2\alpha-2}[f(t)-f(0)]^{2\beta}}{\Gamma(2\beta+1)}, \tag{32}$$

which, for $\beta = 1$ and $f(t) = t$, for any t, coincide with those of the standard tempered stable process (see [8]). Since, in this case, the process is not Lévy, we also loose the stationarity of increments.

We study the tails' behavior of the distribution of the time-scaled fractional TS process $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t)$, i.e., we obtain an estimate for $P(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t) > x)$, for $x \to +\infty$, by means of the asymptotic result holding for the usual TS subordinator $\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(t)$: It is well-known that, for $x \to +\infty$,

$$P(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(t) > x) \sim \frac{e^{-\mu x + \mu^\alpha t} x^{-\alpha} \Gamma(1+\alpha)\sin(\pi\alpha)t}{\alpha\pi} \tag{33}$$

(see [16]). Let $f(0) = 0$, for simplicity, and let $l_\beta(x,t) := P\{\mathcal{L}_\beta(t) \in dx\}$ be the transition density of the inverse β-stable subordinator, then we can write, by considering Equations (6) and (29) together, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\beta,f}(t) > x\right) &= \int_0^{+\infty} P(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}(z) > x) l_\beta(z, f(t)) dz \\
&= \text{[by (33)]} \\
&\sim \frac{e^{-\mu x} x^{-\alpha} \Gamma(1+\alpha)\sin(\pi\alpha)}{\alpha\pi} \int_0^{+\infty} e^{\mu^\alpha z} z\, l_\beta(z, f(t)) dz \\
&= \frac{e^{-\mu x} x^{-\alpha} \Gamma(1+\alpha)\sin(\pi\alpha)}{\alpha\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial k} \int_0^{+\infty} e^{kz} l_\beta(z, f(t)) dz \Big|_{k=\mu^\alpha} \\
&= \frac{e^{-\mu x} x^{-\alpha} \Gamma(1+\alpha)\sin(\pi\alpha)}{\alpha\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial k} E_\beta(kf(t)^\beta) \Big|_{k=\mu^\alpha} \\
&\sim \frac{e^{-\mu x} x^{-\alpha} \Gamma(1+\alpha)\sin(\pi\alpha) f(t)^\beta}{\alpha\pi\beta} E_{\beta,\beta}(\mu^\alpha f(t)^\beta).
\end{aligned}
$$

Taking the derivative out of the integral, in the previous lines, is allowed by the standard arguments for the moment generating function of the inverse stable subordinator

$$\int_0^{+\infty} e^{kz} l_\beta(z, f(t)) dz = E_\beta(kf(t)^\beta)$$

(see also [17]).

Going back to the problem considered in the previous section, we are now able to provide a stochastic interpretation for the fundamental solution of the generalized fractional relativistic diffusion equation.

Theorem 3. *The fundamental solution of the generalized time-fractional relativistic diffusion Equation* (17) *coincides with the density of the time-scaled fractional relativistic stable process* $\mathcal{X}_{m^{2/\alpha},\frac{\alpha}{2}}^\nu(f(t)) = B(\mathcal{T}_{m^{2/\alpha},\frac{\alpha}{2}}^\nu(f(t)))$.

We omit the complete proof, since it can be easily derived from [2], Corollary 13. Indeed, we here underline that, by using a time-fractional derivative with respect to a function, we obtain a deterministic time-change; therefore the related process is the time-scaled counterpart of the original process.

We can evaluate, by conditioning the expected value and variance of the time-scaled fractional relativistic stable process $\mathcal{X}_{m,\alpha/2}^\nu$. Indeed, we can write

$$\mathbb{E}\mathcal{X}_{m^{2/\alpha},\alpha/2}^\nu(t) = \mathbb{E}B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t)) = 0$$

and

$$var\mathcal{X}_{m^{2/\alpha},\alpha/2}^\nu(t) = \mathbb{E}\left\{\mathbb{E}\left[B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t))\Big|\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t)\right]^2\right\} = \mathbb{E}\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t) = \frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}[f(t)-f(0)]^\nu}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}.$$

This confirms that the mean-square displacement of the process behaves as $f(t)^{\nu}$ and thus crucially depends on the choice of f.

We also evaluate the covariance and correlation coefficient of the process $B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t))$, at least in the special case where f is a sublinear or linear function. Let moreover $f(0) = 0$, for simplicity. We prove, under these assumptions, that the process displays a long-range dependence (LRD). We need the following definition for LRD of non-stationary processes (see [9,18]):

Definition 3. *Let $s > 0$ and $t > s$. If, for a process $Z(t)$, $t \geq 0$, the following asymptotic behavior of the correlation function holds*

$$corr(Z(s), Z(t)) \sim c(s)t^{-d}, \qquad t \to +\infty,$$

where $c(s)$ is a constant (for fixed s) and $d \in (0,1)$, then $Z(t)$ is said to have the LRD property.

We restrict our analysis to the class of increasing, positive functions f, such that $\lim\limits_{t \to +\infty} \dfrac{f(t)}{t^{\rho}} = const$, or equivalently $f(t) \sim t^{\rho}$, for $\rho \in (0,1]$. It corresponds to considering sublinear functions, for which $|f(t-s)| \leq f(t) - f(s)$, for any $t \geq s$, (recalling that the last difference is always positive for an increasing function). The equality holds in the special case of linear functions. We start by recalling that the Brownian motion has stationary increments and the same holds for the tempered stable and the inverse stable subordinators (see, for example, [16,19], respectively). Moreover, it is easy to check that the stationarity of increments is preserved under composition of processes. As a consequence, taking into account Equations (6) and (10), we can write, for $s \leq t$, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
&cov(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(s)), B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t)))\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left\{ \mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(s))\right)^2 + \mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t))\right)^2 - \mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t)) - B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(s))\right)^2 \right\}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(s))\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t))\right)^2 - \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{E}\left(B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t-s))\right)^2\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(t)^{\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu+1)} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(s)^{\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu+1)} - \frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(t-s)^{\nu}}{2\Gamma(\nu+1)}\\
&\geq \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(t)^{\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}\left[-\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\binom{\nu}{j}f(t)^{-j}(-f(s))^j + f(s)^{\nu}f(t)^{-\nu}\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(t)^{\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}\left[\frac{\nu f(s)}{f(t)}\sum_{l=0}^{\infty}\binom{\nu-1}{l}\frac{f(t)^{-l}(-f(s))^l}{l+1} + f(s)^{\nu}f(t)^{-\nu}\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\mu^{\alpha-1}f(t)^{\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}\left[\frac{\nu f(s)}{f(t)} + f(s)^{\nu}f(t)^{-\nu} + O(f(t)^{-2})\right]\\
&\sim \frac{1}{2}\frac{\alpha\nu\mu^{\alpha-1}f(s)}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}f(t)^{\nu-1}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we easily check that the correlation coefficient is bounded below by the following asymptotic expression $f(s)^{1-\nu/2}f(t)^{(\nu/2)-1} \sim f(s)^{1-\nu/2}t^{\rho(\nu/2)-\rho}$ (for any fixed s and $t \to +\infty$). This means that $B(\mathcal{T}_{\mu,\alpha}^{\nu,f}(t))$ exhibits LRD behavior with $d = \rho(1-\nu/2) \in (\rho/2, 1)$, at least inside the class of sublinear functions (asymptotically behaving as fractional powers of t).

5. An Application to Generalized Fractional Bessel-Riesz Motion

In the recent paper [7], the authors give a stochastic representation for the solution of the following fractional Cauchy problem

$$D_t^\beta p = -\lambda(-\Delta)^{\alpha/2}(I-\Delta)^{\gamma/2}p, \quad , \gamma \geq 0, \alpha \in (0,2], \beta \in (0,1] \tag{34}$$

$$p(x,0) = \delta(x), \tag{35}$$

where $(-\Delta)^{\alpha/2}$ and $(I-\Delta)^{\gamma/2}$ are the inverses of the Riesz and the Bessel potential respectively. The Fourier transform of the Cauchy Equation (34), has been obtained in the form

$$\widehat{G}(k,t) = E_\beta\left(-\lambda t^\beta \|k\|^\alpha (1+\|k\|^2)^{\gamma/2}\right). \tag{36}$$

In [7], it was proved that the fundamental solution for Equation (34) coincides with the density of the stochastic process

$$X_{BR}(t) = W(L_{\alpha,\gamma}(\mathcal{L}_\beta(t))), \quad t \geq 0 \tag{37}$$

where W is the n-dimensional Brownian motion, $\mathcal{L}_\beta(t)$ is the inverse stable subordinator (according to our notation) and $L_{\alpha,\gamma}$ is the Lévy subordinator with Laplace exponent

$$\Phi(s) = \lambda s^{\alpha/2}(1+s)^{\gamma/2}, s > 0. \tag{38}$$

All these three processes are jointly independent.

Let us consider the generalized fractional counterpart of the Cauchy Equation (34) involving fractional derivatives with respect to another function, i.e.,

$$\mathcal{O}_t^{\nu,f} u(x,t) = -\lambda(-\Delta)^{\alpha/2}(I-\Delta)^{\gamma/2}u(x,t). \tag{39}$$

Assuming that $f(t)$ is a suitable smooth function such that $f(0) = 0$, we have that the fundamental solution of Equation (39) given by

$$u(x,t) = E_\beta\left(-\lambda(f(t))^\beta \|k\|^\alpha (1+\|k\|^2)^{\gamma/2}\right) \tag{40}$$

and therefore it coincides with the density of the time-scaled stochastic processes depending on f

$$X_{BR}(t) = W(L_{\alpha,\gamma}(\mathcal{L}_\beta(f(t)))), \quad t \geq 0 \tag{41}$$

6. Conclusions and Open Problems

We have analyzed here some applications of the time-fractional derivative with respect to a function, in the context of the so-called fractional relativistic diffusion equation. It is well-known that the most interesting case from the physical point of view corresponds to $\alpha = 1$, where the operator $-H_{1,m}$ appearing in Equation (5) represents the free energy of the relativistic Schrödinger equation. A physical discussion about the utility and meaning of the time-fractional generalizations of the relativistic diffusion is still missing. In view of the wide exhisting literature on the time-fractional Schrödinger equation, it is worth investigating this topic for future studies, also for the stochastic interpretation discussed here.

From the mathematical point of view, another interesting topic is the connection between higher order equations and time-fractional equations (see, e.g., [20]). In this case the relation is not trivial and it probably works only for specific values of the real order of the derivative.

Finally, a probabilistic interpretation of the fractional integrals with respect to a function can be developed, following the discussion presented in [21].

References

1. Baeumer, B.; Meerschaert, M.M.; Naber, M. Stochastic models for relativistic diffusion. *Phys. Rev. E* **2010**, *82*, 011132. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
2. Beghin, L. On fractional tempered stable processes and their governing differential equations. *J. Comput. Phys.* **2015**, *293*, 29–39. [CrossRef]
3. Shieh, N.R. On time-fractional relativistic diffusion equations. *J. Pseudo-Differ. Oper. Appl.* **2012** *3*, 229–237. [CrossRef]
4. Almeida, R. A Caputo fractional derivative of a function with respect to another function. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2017**, *44*, 460–481. [CrossRef]
5. Colombaro, I.; Garra, R.; Giusti, A.; Mainardi, F. Scott-Blair models with time-varying viscosity. *Appl. Math. Lett.* **2018**, *86*, 57–63. [CrossRef]
6. Garra, R.; Giusti, A.; Mainardi, F. The fractional Dodson diffusion equation: A new approach. *Ricerche di Matematica* **2018**, 1–11. [CrossRef]
7. Anh, V.V.; Leonenko, N.N.; Sikorskii, A. Stochastic representation of fractional Bessel-Riesz motion. *Chaos Solitons Fractals* **2017**, *102*, 135–139. [CrossRef]
8. Gajda, J.; Kumar, A.; Wylomańska, A. Stable Lévy process delayed by tempered stable subordinator. *Stat. Probab. Lett.* **2019**, *145*, 284–292. [CrossRef]
9. Kumar, A.; Gajda, J.; Wylomanska, A.; Poloczanski, R. Fractional Brownian motion delayed by tempered and inverse tempered stable subordinators. *Methodol. Comput. Appl. Probab.* **2019**, *21*, 185–202. [CrossRef]
10. Samko, S.G.; Kilbas, A.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Fractional Integrals and Derivatives*; Gordon and Breach Science Publishers: Yverdon-les-Bains, Switzerland, 1993.
11. Kilbas, A.A.A.; Srivastava, H.M.; Trujillo, J.J. *Theory and Applications of Fractional Differential Equations*; Elsevier Science Limited: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2006.
12. Pagnini, G. Erdélyi-Kober fractional diffusion. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2012**, *15*, 117–127. [CrossRef]
13. Gorenflo, R.; Kilbas, A.A.; Mainardi, F.; Rogosin, S.V. *Mittag-Leffler Functions, Related Topics and Applications*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2014.
14. Mainardi, F. The fundamental solutions for the fractional diffusion-wave equation. *Appl. Math. Lett.* **1996**, *9*, 23–28. [CrossRef]
15. Orsingher, E.; Beghin, L. Fractional diffusion equations and processes with randomly varying time. *Ann. Probab.* **2009**, *37*, 206–249. [CrossRef]
16. Gupta, N.; Kumar, A.; Leonenko, N. Mixtures of tempered stable subordinators. *arXiv* **2019**, arXiv:1905.00192v1.
17. Beghin, L.; Macci, C.; Martinucci, B. Random time-changes and asymptotic results for a class of continuous-time Markov chains on integers with alternating rates. *arXiv* **2018**, arXiv:1802.06434v1.
18. Ayache, A.; Cohen, S.; Lévy Véhel, J. The covariance structure of multifractional Brownian motion, with application to long range dependence. In Proceedings of the IEEE International Conference on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing—ICASSP 2000, Istanbul, Turkey, 5–9 June 2000.
19. Kaj, I.; Martin-Lof, A. Scaling Limit Results for the Sum of Many Inverse Levy Subordinators. *arXiv* **2012**, arXiv:1203.6831
20. D'Ovidio, M. On the fractional counterpart of the higher-order equations. *Stat. Probab. Lett.* **2011**, *81*, 1929–1939. [CrossRef]
21. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, S.S. Probabilistic Interpretation of Kober Fractional Integral of Non-Integer Order. *Prog. Fract. Differ. Appl.* **2019**, *5*, 1–5. [CrossRef]

Modeling Heavy Metal Sorption and Interaction in a Multispecies Biofilm

Berardino D'Acunto, Luigi Frunzo, Vincenzo Luongo * and Maria Rosaria Mattei

Department of Mathematics and Applications, University of Naples Federico II, 80126 Naples, Italy
* Correspondence: vincenzo.luongo@unina.it; Tel.: +39-081-675667

Abstract: A mathematical model able to simulate the physical, chemical and biological interactions prevailing in multispecies biofilms in the presence of a toxic heavy metal is presented. The free boundary value problem related to biofilm growth and evolution is governed by a nonlinear ordinary differential equation. The problem requires the integration of a system of nonlinear hyperbolic partial differential equations describing the biofilm components evolution, and a systems of semilinear parabolic partial differential equations accounting for substrates diffusion and reaction within the biofilm. In addition, a semilinear parabolic partial differential equation is introduced to describe heavy metal diffusion and sorption. The biosoption process modeling is completed by the definition and integration of other two systems of nonlinear hyperbolic partial differential equations describing the free and occupied binding sites evolution, respectively. Numerical simulations of the heterotrophic-autotrophic interaction occurring in biofilm reactors devoted to wastewater treatment are presented. The high biosorption ability of bacteria living in a mature biofilm is highlighted, as well as the toxicity effect of heavy metals on autotrophic bacteria, whose growth directly affects the nitrification performance of bioreactors.

Keywords: multispecies biofilm; biosorption; free boundary value problem; heavy metals toxicity; method of characteristics

1. Introduction

Most of the living microbial communities organize themselves in complex structures where the interaction between different species leads to advantageous environmental conditions for their growth [1,2]. These structures, known as multispecies biofilms, include different components, such as living cells, inert materials and extracellular polymeric substances (EPS) [3–6]. Their structural organization confers to these biological systems enhanced mechanical characteristics and adaptive features to many environmental conditions [7–9]. For instance, the protective self-secreted EPS matrix can strongly affect the dynamics of substances within the biofilm and it can also serve as a source of nutrients for bacteria [10,11].

These aspects are highly relevant in many applications as biofilms result in being more resistant than individual planktonic cells to toxic substances such as heavy metals, antibiotics, chlorine and detergents, due to the presence of natural diffusion barriers [12]. In recent years, biofilms have been widely used as biosorption technologies for metal immobilization and sequestration [13,14]. Biosorption is a combination of complex phenomena leading to the entrapment of a substance onto the surface of a living/dead organism or EPS. The mechanisms involved (complexation, precipitation, ion exchange, adsorption) are strongly affected by several biotic and abiotic parameters, such as pH, temperature, binding site density and affinity, which in turn influence the biosorption efficiency. Significant applications of biofilm technology to biosorption have been presented in the field of groundwater purification and mining industry wastewater treatment.

The sorption properties of various components constituting a biofilm (i.e., microorganisms, EPS and inert materials) depend on the different affinity of each specific component to heavy metals. It is known, for instance, that the cell membrane of many microorganisms allows for heavy metals accumulation due to the presence of surface functional groups [15]. These act as binding agents removing heavy metals during biofilm growth. On the other hand, heavy metals can be highly toxic compounds for a wide range of bacteria, i.e., autotrophic microorganisms, as they can act as inhibiting agent when significant metal concentrations are reached in bioreactors [16–19].

Many experimental studies demonstrated the possibility of using bacteria to govern heavy metal mobility in different aquatic ecosystems [20–22], but additional efforts are still required to completely understand the complex dynamics and interactions occurring between biofilms and heavy metals. In this context, mathematical modeling represents an appropriate tool to provide basic information on specific biosorption phenomena and stimulate further research on the multiplicity of mechanisms regulating biosorption process by biofilms [2]. For instance, multidimensional models can be implemented for specific applications when micro-scale outputs are required [7]. The spatial distribution of diffusing compounds and microbial species within the biofilm, and the physical structure of the biofilm at a micro-scale level can be investigated by using complex 2D and 3D mathematical models [23–26]. If a macro-scale output is required, as in the case of engineering biofilm reactors, 1D formulations have been recognized as efficient tools to analyze bioreactor performances in terms of biomass accumulation and degradation of substrates [27].

To this aim, a 1D mathematical model reproducing a biosorption phenomenon occurring in a typical biofilm reactor devoted to wastewater treatment has been proposed. The model is presented in its general form and then applied to a relevant case in wastewater treatment field. Specifically, the case study accounts for the coexistence of two different microbial species performing nitrification and organic carbon degradation. A continuum approach was used to describe biomass growth and decay within the biofilm [28]. The model accounts for the diffusion–reaction of substrates and the diffusion–biosorption of heavy metals within the biofilm [29,30]. More precisely, in this work, heterotrofic bacteria have been characterized by a high specific number of binding sites on their cell wall allowing heavy metal sequestration during biofilm evolution. On the other hand, the kinetics of autotrophic bacteria, which are usually more sensitive to toxic compounds then heterotrophic species, have been supposed to be negatively affected by the heavy metal concentration, which acts as an inhibiting agent and affects the efficiency of the nitrification process.

The main objective is to apply the knowledge of recently introduced mathematical approaches for biosorption in multispecies biofilms to highlight the effects of heavy metals in a traditional biofilm system for wastewater treatment. The work elucidates different ecological aspects of biofilms/heavy metals interaction, such as spatial distribution of biofilm components over time, substrate and heavy metals dynamics, and effects of heavy metals contamination. Numerical simulations remarked on the consistency of the model and showed the effect of toxic heavy metals on different microbial species coexisting in a multispecies biofilm.

2. Statement of the Problem

The effect of an inhibiting agent diffusing in a multispecies biofilm and the related biosorption interactions are discussed in the following sections. The specific case study concerns the competition for oxygen of heterotrophic and autotrophic microorganisms performing organic carbon degradation and nitrification, respectively. This is a typical situation occurring in the biological treatment units of municipal wastewater treatment plants.

According to [29], the biofilm dynamics were modeled as a free boundary problem essentially hyperbolic, where the free boundary is represented by the biofilm thickness. Its evolution is dictated by the growth of the microbial species constituting the biofilm $X_i(z, t)$ and the exchange fluxes between the biofilm and the bulk liquid. The biofilm growth is catalyzed by the availability of substrates $S_j(z, t)$, which diffuse from the bulk liquid into the biofilm where they are consumed by microbial species.

The model considers biofilm as constituted of four different components X_i, $i = 1, ..., 4$ (green and gray in Figure 1), which can accumulate/growth and decrease/decay during time. The biofilm growth and development is governed by the availability of substrates S_j, $j = 1, ..., 3$ (blue in Figure 1) within the biofilm, which regulate the microbial metabolism and interactions. These components include heterotrophic bacteria $X_1 = \rho_1 f_1$, autotrophic bacteria $X_2 = \rho_2 f_2$, inert material $X_3 = \rho_3 f_3$ and EPS $X_4 = \rho_4 f_4$, with f_i denoting the volume fraction of each biofilm component i and ρ_i the corresponding density. Specifically, EPS production was taken into account according to the approach proposed by [31]. Three different substrates, ammonium S_1, organic carbon S_2, and oxygen S_3 were taken into account as they are involved in metabolic pathways. The active microbial biomasses X_1 and X_2 naturally decrease via respiration and decay processes, producing residual inert biomass X_3. Contextually, they produce EPS as a metabolic byproduct during their growth. The autotrophs X_2 are nitrifying bacteria that grow by consuming ammonium S_1 and oxygen S_3. On the other hand, the heterotrophic bacteria simultaneously uptake organic carbon S_2 and oxygen S_3 for their growth. The two species compete for space and oxygen in multispecies biofilms [28].
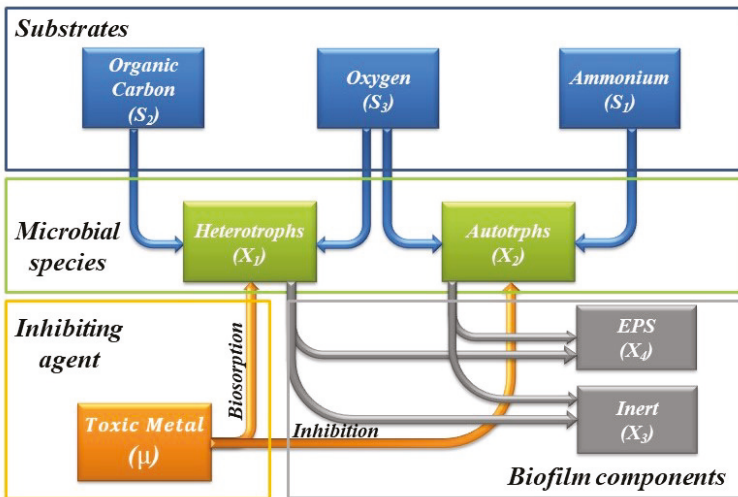
Figure 1. Schematic representation of the kinetic process.

The inhibiting agent μ (orange in Figure 1) was assumed to interact with the biofilm in two different ways: it can adsorb on a specific biofilm component, e.g., the heterotrophic biomass X_1, and act as inhibiting agent for an active microbial biomass, e.g., the autotrophic bacteria X_2. Note that a single inhibiting agent μ was considered in this work, but, in more complex cases, the effect of different heavy metals μ_k, $k = 1, ..., l$ can be taken into account by using a similar approach. The concentration of heavy metals in biofilm reactors negatively affects the kinetics of autotrophic bacteria, which are typically more sensitive to contamination than heterotrophic species. Consequently, a specific inhibition term was exclusively introduced in the autotrophic growth rate function. The sorption phenomenon was modeled by directly taking into account the dynamics of the binding sites of the biofilm matrix.

The biofilm growth is governed by the following equations:

$$\frac{\partial X_i}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(u X_i) = \rho_i r_{M,i}(z, t, \mu, \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{S}), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ 0 \leq z \leq L(t), \ t > 0,$$

$$X_i(z, 0) = X_{i0}(z), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ 0 \leq z \leq L_0, \tag{1}$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \sum_{i=1}^{4} r_{M,i}(z, t, \mu, \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{S}), \ 0 < z \leq L(t), \ t \geq 0, \ u(0, t) = 0, \ t \geq 0, \tag{2}$$

$$\dot{L}(t) = u(L(t), t) + \sigma_a(t) - \sigma_d(L(t)), \ t > 0, \ L(0) = L_0, \tag{3}$$

where $X_i = \rho_i f_i(z, t)$ denotes the concentration of the four biofilm components considered, ρ_i is the constant density, $u(z, t)$ is the velocity of microbial mass displacement with respect to the biofilm substratum, $r_{M,i}(z, t, \mu, \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{S})$ is the biomass growth rate, $L(t)$ is the biofilm thickness, $\mathbf{X} = (X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4)$, and $\mathbf{S} = (S_1, S_2, S_3)$. Equation (1) is derived from local mass balance considerations and governs the growth of the microbial species constituting the biofilm. The biomass expansion is modelled as an advective flux and depends on the metabolic reactions carried out by the microbial species. The reaction terms $r_{M,i}$ account for the microbial growth and decay, and EPS production. Equation (2) governs the biomass growth velocity; it is obtained summing over i Equation (1) and considering the constrain $\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i = 1$. The biofilm thickness evolution is ruled by an ordinary differential equation (Equation (3)) that is derived from global mass balance considerations and depends on both the biomass growth velocity $u(L(t), t)$ and the detachment $\sigma_d(L(t))$ and attachment $\sigma_a(t)$ fluxes [32,33]. The latter represent the exchange fluxes between the biofilm and the bulk liquid compartment.

The kinetic terms $r_{Mi}(z, t, \mu, \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{S})$ for the biofilm components X_1, X_2, X_3, and X_4 can be expressed as specified in the following lines. For the active biomass X_1 and X_2,

$$r_{M,1} = \left((1 - k_1)K_{\max,1}\frac{S_2}{K_{1,2} + S_2}\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3} + S_3} - b_{m,1}F_1\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3} + S_3} - (1 - F_1)c_{m,1}\right)X_1, \tag{4}$$

$$r_{M,2} = \left((1 - k_2)K_{\max,2}\frac{S_1}{K_{2,1} + S_1}\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3} + S_3}\frac{K_I}{K_I + \mu} - b_{m,2}F_2\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3} + S_3} - (1 - F_2)c_{m,2}\right)X_2, \tag{5}$$

and, for the inert component X_3,

$$r_{M,3} = (1 - F_1)c_{m,1}X_1 + (1 - F_2)c_{m,2}X_2, \tag{6}$$

while, for the EPS component X_4,

$$r_{M,4} = k_1 K_{\max,1}\frac{S_2}{K_{1,2} + S_2}\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3} + S_3}X_1 + k_2 K_{\max,2}\frac{S_1}{K_{2,1} + S_1}\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3} + S_3}\frac{K_I}{K_I + \mu}X_2, \tag{7}$$

where $K_{\max,i}$ denotes the maximum growth rate for biomass i, k_i is the coefficient associated with EPS formation, $K_{i,j}$ represents the affinity constant of substrate j for biomass i, $b_{m,i}$ denotes the endogenous rate for biomass i, $c_{m,i}$ is the decay–inactivation rate for biomass i, F_i represents the biodegradable fraction of biomass i, μ is the concentration of the heavy metal, which is supposed toxic for autotrophic bacteria X_2, and K_I is the inhibition constant. The kinetic growth rates for the inert material (Equation (6)) end EPS component (Equation (7)) are directly connected to the biological activities performed by the microbial species. These are modeled by Monod-like kinetics (Equations (4) and (5)) regulated by the availability of substrates within the biofilm.

The evolution of the free $\vartheta_i(z, t)$ and occupied $\bar{\vartheta}_i(z, t)$ binding sites is modeled by the equations

$$\frac{\partial \vartheta_i}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(u\vartheta_i) = r_{M,i}(z, t, \mu, \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{S}) - r_{D,i}(z, t, \mu, \boldsymbol{\vartheta}), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ 0 \leq z \leq L(t), t > 0,$$

$$\vartheta_i(z, 0) = \vartheta_{i0}(z), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ 0 \leq z \leq L_0, \tag{8}$$

$$\frac{\partial \bar{\vartheta}_i}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(u\bar{\vartheta}_i) = r_{D,i}(z, t, \mu, \boldsymbol{\vartheta}), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ , \ t > 0, 0 \leq z \leq L(t),$$

$$\bar{\vartheta}_i(z, 0) = \bar{\vartheta}_{i0}(z), \ i = 1, ..., 4, \ 0 \leq z \leq L_0, \tag{9}$$

where $r_{D,i}$ denotes the sorption rate, and ϑ_{i0} and $\bar{\vartheta}_{i0}$ are the initial distribution of the free and occupied binding sites, respectively. The free binding site fractions can increase (Equation (8)) due to the generation of new biomass, or decrease due to the biosorption. A parabolic partial differential equation (PDE) describes the evolution of the adsorbing compound μ within the biofilm

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(D_\mu \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial z}\right) = -Y_{ADS}N_\mu r_D(z,t,\mu,\boldsymbol{\vartheta_i}), \ 0 < z < L(t), \ t > 0,$$

$$\mu(z,0) = \mu_0(z), \ \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial z}(0,t) = 0, \ \mu(L(t),t) = \mu_L(t), \ 0 \le z \le L_0, \ t > 0, \tag{10}$$

where D_μ is the diffusivity coefficient for the adsorbing compound, N_μ denotes the binding sites density and Y_{ADS} is the yield of the adsorbing compound. The kinetic term r_D describes a non-reversible heavy metal sorption mechanism. This is expressed by

$$r_D = K_{ads}\mu\vartheta_1, \tag{11}$$

where K_{ads} denotes the adsorption constant. According to Equations (10) and (11), the dynamics of the adsorbing compound μ are regulated by the sorption rate r_D, which is multiplied by two parameters with physical meaning; Y_{ADS} is the amount of adsorbing compound allocated in each binding site, and N_μ is the number of binding sites related to the specific biofilm component. These parameters describe the sequestration ability of a specific biofilm component.

The diffusion−reaction of each substrate was modeled by the equations

$$\frac{\partial S_j}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(D_{S,j}\frac{\partial S_j}{\partial z}\right) = r_{S,j}(z,t,\mu,\mathbf{X},\mathbf{S}), \ j=1,...,3, 0 < z < L(t), \ t > 0,$$

$$S_j(z,0) = S_{j0}(z), \ \frac{\partial S_j}{\partial z}(0,t) = 0, \ S_j(L(t),t) = S_{jL}, \ j=1,...,3, \ 0 \le z \le L_0, \ t > 0, \tag{12}$$

where $D_{S,j}$ is the diffusivity coefficient, and $r_{S,j}(z,t,\mu,\mathbf{X},\mathbf{S})$ is the conversion rate of substrate j. These terms are specifically expressed by

$$r_{S,1} = -\frac{1}{Y_2}((1-k_2)K_{max,2}\frac{S_1}{K_{2,1}+S_1}\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3}+S_3}\frac{K_I}{K_I+\mu}X_2, \tag{13}$$

$$r_{S,2} = -\frac{1}{Y_1}((1-k_1)K_{max,1}\frac{S_2}{K_{1,2}+S_2}\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3}+S_3}X_1, \tag{14}$$

$$r_{S,3} = -(1-k_1)\frac{(1-Y_1)}{Y_1}((1-k_1)K_{max,1}\frac{S_2}{K_{1,2}+S_2}\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3}+S_3}X_1,$$

$$-(1-k_2)\frac{(1-Y_2)}{Y_2}((1-k_2)K_{max,2}\frac{S_1}{K_{2,1}+S_1}\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3}+S_3}\frac{K_I}{K_I+\mu}X_2,$$

$$-b_{m,1}F_1\frac{S_3}{K_{1,3}+S_3}X_1 - b_{m,2}F_2\frac{S_3}{K_{2,3}+S_3}X_2, \tag{15}$$

where Y_i denotes the yield for biomass i. A schematic representation of the model structure is shown in Figure 1.

3. Numerical Simulation

The presented mathematical model was applied to simulate the effect of exposition to a toxic heavy metal in a multispecies biofilm with an initial thickness of 300 μm. The metal represents an adsorbing compound for one of the microbial species and acts as a toxic agent for the other. In particular, μ is supposed to be toxic for autotrophic bacteria but can be sorbed on the cellular membrane of heterotrophic bacteria. The values of the kinetic and stoichiometric parameters, and the mass transfer

coefficients are reported in Table 1. They were adopted according to [30]. The initial conditions and biological parameters adopted in the simulations are reported in Table 2.

Numerical solutions to the free boundary problem stated in Section 2 were obtained by using the method of characteristics, e.g., [34–37]. Accuracy was checked by comparison to the geometric constraint $\sum_{i=1}^{4} f_i(z,t) = 1$. Simulations were performed using an original software developed on the Matlab platform.

Table 1. Kinetic parameters used for model simulations.

Parameter	Definition	Unit	Value
$K_{max,1}$	Maximum growth rate for X_1	d^{-1}	4.8
$K_{max,2}$	Maximum growth rate for X_2	d^{-1}	0.95
k_1	EPS formation by X_1	mg COD/mg COD	0.02
k_2	EPS formation by X_2	mg COD/mg COD	0.011
$K_{1,2}$	Organics half saturation constant for X_1	mg COD L^{-1}	5
$K_{1,3}$	Oxygen half saturation constant for X_1	mg L^{-1}	0.1
$K_{2,1}$	Ammonium half saturation constant for X_2	mg N L^{-1}	1
$K_{2,3}$	Oxygen half saturation constant for X_2	mg L^{-1}	0.1
$b_{m,1}$	Endogenous rate for X_1	d^{-1}	0.025
$b_{m,2}$	Endogenous rate for X_2	d^{-1}	0.0625
F_1	Biodegradable fraction of X_1	−	0.8
F_2	Biodegradable fraction of X_2	−	0.8
$c_{m,1}$	Decay-inactivation rate for X_1	d^{-1}	0.05
$c_{m,2}$	Decay-inactivation rate for X_2	d^{-1}	0.05
Y_1	Yield of X_1	$g_{biomass}/g_{substrate}$	0.4
Y_2	Yield of X_2	$g_{biomass}/g_{substrate}$	0.22
Y_{ads}	Yield of adsorbent	g_{metal}/n_{sites}	1
N_μ	Binding sites density for X_1	n_{sites}L^{-1}	1 and 50
K_I	Inhibition constant	mg L^{-1}	10^{-5}
ρ	Biofilm density	g m^{-3}	2500
λ	Biomass shear constant	mm d^{-1}	1250

Table 2. Initial conditions for biofilm growth.

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Value
COD concentration at $L = L(t)$	S_{1L}	mgL^{-1}	20
Oxygen concentration at $L = L(t)$	S_{3L}	mgL^{-1}	8
Ammonium concentration at $L = L(t)$	S_{2L}	mgL^{-1}	2
Free metal concentration at $L = L(t)$	μ_L	mgL^{-1}	2
Time Simulation	T	d	100
Initial Biofilm thickness	L_0	mm	0.3
Initial Volume Fraction of Autotrophs (X_1)	$f_{1,0}(z)$	−	0.399
Initial Volume Fraction of Heterotrophs (X_2)	$f_{2,0}(z)$	−	0.5
Initial Volume Fraction of Inert (X_3)	$f_{3,0}(z)$	−	0.001
Initial Volume Fraction of EPS (X_4)	$f_{4,0}(z)$	−	0.1

For all the dissolved species, i.e., substrates and adsorbing contaminant, Dirichlet conditions on the free boundary were assumed. In Equation (3) governing the free boundary evolution, $\sigma_d(L(t))$ was assumed to be a known function of L and t

$$\sigma_d(L(t)) = \lambda L^2(t), \tag{16}$$

where λ is the share constant whose value is reported in Table 1. No attachment phenomena were considered for all the numerical simulation, thus $\sigma_a(t)$ was fixed to zero. The initial biofilm composition is defined in Table 2. In particular, the biofilm is set to be initially constituted by the autotrophic

(39.9%) and heterotrophic (50%) bacteria, EPS (10%) and inert (0.1%). The simulations reproduce a typical environmental condition occurring in the biological units of municipal wastewater treatment plants. The oxygen concentration in the bulk liquid was fixed to 8 mg/L, consistently with real scale continuous aerated systems. The concentrations of soluble organic carbon, i.e., chemical oxygen demand (COD), and ammonium, i.e., nitrogen content (N), in the bulk liquid were fixed to 20 mg/L and 2 mg/L, respectively.

The model outputs are reported in Figures 2 and 3. Numerical simulations demonstrate model capability of predicting the spatial distribution of biofilm components, the occupied and free binding site fractions, the substrate trends, the free contaminants profiles over biofilm depth and the biofilm thickness. The simulations show the effect of the biosorption phenomenon on the biological evolution of the overall system, and how the different features of the heterotrophic biomass, such as the binding site density N_μ, can substantially affect the final configuration of the biofilm and its properties.
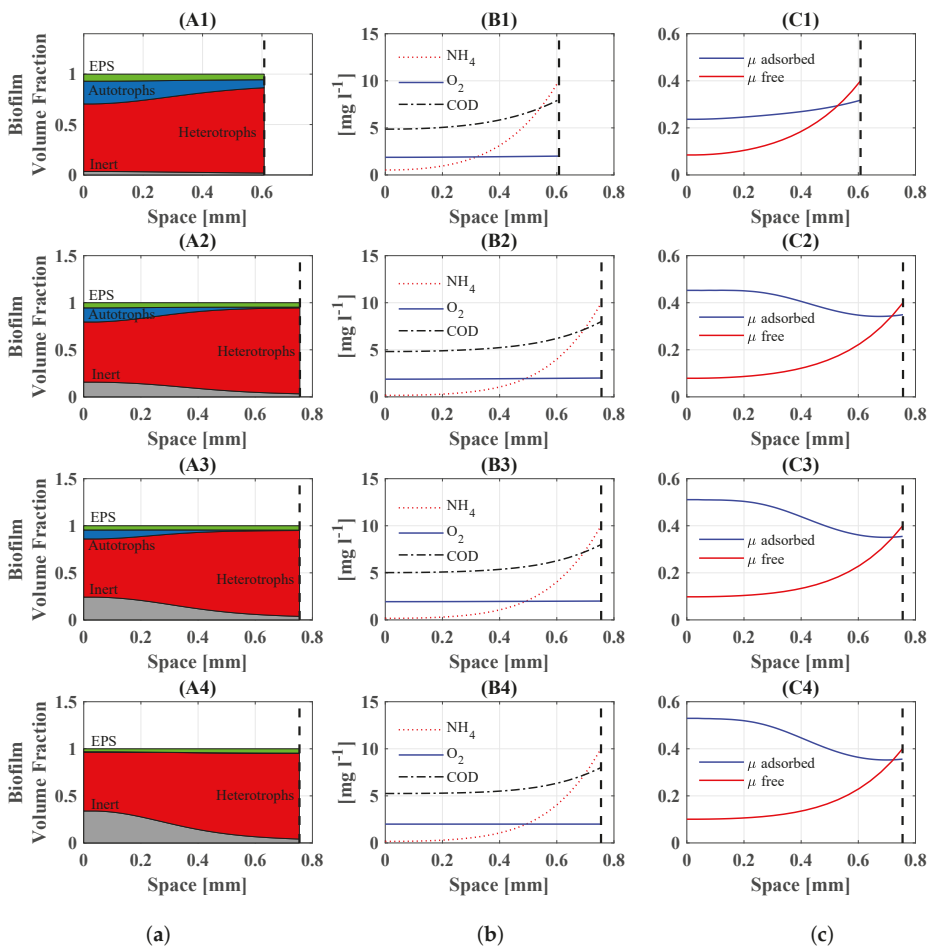
Figure 2. Effect of site density $N_\mu = 1$ on adsorption phenomenon and biological activity: (**a**) microbial species distribution (A1–A4); (**b**) substrate profiles (B1–B4); (**c**) adsorbed and free metal profile (C1–C4) after 1 (A1,B1,C1), 10 (A2,B2,C2), 20 (A3,B3,C3), and 100 (A4,B4,C4) days of simulation. The free metal concentration μ is multiplied by a factor of 10^3. The initial condition is reported in Table 2.

Two different values of the binding site density N_μ were used for numerical simulations (Figures 2 and 3). In the first simulation set, the value of site density N_μ was fixed to 1 (Figure 2), while, in the second set, N_μ was increased to 50 (Figure 3). In the first case ($N_\mu = 1$), the low site density determines a low adsorption rate resulting in a high diffusion of the free contaminant, which shows a fully penetrated profile (Figure 2, C1). The presence of μ in the inner part of the biofilm inhibits the metabolic activities of autotrophic bacteria. Despite the presence of autotrophs into the biofilm (Figure 2, A1), the ammonium is not degraded; indeed, the concentration of ammonium in the system remains constant (Figure 2, B1). The fraction of autotrophic bacteria decreases with time due to the toxic effect of μ (Figure 2, A2, A3 and A4). After 100 days of simulation, the autotrophs completely disappear from the biofilm (Figure 2, A4).
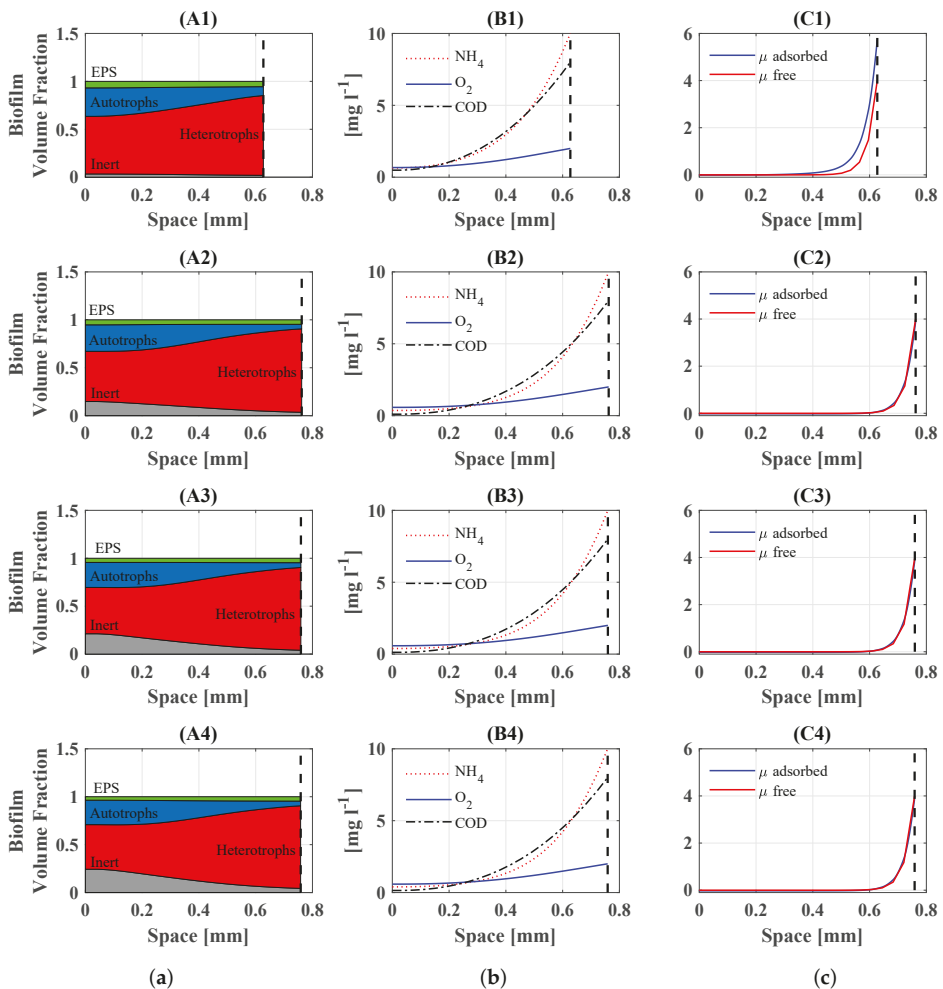
Figure 3. Effect of site density $N_\mu = 50$ on adsorption phenomenon and biological activity: (**a**) microbial species distribution (A1–A4); (**b**) substrate profiles (B1–B4); (**c**) adsorbed and free metal profile (C1–C4) after 1 (A1,B1,C1), 10 (A2,B2,C2), 20 (A3,B3,C3), and 100 (A4,B4,C4) days of simulation. The free metal concentration μ is multiplied by a factor of 10^4. The initial condition is reported in Table 2.

In the second case ($N_\mu = 50$), the higher site density determines a higher adsorption rate resulting in a lower diffusion of the heavy metal than in the first case (Figure 2, C1). It is interesting to notice that the concentration of the metal μ is essentially zero in the inner part of the biofilm, allowing the proliferation of autotrophic bacteria (Figure 3, A1). Due to the absence of μ, the metabolic activity of autotrophic bacteria is not inhibited and the ammonium is degraded (Figure 3, B1). Notably, the existence of autotrophic bacteria in the inner part of the biofilm is due to the relevant adsorption phenomenon occurring in the external part of the biofilm. Indeed, heterotrophic bacteria act as a biological shield for autotrophic bacteria, which can live and proliferate in the biofilm structure performing their biological activity. The coexistence of the two species is preserved after 100 d of simulation as it is possible to notice from the final distribution of the microbial species within the biofilm (Figure 2, A4).

Additional simulations were run by varying the inhibition constant K_I and the metal concentration within the bulk liquid μ_L. The first set of simulations was performed to test the effect of an increasing resistance of the autrotrophic component X_2 to the toxic metal. The site density was set to $N_\mu = 1$ to reproduce the case of a heterotrophic-autotrophic biofilm with a low sorption capability. The results were summarized in Figure 4.
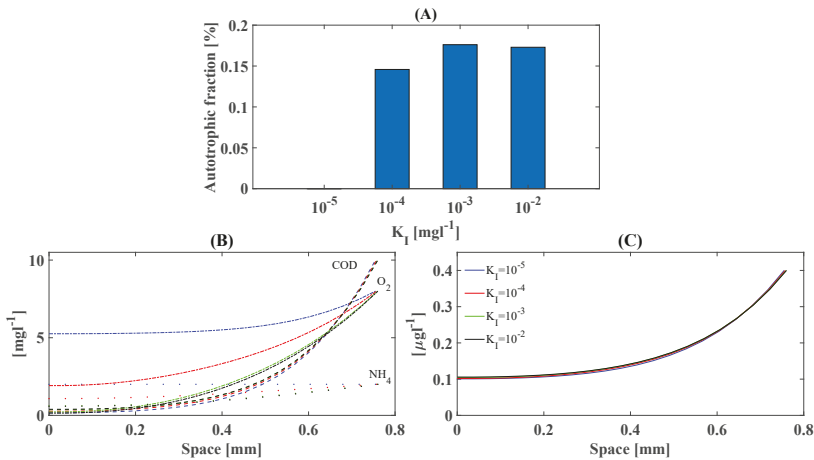
Figure 4. Effect of the inhibition constant K_I on (**A**) autotrophic fraction; (**B**) substrate profiles; (**C**) free metal trend within the biofilm with site density $N_\mu = 1$ after 100 days of simulation time.

When varying K_I from 10^{-5} to 10^{-4} (Figure 4A), the autotrophic fraction rises from 0 to 15%. By further increasing the value of K_I to 10^{-3} and 10^{-2}, the autotrophic fraction reaches 18 and 17%, respectively. This slight difference is due to the biofilm thickness, which is smaller in the case of $K_I = 10^{-3}$, and affects the diffusion of substrates within the biofilm (Figure 4B). Ammonia shows a fully penetrated profile for all values of K_I, due to the low concentration of autotrophic bacteria (<20%) within the biofilm. Oxygen is characterized by a similar trend for the lowest values of K_I. When the autotrophic fraction increases as a result of a higher K_I value, the oxygen concentration decreases all over the biofilm due to the additional consumption related to the autotrophic metabolism. No significant differences can be noted in the μ profile, which shows a fully penetrated profile for all K_I values (Figure 4C). The simulation results highlight the key role played by the inhibition constant in the definition of the biofilm composition.

The second set of simulations was performed by varying the metal concentration in the bulk liquid to test the effectiveness of the biological shield provided by heterotrophic bacteria (Figure 5). The final simulation time and the site density were set at $T = 100$ d and $N_\mu = 50$, respectively.

For $\mu_L = 4 \times 10^{-2}$, the metal showed a fully penetrated profile (Figure 5C), which determines a strong inhibition of the autotrophic species. For all the other values of μ_L, the metal concentration reaches zero within the biofilm.
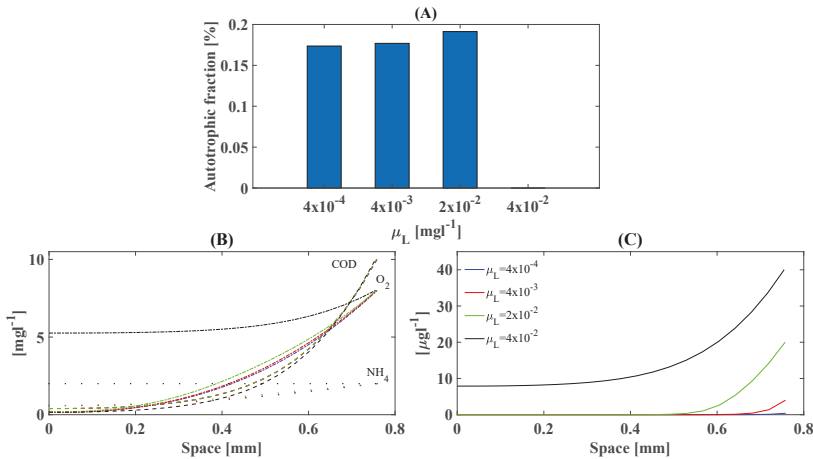
Figure 5. Effect of the free metal concentration in the bulk liquid μ_L on (**A**) autotrophic fraction; (**B**) substrate profiles; (**C**) free metal trend within the biofilm with site density $N_\mu = 50$ after 100 days of simulation time.

Increasing μ_L from 4×10^{-4} to 2×10^{-2}, the volume fraction of the autotrophic species slightly increases (Figure 5A) due to the small difference in biofilm thickness and substrates trends within the biofilm. When the autotrophic fraction is inhibited by the high metal concentration, ammonia remains constant within the biofilm and oxygen shows a fully penetrated profile. For all the simulations, the COD profile is invariant (Figure 5B). Except for $\mu_L = 4 \times 10^{-2}$, the simulation results prove the effectiveness of the heterotrophic component in protecting the autotrophic fraction from metal exposure.

Further numerical simulations were carried out to test the influence of the initial distribution of biofilm components in both the experimental cases $N_\mu = 1$ and $N_\mu = 50$ (data not shown). After 100 days of simulation time, numerical results showed a negligible variation of the biofilm components distribution and a similar biological response to the heavy metal exposition.

4. Conclusions

In this work, a free boundary problem related to biofim growth and evolution during heavy metal exposition in wastewater treatment plants has been discussed. The model highlights the dynamic interactions occurring between different biofilm components when an inhibiting compound diffuses from the bulk liquid within the biofilm structure. The biosorption phenomenon has been considered by assigning a specific binding site density to the heterotrophic biomass, which is able to act as a biological shield for autotrophic bacteria. Numerical results showed the crucial role of heterotrophic bacteria on biosorption processes occurring in wastewater treatment plants. The combined effect of heavy metals inhibition and biosorption phenomena within the biofilm structure has been newly analyzed in this study. The general form and the structure of the mathematical model allow for its application to different biological cases of high engineering interest. Simulation results demonstrated that biofilm systems can be effectively used in the context of bioremediation. The development of 1D mathematical models able to predict biofilm evolution and features under different environmental condition is highly relevant for real scale applications, such as heavy metal recovery in biofilm

reactors. Further experimental studies are still required to elucidate the different interactions occurring between heavy metals and specific biofilm components. For instance, the role of EPS on heavy metals biosorption can affect the biological response of a specific multispecies biofilm. This role could be further taken into account with the presented mathematical model by assigning a specific site density for the EPS component as a function of the biosorption affinity with the diffusing heavy metal.

References

1. Flemming, H.C.; Wingender, J.; Szewzyk, U.; Steinberg, P.; Rice, S.A.; Kjelleberg, S. Biofilms: An emergent form of bacterial life. *Nat. Rev. Microbiol.* **2016**, *14*, 563–575. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
2. D'Acunto, B.; Esposito, G.; Frunzo, L.; Mattei, M.; Pirozzi, F. Mathematical modeling of heavy metal biosorption in multispecies biofilms. *J. Environ. Eng.* **2015**, *142*, 1–14 [CrossRef]
3. Flemming, H.C.; Wingender, J. The biofilm matrix. *Nat. Rev. Microbiol.* **2010**, *8*, 623–633. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
4. Costerton, J.W.; Lewandowski, Z.; Caldwell, D.E.; Korber, D.R.; Lappin-Scott, H.M. Microbial biofilms. *Annu. Rev. Microbiol.* **1995**, *49*, 711–745. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
5. Davey, M.E.; O'toole, G.A. Microbial biofilms: From ecology to molecular genetics. *Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev.* **2000**, *64*, 847–867. [CrossRef]
6. Stoodley, P.; Sauer, K.; Davies, D.G.; Costerton, J.W. Biofilms as complex differentiated communities. *Annu. Rev. Microbiol.* **2000**, *56*, 187–209. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
7. Mattei, M.R.; Frunzo, L.; D'Acunto, B.; Pechaud, Y.; Pirozzi, F.; Esposito, G. Continuum and discrete approach in modeling biofilm development and structure: A review. *J. Math. Biol.* **2018**, *76*, 945–1003. [CrossRef]
8. Gaebler, H.J.; Eberl, H.J. A simple model of biofilm growth in a porous medium that accounts for detachment and attachment of suspended biomass and their contribution to substrate degradation. *Eur. J. Appl. Math.* **2018**, *29*, 1110–1140. [CrossRef]
9. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L.; Mattei, M.R. Continuum approach to mathematical modelling of multispecies biofilms. *Ric. Mat.* **2017**, *66*, 153–169. [CrossRef]
10. Infante, C.D.; Castillo, F.; Pérez, V.; Riquelme, C. Inhibition of Nitzschia ovalis biofilm settlement by a bacterial bioactive compound through alteration of EPS and epiphytic bacteria. *Electron. J. Biotechnol.* **2018**, *33*, 1–10. [CrossRef]
11. Elias, S.; Banin, E. Multi-species biofilms: Living with friendly neighbors. *FEMS Microbiol. Rev.* **2012**, *36*, 990–1004. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
12. Costerton, J.W.; Lewandowski, Z.; DeBeer, D.; Caldwell, D.; Korber, D.; James, G. Biofilms, the customized microniche. *J. Bacteriol.* **1994**, *176*, 2137–2142. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
13. Tiwari, S.K.; Bowers, K.L. Modeling biofilm growth for porous media applications. *Math. Comput. Model.* **2001**, *33*, 299–319. [CrossRef]
14. Tan, L.C.; Papirio, S.; Luongo, V.; Nancharaiah, Y.V.; Cennamo, P.; Esposito, G.; van Hullebusch, E.D.; Lens, P.N. Comparative performance of anaerobic attached biofilm and granular sludge reactors for the treatment of model mine drainage wastewater containing selenate, sulfate and nickel. *Chem. Eng. J.* **2018**, *345*, 545–555. [CrossRef]
15. Beveridge, T.J.; Murray, R.G. Uptake and retention of metals by cell walls of Bacillus subtilis. *J. Bacteriol.* **1976**, *127*, 1502–1518. [PubMed]
16. Maharaj, B.C.; Mattei, M.R.; Frunzo, L.; van Hullebusch, E.D.; Esposito, G. ADM1 based mathematical model of trace element precipitation/dissolution in anaerobic digestion processes. *Bioresour. Technol.* **2018**, *267*, 666–676. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
17. Kostrytsia, A.; Papirio, S.; Frunzo, L.; Mattei, M.R.; Porca, E.; Collins, G.; Lens, P.N.; Esposito, G. Elemental sulfur-based autotrophic denitrification and denitritation: Microbially catalyzed sulfur hydrolysis and nitrogen conversions. *J. Environ. Manag.* **2018**, *211*, 313–322. [CrossRef] [PubMed]

18. Colombaro, I.; Giusti, A.; Mainardi, F. On transient waves in linear viscoelasticity. *Wave Motion* **2017**, *74*, 191–212. [CrossRef]

19. Frunzo, L.; Garra, R.; Giusti, A.; Luongo, V. Modeling biological systems with an improved fractional Gompertz law. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci.* **2019**, *74*, 260–267. [CrossRef]

20. Comte, S.; Guibaud, G.; Baudu, M. Biosorption properties of extracellular polymeric substances (EPS) towards Cd, Cu and Pb for different pH values. *J. Hazard. Mater.* **2008**, *151*, 185–193. [CrossRef]

21. Gadd, G.M. Biosorption: Critical review of scientific rationale, environmental importance and significance for pollution treatment. *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.* **2009**, *84*, 13–28. [CrossRef]

22. Van Hullebusch, E.D.; Zandvoort, M.H.; Lens, P.N. Metal immobilisation by biofilms: Mechanisms and analytical tools. *Rev. Environ. Sci. Biotechnol.* **2003**, *2*, 9–33. [CrossRef]

23. Eberl, H.J.; Parker, D.F.; van Loosdrecht, M. A new deterministic spatio-temporal continuum model for biofilm development. *Comput. Math. Method Med.* **2001**, *3*, 161–175. [CrossRef]

24. Peszynska, M.; Trykozko, A.; Iltis, G.; Schlueter, S.; Wildenschild, D. Biofilm growth in porous media: Experiments, computational modeling at the porescale, and upscaling. *Adv. Water Resour.* **2015**, *95*, 288–301. [CrossRef]

25. Gokieli, M.; Kenmochi, N.; Niezgódka, M. Mathematical modeling of biofilm development. *Nonlinear Anal. Real World Appl.* **2018**, *42*, 422–447. [CrossRef]

26. Alpkvista, E.; Klapper, I. A multidimensional multispecies continuum model for heterogeneous biofilm development. *Bull. Math. Biol.* **2007**, *69*, 765–789. [CrossRef] [PubMed]

27. Wanner, O.; Eberl, H.; Morgenroth, E.; Noguera, D.; Picioreanu, C.; Rittmann, B.; van Loosdrecht, M. *Mathematical Modeling of Biofilms*; IWA Publishing: London, UK, 2006.

28. Wanner, O.; Gujer, W. A multispecies biofilm model. *Biotechnol. Bioeng.* **1986**, *28*, 314–328. [CrossRef] [PubMed]

29. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L.; Mattei, M.R. On a free boundary problem for biosorption in biofilms. *Nonlinear Anal. Real World Appl.* **2018**, *39*, 120–141. [CrossRef]

30. Frunzo, L. Modeling sorption of emerging contaminants in biofilms. *arXiv* **2017**, arXiv:1706.04541.

31. Laspidou, C.S.; Rittmann, B.E. Non-steady state modeling of extracellular polymeric substances, soluble microbial products, and active and inert biomass. *Water Res.* **2002**, *36*, 1983–1992. [CrossRef]

32. Abbas, F.; Sudarsan, R.; Eberl, H.J. Longtime behavior of one-dimensional biofilm models with shear dependent detachment rates. *Math. Biosci. Eng.* **2012**, *9*, 215–239. [CrossRef] [PubMed]

33. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L.; Luongo, V.; Mattei, M.R. Free boundary approach for the attachment in the initial phase of multispecies biofilm growth. *Z. Angew. Math. Phys.* **2019**, *70*, 1–16. [CrossRef]

34. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L. Qualitative analysis and simulations of a free boundary problem for mulispecies biofilm models. *Math. Comput. Model.* **2011**, *53*, 1596–1606. [CrossRef]

35. D'Acunto, B.; Esposito, G.; Frunzo, L.; Pirozzi, F. Dynamic modeling of sulfate reducing biofilms. *Comput. Math. Appl.* **2011**, *62*, 2601–2608. [CrossRef]

36. D'Acunto, B.; Frunzo, L. Free boundary problem for an initial cell layer in multispecies biofilm formation. *Appl. Math. Lett.* **2012**, *25*, 20–26. [CrossRef]

37. Frunzo, L.; Mattei, M.R. Qualitative analysis of the invasion free boundary problem in biofilms. *Ric. Mat.* **2017**, *66*, 171–188. [CrossRef]

An Introduction to Space–Time Exterior Calculus

Ivano Colombaro *, Josep Font-Segura and Alfonso Martinez

Department of Information and Communication Technologies, Universitat Pompeu Fabra, 08018 Barcelona, Spain; josep.font@upf.edu (J.F.-S.); alfonso.martinez@upf.edu (A.M.)
* Correspondence: ivano.colombaro@upf.edu; Tel.: +34-93-542-1496

Abstract: The basic concepts of exterior calculus for space–time multivectors are presented: Interior and exterior products, interior and exterior derivatives, oriented integrals over hypersurfaces, circulation and flux of multivector fields. Two Stokes theorems relating the exterior and interior derivatives with circulation and flux, respectively, are derived. As an application, it is shown how the exterior-calculus space–time formulation of the electromagnetic Maxwell equations and Lorentz force recovers the standard vector-calculus formulations, in both differential and integral forms.

Keywords: exterior calculus; exterior algebra; electromagnetism; Maxwell equations; differential forms; tensor calculus

1. Introduction

Vector calculus has, since its introduction by J. W. Gibbs [1] and Heaviside, been the tool of choice to represent many physical phenomena. In mechanics, hydrodynamics and electromagnetism, quantities such as forces, velocities and currents are modeled as vector fields in space, while flux, circulation, divergence or curl describe operations on the vector fields themselves.

With relativity theory, it was observed that space and time are not independent but just coordinates in space–time [2] (pp. 111–120). Tensors like the Faraday tensor in electromagnetism were quickly adopted as a natural representation of fields in space–time [3] (pp. 135–144). In parallel, mathematicians such as Cartan generalized the fundamental theorems of vector calculus, i.e., Gauss, Green, and Stokes, by means of differential forms [4]. Later on, differential forms were used in Hamiltonian mechanics, e. g. to calculate trajectories as vector field integrals [5] (pp. 194–198).

A third extension of vector calculus is given by geometric and Clifford algebras [6], where vectors are replaced by multivectors and operations such as the cross and the dot products subsumed in the geometric product. However, the absence of an explicit formula for the geometric product hinders its widespread use. An alternative would have been the exterior algebra developed by Grassmann which nevertheless has received little attention in the literature [7]. An early work in this direction was Sommerfeld's presentation of electromagnetism in terms of six-vectors [8].

We present a generalization of vector calculus to exterior algebra and calculus. The basic notions of space–time exterior algebra, introduced in Section 2, are extended to exterior calculus in Section 3 and applied to rederive the equations of electromagnetism in Section 4. In contrast to geometric algebra, our interior and exterior products admit explicit formulations, thereby merging the simplicity and intuitiveness of standard vector calculus with the power of tensors and differential forms.

2. Exterior Algebra

Vector calculus is constructed around the vector space $\mathbf{R}^3$, where every point is represented by three spatial coordinates. In relativity theory the underlying vector space is $\mathbf{R}^{1+3}$ and time is treated as a coordinate in the same footing as the three spatial dimensions. We build our theory in space–time with k time dimensions and n space dimensions. The number of space–time dimensions is thus $k + n$

and we may refer to a (k, n)- or $(k + n)$-space–time, $\mathbf{R}^{k+n}$. We adopt the convention that the first k indices, i.e., $i = 0, \ldots, k - 1$, correspond to time components and the indices $i = k, \ldots, k + n - 1$ represent space components and both k and n are non-negative integers. A point or position in this space–time is denoted by $\mathbf{x}$, with components $\{x_i\}_{i=0}^{k+n-1}$ in the canonical basis $\{\mathbf{e}_i\}_{i=0}^{k+n-1}$, that is

$$\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=0}^{k+n-1} x_i \mathbf{e}_i. \tag{1}$$

Given two arbitrary canonical basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_i$ and $\mathbf{e}_j$, then their dot product in space–time is

$$\mathbf{e}_i \cdot \mathbf{e}_j = \begin{cases} -1, & i = j, \, 0 \leqslant i \leqslant k - 1, \\ +1, & i = j, \, k \leqslant i \leqslant k + n - 1, \\ 0, & i \neq j. \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

For convenience, we define the symbol $\Delta_{ij} = \mathbf{e}_i \cdot \mathbf{e}_j$ as the metric diagonal tensor in Minkowski space–time [2] (pp. 118–120), such that time unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_i$ have negative norm $\Delta_{ii} = -1$, whereas space unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_i$ have positive norm $\Delta_{ii} = +1$. The **dot product** of two vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ is the extension by linearity of the product in Equation (2), namely

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=0}^{k+n-1} x_i y_i \Delta_{ii} = -\sum_{i=0}^{k-1} x_i y_i + \sum_{i=k}^{k+n-1} x_i y_i. \tag{3}$$

2.1. Grade, Multivectors, and Exterior Product

In addition to the $(k + n)$-dimensional vector space $\mathbf{R}^{k+n}$ with canonical basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_i$, there exist other natural vector spaces indexed by ordered lists $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_m)$ of m non-identical space and time indices for every $m = 0, \ldots, k + n$. As there are $\binom{k+n}{m}$ such lists, the dimension of this vector space is $\binom{k+n}{m}$. We shall refer to m as **grade** and to these vectors as **multivectors** or grade-m vectors if we wish to be more specific. A general multivector can be written as

$$\mathbf{v} = \sum_I v_I \mathbf{e}_I, \tag{4}$$

where the summation extends to all possible ordered lists with m indices. If $m = 0$, the list is empty and the corresponding vector space is $\mathbf{R}$. The direct sum of these vector spaces for all m is a larger vector space of dimension $\sum_{m=0}^{k+n} \binom{k+n}{m} = 2^{k+n}$, the exterior algebra. In tensor algebra, multivectors correspond to antisymmetric tensors of rank m. In this paper, we study vector fields $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})$, namely multivector-valued functions $\mathbf{v}$ varying over the space–time position $\mathbf{x}$.

The basis vectors for any grade m may be constructed from the canonical basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_i$ by means of the exterior product (also known as wedge product), an operation denoted by $\wedge$ [9] (p. 2). We identify the vector $\mathbf{e}_I$ for the ordered list $I = (i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_m)$ with the exterior product of $\mathbf{e}_{i_1}, \mathbf{e}_{i_2}, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_{i_m}$:

$$\mathbf{e}_I = \mathbf{e}_{i_1} \wedge \mathbf{e}_{i_2} \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{e}_{i_m}. \tag{5}$$

In general, we may compute the exterior product as follows. Let two basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_I$ and $\mathbf{e}_J$ have grades $m = |I|$ and $m' = |J|$, where $|I|$ and $|J|$ are the lengths of the respective index lists. Let $(I, J) = \{i_1, \ldots, i_m, j_1, \ldots, j_{m'}\}$ denote the concatenation of I and J, let $\sigma(I, J)$ denote the signature of the permutation sorting the elements of this concatenated list of $m + m'$ indices, and let $\varepsilon(I, J)$ denote the resulting sorted list, which we also denote by $I + J$. Then, the exterior product $\mathbf{e}_I$ of $\mathbf{e}_J$ is defined as

$$\mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_J = \sigma(I, J) \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I, J)}. \tag{6}$$

The **exterior product** of vectors **v** and **w** is the bilinear extension of the product in Equation (6),

$$\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w} = \sum_{I,J} v_I w_J \, \mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_J. \tag{7}$$

Since permutations with repeated indices have zero signature, the exterior product is zero if $m + m' > k + n$ or more generally if both vectors have at least one index in common. Therefore, the exterior product is either zero or a vector of grade $m + m'$. Further, the exterior product is a skew-commutative operation, as we can also write Equation (6) as $\mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_J = (-1)^{|I||J|} \mathbf{e}_J \wedge \mathbf{e}_I$.

At this point, we define the dot product $\cdot$ for arbitrary grade-m basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_I$ and $\mathbf{e}_J$ as

$$\mathbf{e}_I \cdot \mathbf{e}_J = \Delta_{I,J} = \Delta_{i_1,j_1} \Delta_{i_2,j_2} \cdots \Delta_{i_m,j_m}, \tag{8}$$

where I and J are the ordered lists $I = (i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_m)$ and $J = (j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_m)$. As before, we extend this operation to arbitrary grade-m vectors by linearity.

Finally, we define the complement of a multivector. For a unit vector $\mathbf{e}_I$ with grade m, its Grassmann or Hodge **complement** [10] (pp. 361–364), denoted by $\mathbf{e}_I^{\mathcal{H}}$, is the unit $(k + n - m)$-vector

$$\mathbf{e}_I^{\mathcal{H}} = \Delta_{I,I} \sigma(I, I^c) \mathbf{e}_{I^c}, \tag{9}$$

where I^c is the complement of the list I, namely the ordered sequence of indices not included in I. As before, $\sigma(I, I^c)$ is the signature of the permutation sorting the elements of the concatenated list (I, I^c) containing all space–time indices. In other words $\mathbf{e}_{I^c}$ is the basis vector of grade $k + n - m$ whose indices are in the complement of I. In addition, we define the inverse complement transformation as

$$\mathbf{e}_I^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \Delta_{I^c,I^c} \sigma(I^c, I) \mathbf{e}_{I^c}. \tag{10}$$

We extend the complement and its inverse to general vectors in the space–time algebra by linearity.

2.2. Interior Products

While the exterior product of two multivectors is an operation that outputs a multivector whose grade is the addition of the input grades, the dot product takes two multivectors of identical grade and subtracts their grades, yielding a zero-grade multivector, i.e., a scalar. We say that the exterior product raises the grade while the dot product lowers the grade. In this section, we define the left and right interior products of two multivectors as operations that lower the grade and output a multivector whose grade is the difference of the input multivector grades.

As always, we start by defining the operation for the canonical basis vectors. Let $\mathbf{e}_I$ and $\mathbf{e}_J$ be two basis vectors of respective grades $|I|$ and $|J|$. The left interior product, denoted by $\lrcorner$, is defined as

$$\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \Delta_{I,I} \sigma\big(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, I\big) \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c}. \tag{11}$$

If I is not a subset of J, that is when there are elements in I not present in J, e. g. for $|I| > |J|$, the signature of the permutation sorting the concatenated list $(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, I)$ is zero as there are repeated indices in the list to be sorted, and the left interior product is zero. Otherwise, if I is a subset of J, the permutation rearranges the indices in J in such a way that the last $|I|$ positions coincide with I and $\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c$ represents the first $|J| - |I|$ elements in the rearranged sequence, that is $\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c = J \backslash I$.

The right interior product, denoted by $\llcorner$, of two basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_I$ and $\mathbf{e}_J$ is defined as

$$\mathbf{e}_I \llcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \Delta_{J,J} \sigma\big(J, \varepsilon(I^c, J)^c\big) \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I^c,J)^c}. \tag{12}$$

As with the left interior product, if J is a subset of I, $\varepsilon(I^c, J)^c = I \backslash J$ then the permutation rearranges the indices in I so that the first $|J|$ positions coincide with J, otherwise the right interior product is zero.

In general, we have that $\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \mathbf{e}_J \llcorner \mathbf{e}_I (-1)^{|I|(|J|-|I|)}$, as verified in Appendix A.1. We note that these interior products are not commutative, unless either $|J| - |I|$ or $|I|$ is an even number, e. g. when $|I| = |J|$, in which case both interior products coincide with the dot product of the two vectors. The interior products may therefore be seen as generalizations of the dot product.

As with the dot and the exterior products, the value of the interior products does not depend on the choice of basis and we may thus compute the **left interior product** of two vectors $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ as

$$\mathbf{v} \lrcorner \mathbf{w} = \sum_{I,J} v_I w_J \, \mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J , \tag{13}$$

and a similar expression holds for the **right interior product** $\mathbf{v} \llcorner \mathbf{w}$. Both are grade-lowering operations, as the left (resp. right) interior product is either zero or a multivector of grade $m' - m$ (resp. $m - m'$).

The interior products are not independent operations from the exterior product, as they can be expressed in terms of the latter, the Hodge complement and its inverse (proved in Appendix A.2):

$$\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \left(\mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_J^{\mathcal{H}} \right)^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}, \tag{14}$$

$$\mathbf{e}_I \llcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \left(\mathbf{e}_I^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \wedge \mathbf{e}_J \right)^{\mathcal{H}}. \tag{15}$$

If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are 1-vectors and $\mathbf{w}$ is an r-vector, then we have the following expression

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = (-1)^r (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{v} \wedge (\mathbf{u} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}), \tag{16}$$

as proved in Appendix A.3. This expression can be seen as a generalization of the vectorial expression

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} \tag{17}$$

in the vector space $\mathbf{R}^3$, i.e., a $k = 0$, $n = 3$ space–time. This fact is built of the realization that the cross product between two vectors $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ can be expressed in the following alternative ways

$$\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w})^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \mathbf{v} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \mathbf{v} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}^{\mathcal{H}}. \tag{18}$$

Whenever it holds that $I \subseteq J$, the interior and exterior products are related by the following:

$$(\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J) \wedge \mathbf{e}_I = \Delta_{I,I} \mathbf{e}_J, \tag{19}$$

$$\mathbf{e}_I \wedge (\mathbf{e}_J \llcorner \mathbf{e}_I) = \Delta_{I,I} \mathbf{e}_J. \tag{20}$$

Having introduced the basic notions of space–time exterior algebra, the next section focuses on operations with elements in the exterior algebra, namely integrals and derivatives of vector fields.

3. Integrals and Derivatives of Vector Fields: Circulation and Flux

3.1. Oriented Integrals

Integrals are, together with derivatives, the fundamental mathematical objects of **calculus**. For example, operations on vectors fields lying in exterior algebra such as the flux and the circulation are expressed in terms of integrals over high-dimensional geometric objects. The integral of an m-graded vector field $\mathbf{v}$ over a hypersurface $\mathcal{V}^m$ of the same dimension, denoted as

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^m} \mathrm{d}^m \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v}, \tag{21}$$

is the limit of the Riemann sums for the dot product $\mathrm{d}^m \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ over points in the hypersurface, where $\mathrm{d}^m \mathbf{x}$ is an m-dimensional infinitesimal vector element. For any $\ell = 0, \ldots, k + n$, the infinitesimal vector

element $d^\ell \mathbf{x}$ is given by the sum of all possible differentials for ℓ-dimensional hypersurfaces in a (k, n) space–time, and is represented in the canonical basis as

$$d^\ell \mathbf{x} = \sum_{I=(i_1,\dots,i_\ell)} dx_I \mathbf{e}_I, \tag{22}$$

where for a given list $I = (i_1, \dots, i_\ell)$ each differential is given by $dx_I = dx_{i_1} \cdots dx_{i_\ell}$.

As in traditional calculus, the integral in Equation (21) exhibits coordinate invariance, while the integrand $d^m \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is regarded as an oriented object. Orientation is well defined for integrals along a curve from one point to another, or integrals over a surface oriented at the direction of the normal to the surface. Switching the extreme points of the curve, or taking the opposite direction of the normal would induce a change of sign in the line and surface integrals. In our generalization of vector calculus, a positive orientation is implicit in the ordering of the canonical basis. The skew-symmetry property of the exterior product Equation (6) may introduce sign changes to compensate an eventual change of orientation after changes of coordinates such as permutations of the space–time components.

For a given hypersurface $\mathcal{V}^m$, a convenient transformation for solving the integral in Equation (21) is one such that, at a given point $\mathbf{x}$ in the hypersurface, the infinitesimal vector element $d^m \mathbf{x}$ has one component that is *tangent* to the hypersurface at that point. Let $\mathbf{e}_\parallel$ be a unit m-graded vector parallel to $\mathcal{V}^m$ at point $\mathbf{x}$, and let $\mathbf{e}_0', \dots, \mathbf{e}_{k+n-1}'$ form an orthonormal basis of $\mathbf{R}^{k+n}$ such that $\mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_{k+n-m}' \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{e}_{k+n-1}'$ for the given point $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathcal{V}^m$. This change of coordinates from the canonical basis to the new basis is described by a unitary matrix U, dependent on $\mathbf{x}$, and that satisfies

$$\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{e}_{k+n-1} = \det(U)\, \mathbf{e}_0' \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{e}_{k+n-1}'. \tag{23}$$

Being a unitary matrix, the determinant of U is ± 1. Assuming an orientation-preserving change of coordinates, that is $\det(U) = 1$, the infinitesimal vector element in Equation (22) for $\ell = m$ can be expressed as

$$d^m \mathbf{x} = dx_\parallel \mathbf{e}_\parallel + \sum_{I=(i_1,\dots,i_m)\,:\,I\cap\perp\neq\varnothing} dx_I \mathbf{e}_I', \tag{24}$$

where $\perp = \{0, \dots, k+n-m-1\}$ is the set of indices for the unit vectors in the new basis orthogonal to $\mathcal{V}^m$. Since all elements in the summation in Equation (24) have at least one differential element lying outside the integration hypersurface, their integrals vanish and therefore

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^m} d^m \mathbf{x} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^m} dx_\parallel \mathbf{e}_\parallel. \tag{25}$$

In analogy to $\mathbf{e}_\parallel$, a multivector of grade m, we define a unit $(k+n-m)$-grade vector $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ normal to $\mathcal{V}^m$ at point $\mathbf{x}$ such that $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{e}_{k+n-1}$. From Equation (10), we see that one such normal multivector with the correct orientation is

$$\mathbf{e}_\perp = \frac{\mathbf{e}_\parallel^{\mathcal{H}-1}}{\mathbf{e}_\parallel^{\mathcal{H}-1} \cdot \mathbf{e}_\parallel^{\mathcal{H}-1}}. \tag{26}$$

For the common spaces considered in vector calculus, $\mathbf{R}^2$ and $\mathbf{R}^3$, and according to Equation (23), orientation-preserving changes of coordinates must respectively satisfy $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_1 \wedge \mathbf{e}_2$, where $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ is the basis element normal to $\mathcal{V}^m$. These two equalities turn out to describe the counterclockwise (resp. right-hand rule) orientation when $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ conventionally points outside an integration path for $\mathbf{R}^2$ (resp. a surface for $\mathbf{R}^3$) [5] (pp. 184–185).

Building on the concepts and operations of circulation and flux in vector calculus, the right and left interior products lead to general definitions of circulation and flux of multivector fields in exterior algebra along and across hypersurfaces of arbitrary number of dimensions.

3.2. Circulation and Flux of Multivector Fields

Definition 1. *The circulation of a vector field* $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})$ *of grade m along an ℓ-dimensional hypersurface* $\mathcal{V}^\ell$, *denoted by* $\mathcal{C}(\mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell)$, *is given by*

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell) = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x} \llcorner \mathbf{v}. \tag{27}$$

Expressing the vector field in the canonical basis and using the definition of $\mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}$ in Equation (22), the circulation can be specified in some cases of interest. For $\ell = m$, the circulation reads

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^m} \mathrm{d}^m \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \sum_{I=(i_1,\dots,i_m)} \Delta_{I,I} \int_{\mathcal{V}^m} dx_I v_I. \tag{28}$$

For instance, for $\ell = m = 1$ and $\mathbf{R}^n$, this formula recovers the definition the circulation of a vector field along a closed path with the appropriate orientation.

Alternatively, using Equation (25), we note that $\mathbf{v}$ is integrated along the direction of $\mathbf{e}_{\|}$, tangential to the hypersurface, in an orientation-preserving change of coordinates, that is

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^m} \mathrm{d}^m \mathbf{x} \llcorner \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^m} dx_{\|} \, \mathbf{e}_{\|} \llcorner \mathbf{v}. \tag{29}$$

Intuitively, the circulation Equation (27) measures the alignment of an m-vector field $\mathbf{v}$ with respect to $\mathcal{V}^\ell$ for any ℓ and m, with the circulation being an $(\ell - m)$-vector if $\ell \geqslant m$ and zero otherwise.

Definition 2. *The flux of a vector field* $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})$ *of grade m across an ℓ-dimensional hypersurface* $\mathcal{V}^\ell$, *denoted by* $\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell)$, *is given by*

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell) = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \mathbf{v}. \tag{30}$$

Expressing both $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}$ in the canonical basis, and using the inverse Hodge operation in Equation (10), the flux in the special case of $\ell = k + n - m$ can be written as

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \sum_{I=(i_1,\dots,i_m)} \sigma(I, I^c) \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} dx_{I^c} v_I. \tag{31}$$

As an example in $\mathbf{R}^3$, the flux of a vector field $\mathbf{v}$ through a surface $\mathcal{V}^2$ reads

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^2} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^2} \sum_{I, i \notin I} dx_I \sigma(i, I) \mathbf{e}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}. \tag{32}$$

The right-hand side of Equation (32) is a conventional surface integral, upon the identification of $\sum_{I, i \notin I} dx_I \sigma(i, I) \mathbf{e}_i$ as an infinitesimal surface element $\mathrm{d}\mathbf{S}$.

Alternatively, using the analogous of Equation (25) for the differential vector element $\mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$, the equivalent to Equation (29) for the flux is

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} dx_{\|} \, \mathbf{e}_{\|}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \mathbf{v}. \tag{33}$$

This equation implies that $\mathbf{v}$ is integrated along a normal component to the hypersurface since $\mathbf{e}_{\|}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ is a multivector of grade $k + n - \ell$ orthogonal to $\mathcal{V}^\ell$. Intuitively, the flux Equation (30) measures the magnitude of the multivector field crossing the hypersurface. In general, the flux is a vector of grade $(m + \ell - n - k)$ if $\ell \geqslant k + n - m$ and zero otherwise. For instance, if $\ell = k + n$, the flux of $\mathbf{v}$ over an

$(k + n)$-dimensional hypersurface $\mathcal{V}^{k+n}$ gives the integral of $\mathbf{v}$ over $\mathcal{V}^{k+n}$, an extension of the volume integral to $\mathbf{R}^{k+n}$,

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^{k+n}} \mathrm{d}^{k+n}\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \, \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^{k+n}} \mathrm{d}x_{i_1,\cdots,i_{k+n}}\mathbf{v}, \tag{34}$$

where we used the relation $1^{\mathcal{H}} = \mathbf{e}_{i_1,\dots,i_{k+n}}$, implying that $\mathrm{d}^{k+n}\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \mathrm{d}x_{i_1,\cdots,i_{k+n}}$, and that $1 \lrcorner \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}$.

3.3. Exterior and Interior Derivatives

In vector calculus, extensive use is made of the nabla operator ∇, a vector operator that takes partial space derivatives. For instance, operations such as gradient, divergence or curl are expressed in terms of this operator. In our case, we need the generalization to (k, n) space–time to the differential vector operator $\boldsymbol{\partial}$, defined as $(-\partial_0, -\partial_2, \dots, -\partial_{k-1}, \partial_k, \dots, \partial_{k+n-1})$, that is

$$\boldsymbol{\partial} = \sum_{i=0}^{k+n-1} \Delta_{ii}\mathbf{e}_i\partial_i. \tag{35}$$

For a given vector field $\mathbf{v}$ of grade m, we define the **exterior derivative** of $\mathbf{v}$ as $\boldsymbol{\partial} \wedge \mathbf{v}$, namely

$$\boldsymbol{\partial} \wedge \mathbf{v} = \sum_{i=0}^{k+n-1} \sum_I \Delta_{ii}\partial_i v_I \sigma(i, I) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(i,I)}. \tag{36}$$

The grade of the exterior derivative of $\mathbf{v}$ is $m + 1$, unless $m = k + n$, in which case the exterior derivative is zero, as can be deduced from the fact that all signatures are zero.

In addition, we define the **interior derivative** of $\mathbf{v}$ as $\boldsymbol{\partial} \lrcorner \mathbf{v}$, namely

$$\boldsymbol{\partial} \lrcorner \mathbf{v} = \sum_{i,I: i\in I} \partial_i v_I \sigma(I\backslash i, i)\mathbf{e}_{I\backslash i}. \tag{37}$$

The grade of the interior derivative of $\mathbf{v}$ is $m - 1$, unless $m = 0$, in which case the interior derivative is zero, as implied by the fact that the grade of $\boldsymbol{\partial}$ is larger than the grade of $\mathbf{v}$. Using Equation (16) with $\mathbf{u} = \boldsymbol{\partial}$ and assuming that $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are 1-vectors, we obtain a generalization of Leibniz's product rule

$$\boldsymbol{\partial} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{v}(\boldsymbol{\partial} \cdot \mathbf{w}) - (\boldsymbol{\partial} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{w}. \tag{38}$$

The formulas for the exterior and interior derivatives allow us express some common expressions in vector calculus. For a scalar function ϕ, its gradient is given by its exterior derivative $\nabla\phi = \boldsymbol{\partial} \wedge \phi$, while for a vector field $\mathbf{v}$, its divergence $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is given by its interior derivative $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\partial} \lrcorner \mathbf{v}$. From Equation (16) we further observe that for a scalar function ϕ we recover the relation

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla\phi) = (\nabla \cdot \nabla)\phi. \tag{39}$$

In addition, for a vector fields $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbf{R}^3$, taking into account Equation (18) then the curl can be variously expressed as

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = (\nabla \wedge \mathbf{v})^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{v}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{v}^{\mathcal{H}}. \tag{40}$$

This formula allows us to write the curl of a vector field $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$ in terms of the exterior and interior products and the Hodge complement, while generalizing both the cross product and the curl to grade-m vector fields in space–time algebras with different dimensions. Moreover, from Equation (16) we can recover for $r = 1$ the well-known formula for the curl of the curl of a vector,

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) - \nabla^2\mathbf{v}. \tag{41}$$

It is easy to verify that the exterior derivative of an exterior derivative is zero, as is the interior derivative of an interior derivative, that is for any vector field **v**, we have that

$$\partial \wedge (\partial \wedge \mathbf{v}) = 0 \tag{42}$$

$$\partial \lrcorner (\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v}) = 0. \tag{43}$$

In regard to the vector space $\mathbf{R}^3$, and using Equation (18), these expressions imply the well-known facts that the curl of the gradient and the divergence of the curl are zero:

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \phi) = (\nabla \wedge (\nabla \wedge \phi))^{\mathcal{H}-1} = 0 \tag{44}$$

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) = \nabla \lrcorner (\nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{v}^{\mathcal{H}}) = 0. \tag{45}$$

3.4. Stokes Theorem for the Circulation

In vector calculus in $\mathbf{R}^3$, the Kelvin-Stokes theorem for the circulation of a vector field **v** of grade 1 along the boundary $\partial \mathcal{V}^2$ of a bidimensional surface $\mathcal{V}^2$ relates its value to that of the surface integral of the curl of the vector field over the surface itself. In the notation used in the previous section, the surface integral is the flux of the curl of the vector field across the surface and this theorem reads

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{V}^2} d\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^2} d^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}-1} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}). \tag{46}$$

Taking into account the identity $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = (\nabla \wedge \mathbf{v})^{\mathcal{H}-1}$ in Equation (40), we rewrite the right-hand side in Equation (46) as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathcal{V}^2} d^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}-1} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) &= \int_{\mathcal{V}^2} d^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}-1} \cdot (\nabla \wedge \mathbf{v})^{\mathcal{H}-1} \\
&= \int_{\mathcal{V}^2} d^2\mathbf{x} \cdot (\nabla \wedge \mathbf{v}),
\end{aligned}
\tag{47}
$$

where we used that $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u}^{\mathcal{H}-1} \cdot \mathbf{w}^{\mathcal{H}-1} = \mathbf{u}^{\mathcal{H}} \cdot \mathbf{w}^{\mathcal{H}}$ for vectors **u**, **w**. The *flux* of the curl of the vector field *across* a surface is also the *circulation* of the exterior derivative of the vector field *along* that surface.

The generalized Stokes theorem for differential forms [4] (p. 80) allows us to extend the Kelvin-Stokes theorem to multivectors of any grade m as we do in the following theorem.

Theorem 1. *The circulation of a grade-m vector field* **v** *along the boundary* $\partial \mathcal{V}^\ell$ *of an ℓ-dimensional hypersurface* $\mathcal{V}^\ell$ *is equal to the circulation of the exterior derivative of* **v** *along* $\mathcal{V}^\ell$:

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathbf{v}, \partial \mathcal{V}^\ell) = \mathcal{C}(\partial \wedge \mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell). \tag{48}$$

As hinted at above, the role of the vector curl in the right-hand side of Equation (46) is played by the exterior derivative in this generalized theorem.

Proof. We start by stating the generalized Stokes Theorem for differential forms [4] (p. 80)

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{V}^\ell} \omega = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} d\omega, \tag{49}$$

where ω is a differential form and $d\omega$ its exterior derivative, represented by the operator

$$d = \sum_j dx_j \partial_j. \tag{50}$$

Expressing the circulations in Equation (48) by means of the integrals in Equation (27), we obtain

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^{\ell-1}\mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, (\partial \wedge \mathbf{v}). \tag{51}$$

In the integral in the left-hand side of Equation (51), the integrand is a differential form $\omega = \mathrm{d}^{\ell-1}\mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, \mathbf{v}$. After expanding the interior product using the definitions of $\mathrm{d}^{\ell-1}\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ we obtain

$$\omega = \left(\sum_{J_{\ell-1}} \mathrm{d}x_J \, \mathbf{e}_J \right) \lrcorner \left(\sum_{I_m} v_I \, \mathbf{e}_I \right) = \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m \,:\, I \subseteq J} \Delta_{I,I} \sigma(I, \varepsilon(I, J^c)^c) v_I \, \mathrm{d}x_J \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c}. \tag{52}$$

Then, computing the exterior derivative of this form with Equation (50) gives

$$\mathrm{d}\omega = \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m \,:\, I \subseteq J} \sum_{j \notin J} \Delta_{I,I} \sigma(I, \varepsilon(I, J^c)^c) \partial_j v_I \sigma(j, J) \, \mathrm{d}x_{\varepsilon(j,J)} \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c}. \tag{53}$$

We next write down the integrand in the right-hand side of Equation (51), $\mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, (\partial \wedge \mathbf{v})$, that is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, (\partial \wedge \mathbf{v}) \quad &= \left(\sum_{K_{\ell+1}} \mathrm{d}x_K \, \mathbf{e}_K \right) \lrcorner \left(\sum_{I_m} \sum_{j \notin I} \Delta_{j,j} \partial_j v_I \, \sigma(j, I) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(j,I)} \right) \\ &= \sum_{K_\ell, I_m \,:\, \varepsilon(j,I) \subseteq K_\ell} \sum_{j \notin I} \Delta_{j,j} \partial_j v_I \, \mathrm{d}x_K \, \sigma(j, I) \Delta_{\varepsilon(j,I), \varepsilon(j,I)} \, \sigma(\varepsilon(j,I), \varepsilon(K^c, \varepsilon(j,I))^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(K^c, \varepsilon(j,I))^c} \\ &= \sum_{K_\ell, I_m \,:\, \varepsilon(j,I) \subseteq K_{\ell+1}} \sum_{j \notin I} \Delta_{I,I} \partial_j v_I \, \mathrm{d}x_K \, \sigma(j, I) \sigma(\varepsilon(j,I), \varepsilon(K^c, \varepsilon(j,I))^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(K^c, \varepsilon(j,I))^c}, \end{aligned} \tag{54}$$

and verify that it coincides with exterior derivative in Equation (53). As the set of m indices I_m is included in the sets $J_{\ell-1}$ or K_ℓ in Equation (53) or (54), we may write $K_\ell = \varepsilon(J_{\ell-1}, j)$ for some $j \notin J_{\ell-1}$. Then, we obtain the following chain of equalities for the basis elements in Equations (53) and (54):

$$\mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(K^c, \varepsilon(j,I))^c} = \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(K^c \cup \{j\} \cup I)^c} = \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(J^c \setminus \{j\} \cup \{j\} \cup I)^c} = \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(J^c \cup I)^c} = \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c}. \tag{55}$$

Therefore, and using that $\varepsilon(J^c \setminus \{j\}, \varepsilon(j, I))^c = J \setminus I$, we can write Equation (54) as

$$\mathrm{d}^\ell \mathbf{x} \lrcorner \, (\partial \wedge \mathbf{v}) = \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m, j \notin I \,:\, \varepsilon(j,I) \subseteq J \cup \{j\}} \Delta_{I,I} \partial_j v_I \, \mathrm{d}x_{\varepsilon(J,j)} \, \sigma(j, I) \sigma(\varepsilon(j, I), J \setminus I) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c}. \tag{56}$$

Comparing Equation (56) with Equation (53), the expressions coincide if this identity holds:

$$\sigma(j, J) \sigma(I, J \setminus I) = \sigma(j, I) \sigma(j + I, J \setminus I). \tag{57}$$

To prove Equation (57) we exploit that the σ are permutation signatures and that the signature of the composition of permutations is the product of the respective signatures. We proceed with the help of a visual aid in Figure 1, which depicts the identity between two different ways of sorting the concatenated list $(j, I, J \setminus I)$. On the left column we first sort the list $(I, J \setminus I)$ to obtain J and then sort the list (j, J). On the right column, we first sort the list (j, I) and then the list $(j + I, J \setminus I)$. This proves Equation (57) and the theorem.
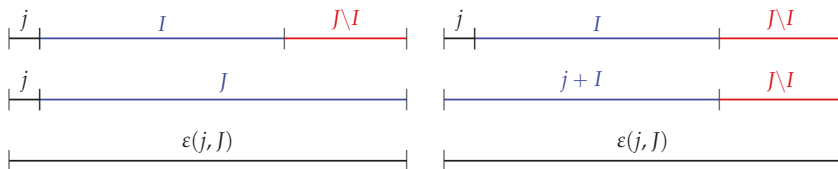
Figure 1. Visual aid for the identity among permutations in Equation (57).

Finally, we note that, had we defined the circulation with the left interior product, we would have got an incompatible relation in Equation (57), which could not be solved. □

3.5. Stokes Theorem for the Flux

In vector calculus in $\mathbf{R}^3$, the Gauss theorem relates the volume integral of the divergence of a vector field $\mathbf{v}$ over a region $\mathcal{V}^3$ to the surface integral of the vector field over the region boundary $\partial\mathcal{V}^3$. In the notation used in previous sections, and taking into account that both the surface integral and the volume integral can be expressed as fluxes for $\mathbf{R}^3$, this theorem reads

$$\int_{\partial\mathcal{V}^3} d^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^3} d^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}). \tag{58}$$

Making use of the identity $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v} = \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{v}$, we can rewrite the right-hand side in Equation (58) as

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}^3} d^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}) = \int_{\mathcal{V}^3} d^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}(\nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{v}). \tag{59}$$

In other words, the Gauss theorem relates the flux of the interior derivative of a vector field $\mathbf{v}$ across a region $\mathcal{V}^3$ to the flux of the vector field itself across the region boundary $\partial\mathcal{V}^3$.

The generalized Stokes theorem for differential forms allows us to extend the Gauss theorem to multivectors of any grade m as we do in the following theorem.

Theorem 2. *The flux of a grade-m vector field $\mathbf{v}$ across the boundary $\partial\mathcal{V}^\ell$ of an ℓ-dimensional hypersurface $\mathcal{V}^\ell$ is equal to the flux of the interior derivative of $\mathbf{v}$ across $\mathcal{V}^\ell$:*

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{v}, \partial\mathcal{V}^\ell) = \mathcal{F}(\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v}, \mathcal{V}^\ell). \tag{60}$$

Proof. Expressing the fluxes in Equation (60) by means of the integrals in Equation (30), we obtain

$$\int_{\partial\mathcal{V}^\ell} d^{\ell-1}\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \mathbf{v} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^\ell} d^\ell\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner (\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v}). \tag{61}$$

As in the proof of Theorem 1, we apply the Stokes theorem for differential forms in Equation (49) upon the identifications ω with $d^{\ell-1}\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner \mathbf{v}$ and $d\omega$ with $d^\ell\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner (\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v})$. First, for ω, we get

$$\left(\sum_{J_{\ell-1}} dx_J \Delta_{J^c, J^c} \sigma(J^c, J)\mathbf{e}_{J^c}\right) \lrcorner \left(\sum_{I_m} v_I \mathbf{e}_I\right) \begin{aligned} &= \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m : J^c \subseteq I} v_I \, dx_J \sigma(J^c, J)\sigma(\varepsilon(J^c, I^c)^c, J^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(J^c, I^c)^c} \\ &= \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m : J^c \subseteq I} v_I \, dx_J \sigma(J^c, J)\sigma(I\backslash J^c, J^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{I\backslash J^c}. \end{aligned} \tag{62}$$

Now, taking the exterior derivative of Equation (62), we obtain

$$d\omega = \sum_{J_{\ell-1}, I_m : J^c \subseteq I} \sum_{j\notin J} \partial_j v_I \, dx_{\varepsilon(j, J)}\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c, J)\sigma(I\backslash J^c, J^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{I\backslash J^c}. \tag{63}$$

This quantity should be equal to $d^\ell\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner (\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v})$ in the right-hand side of Equation (61), which we expand as

$$d^\ell\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \lrcorner (\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{v}) \begin{aligned} &= \left(\sum_{K_\ell} dx_K \Delta_{K^c, K^c} \sigma(K^c, K)\mathbf{e}_{K^c}\right) \lrcorner \left(\sum_{I: j\in I} \partial_j v_I \sigma(I\backslash j, j)\mathbf{e}_{I\backslash j}\right) \\ &= \sum_{K_\ell, I_m : K^c \subseteq I\backslash j} \sum_{j\in I} \partial_j v_I \, dx_K \sigma(K^c, K)\sigma(I\backslash j, j)\sigma(I\backslash j\backslash K^c, K^c) \, \mathbf{e}_{I\backslash j\backslash K^c}. \end{aligned} \tag{64}$$

We first consider the sets in the summations in the alternative expressions for $d\omega$, Equations (63) and (64). Since J^c contains j and is a subset of I, but K^c does not contain j and is also a subset of I (with

$j \in I$), then we can assert that $K = J \cup \{j\}$ so that the conditions in the summations are equivalent. The basis elements coincide and so do the differentials and derivatives, and it remains to verify the identity

$$\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c, J)\sigma(I \backslash J^c, J^c) = \sigma(K^c, K)\sigma(I \backslash j, j)\sigma(I \backslash j \backslash K^c, K^c). \tag{65}$$

With the definition $L = I \backslash J^c$, and expressed in terms of j, J, and L, this condition gives

$$\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c, J)\sigma(L, J^c) = \sigma(J^c \backslash j, J + j)\sigma(J^c \backslash j + L, j)\sigma(L, J^c \backslash j). \tag{66}$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation by $\sigma(J^c, J)$, $\sigma(J^c \backslash j, J + j)$ and $\sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)$, and taking into account that the square of a signature is $+1$, we obtain

$$\sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(L, J^c)\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c \backslash j, J + j) = \sigma(L, J^c \backslash j)\sigma(J^c \backslash j + L, j)\sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(J^c, J). \tag{67}$$

We start by simplifying Equation (67) by noting that

$$\sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(L, J^c) = \sigma(L, J^c \backslash j)\sigma(J^c \backslash j + L, j), \tag{68}$$

with help of the visual aid in Figure 2. The permutations on the left column first merge $(J^c \backslash j)$ with j and then the resulting J^c with L. Similarly, on the right column, we start with L, $(J^c \backslash j)$ and $\{j\}$, then concatenate $(L, J^c \backslash j)$ and then add j, getting the same result as the left column.
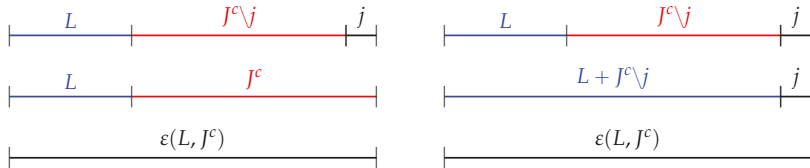
Figure 2. Visual aid for the identity $\sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(L, J^c) = \sigma(L, J^c \backslash j)\sigma(J^c \backslash j + L, j)$.

Therefore, we have reduced Equation (67) to the simpler form

$$\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c \backslash j, J + j) = \sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(J^c, J), \tag{69}$$

which we prove with the aid depicted in Figure 3. On the left column, j and J are first merged and then the concatenation $(J^c \backslash j, J + j)$ gives the sorted $\varepsilon(J^c, J)$. On the right column, after sorting $(J^c \backslash j)$ with j, merging it with J leads to the same final sequence.
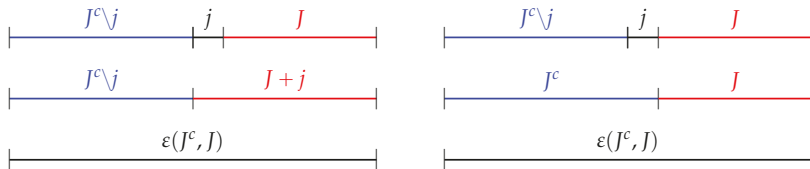
Figure 3. Visual aid for the identity $\sigma(j, J)\sigma(J^c \backslash j, J + j) = \sigma(J^c \backslash j, j)\sigma(J^c, J)$.

$\square$

4. An Application to Electromagnetism in 1+3 Dimensions

In this section, we show how to recover the standard form of Maxwell equations and Lorentz force in $1 + 3$ dimensions from a formulation with *exterior calculus* involving an electromagnetic bivector field $\mathbf{F}$ and a 4-dimensional current density vector $\mathbf{J}$. In the appropriate units, the bivector field $\mathbf{F}$ can be decomposed as $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F_E} + \mathbf{F_B}$, where $\mathbf{F_E}$ contains the electric-field $\mathbf{E}$ time-space components and $\mathbf{F_B}$

contains the space-space components for the magnetic field **B**. Similarly, the current density depends on the charge density ρ and the spatial current density **j**. More specifically,

$$\mathbf{J} = \rho\mathbf{e}_0 + \mathbf{j} \tag{70}$$

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F_E} + \mathbf{F_B} = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}}. \tag{71}$$

Here the Hodge complement acts only on the space components, and $\mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$. The bivector field **F** is closely related to the Faraday tensor, a rank-2 antisymmetric tensor.

Maxwell equations, in their differential form, constrain the divergence of the electric and the magnetic field, Equations (72) and (73), respectively, and the curl of **E** and **B**, namely Equations (74) and (75) [11] (p. 4-1).

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \rho \tag{72}$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \tag{73}$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\partial_0\mathbf{B} \tag{74}$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \partial_0\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{j}. \tag{75}$$

We refer to Equations (73) and (74) as homogeneous Maxwell equations and to Equations (72) and (75) as inhomogeneous Maxwell equations, as they include the fields and the sources given by charge and current densities. In exterior-calculus notation, both pairs of equations can be combined into simple multivector equations,

$$\partial \wedge \mathbf{F} = 0 \tag{76}$$

$$\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{J}, \tag{77}$$

where ∂ is the differential operator $\partial = -\partial_0\mathbf{e}_0 + \nabla$ for $k = 1$ and $n = 3$. As a consistency check, note that the wedge product raises the grade of **F**, and the zero in Equation (76) is the zero trivector; also, as the left interior product lowers the grade of **F**, both sides of Equation (77) relate space–time vectors.

Next to Maxwell equations, the Lorentz force density f characterizes, after integrating over the appropriate region, the force exerted by the electromagnetic field upon a system of charges described by the charge and current densities ρ and **j** [11] (pp. 13-1–13-3),

$$f = \rho\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}. \tag{78}$$

In relativistic form, the Lorentz force density becomes a four-dimensional vector **f** [2] (pp. 153–157). The time component of this vector is $\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, the power dissipated per unit of volume, or after integrating over the appropriate region, the rate of work being done on the charges by the fields. In exterior-calculus notation, the Lorentz force density vector can be computed as a left interior product, namely

$$\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{J} \lrcorner \mathbf{F}. \tag{79}$$

4.1. Equivalence of the Lorentz Force Density

In this section, we prove that Equation (79) indeed recovers the relativistic Lorentz force density by verifying that its components in both vector-calculus and exterior-calculus coincide. From the definitions of **J** and **F**, and using the distributive property of the interior product, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{f} &= (\rho\mathbf{e}_0 + \mathbf{j}) \lrcorner (\mathbf{F_E} + \mathbf{F_B}) \\
&= \rho\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{F_E} + \rho\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{F_B} + \mathbf{j} \lrcorner \mathbf{F_E} + \mathbf{j} \lrcorner \mathbf{F_B} \\
&= \rho\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner (\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E}) + \rho\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + \mathbf{j} \lrcorner (\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E}) + \mathbf{j} \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}.
\end{aligned} \tag{80}$$

Some straightforward calculations give $\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner (\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E}) = \mathbf{E}$, $\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = 0$, and $\mathbf{j} \lrcorner (\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E}) = \mathbf{e}_0 \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E}$. In addition, the formula for the left interior product in Equation (18) gives $\mathbf{j} \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = (\mathbf{j} \wedge \mathbf{B})^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}$, where the cross product is only valid for three dimensions. With these calculations, we obtain

$$\mathbf{f} = \rho \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{e}_0 \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}, \tag{81}$$

namely, a time-component $\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E}$ and a spatial component equal to the Lorentz force density $\rho \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}$.

4.2. Equivalence of the Differential Form of Maxwell Equations

In this section, we prove that Equation (76) indeed recovers the homogeneous Maxwell equations and that Equation (77) recovers the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations.

First, we observe that the exterior derivative $\partial \wedge \mathbf{F}$ gives a trivector with 4 components, while the homogeneous Maxwell equations are a scalar, Equation (73), and a vector, Equation (74). We shall verify that the scalar equation turns out to be given by the trivector component $\mathbf{e}_{123}$ of $\partial \wedge \mathbf{F}$, while the vector equation is given by the trivector components $\mathbf{e}_{012}$, $\mathbf{e}_{013}$, and $\mathbf{e}_{023}$ of the exterior derivative.

We evaluate the exterior derivative $\partial \wedge \mathbf{F}$ using the decomposition of $\mathbf{F}$ in Equation (71),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial \wedge \mathbf{F} &= -\partial_0 \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E} - \partial_0 \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + \nabla \wedge \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{E} + \nabla \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} \\
&= -\partial_0 \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} - \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge (\nabla \wedge \mathbf{E}) + \nabla \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} \\
&= -\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge (\partial_0 \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + \nabla \wedge \mathbf{E}) + \nabla \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}},
\end{aligned}
\tag{82}
$$

where we used that $\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_0 = 0$ and that $\nabla \wedge \mathbf{e}_0 = -\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \nabla$ in the second step of Equation (82). Taking advantage of Equation (40) we have the equality $\nabla \wedge \mathbf{E} = (\nabla \times \mathbf{E})^{\mathcal{H}}$, while $\nabla \wedge \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B})^{\mathcal{H}}$, and

$$\partial \wedge \mathbf{F} = -\mathbf{e}_0 \wedge (\partial_0 \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + (\nabla \times \mathbf{E})^{\mathcal{H}}) + (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B})^{\mathcal{H}}. \tag{83}$$

Indeed, the first summand vanishes when $\partial_0 \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + (\nabla \times \mathbf{E})^{\mathcal{H}} = 0$ or, taking the inverse Hodge complement, when Equation (74) holds. In terms of components, the spatial Hodge complement in this equation transforms a spatial vector into a bivector with components $\mathbf{e}_{12}$, $\mathbf{e}_{13}$, and $\mathbf{e}_{23}$ only and this equation recovers the homogeneous Maxwell equation in Equation (74). After taking the exterior product with $\mathbf{e}_0$, we obtain the trivector components $\mathbf{e}_{012}$, $\mathbf{e}_{013}$, and $\mathbf{e}_{023}$. Similarly, the second term vanishes for $(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B})^{\mathcal{H}} = 0$, recovering Equation (73). In terms of components, the spatial Hodge complement directly transforms a scalar into a trivector with a unique component $\mathbf{e}_{123}$, recovering the homogeneous Maxwell equation in Equation (73).

We move on to the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations. We compute the interior derivative $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F} &= (-\partial_0 \mathbf{e}_0 + \nabla) \lrcorner (\mathbf{F_E} + \mathbf{F_B}) \\
&= -\partial_0 \mathbf{E} - \partial_0 \mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} + \mathbf{e}_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} + \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} \\
&= -\partial_0 \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{e}_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} + \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}},
\end{aligned}
\tag{84}
$$

since $\mathbf{e}_0 \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = 0$. The interior derivative $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$ gives a space–time vector with 4 components, while the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations are a scalar, Equation (72), and a spatial vector, Equation (75).

We can verify that the scalar equation turns out to be given by the vector component $\mathbf{e}_0$ of $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$, while the spatial vector equation is given by the spatial vector components $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ of $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$. Indeed, if we match this expression with the current density vector $\mathbf{J}$, then the time component $\mathbf{e}_0$ of $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$ gives Equation (72). Selecting the space components of $\partial \lrcorner \mathbf{F}$, the differential equation is

$$-\partial_0 \mathbf{E} + \nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = \mathbf{j}, \tag{85}$$

which, using the relation $\nabla \lrcorner \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}} = \nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ can be written as Equation (75).

4.3. Equivalence of the Integral Form of Maxwell Equations

After studying the exterior-calculus differential formulation of Maxwell equations, we recover the standard integral formulation. Applying the Stokes Theorem 1 to Equation (76), we find that *the circulation of the bivector field* **F** *along the boundary of any three-dimensional space–time volume* $\mathcal{V}^3$ *is zero*:

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^3 \mathbf{x} \cdot (\partial \wedge \mathbf{F}) = 0. \tag{86}$$

At this point, Equation (86) is a scalar equation and we obtain the pair of homogeneous Maxwell equations by considering two different hypersurfaces $\mathcal{V}^3$.

First, let the domain $\mathcal{V}^3 = V$ contain only spatial coordinates. There are no tangential components to V with time indices and the contribution of $\mathbf{F_E}$ to the circulation of **F** over $\partial \mathcal{V}^3$ in Equation (86) is zero, i.e.,

$$\int_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} = \int_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F_B}. \tag{87}$$

Using that $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{w}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ for any vectors **u**, **w**, and therefore $\mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} = \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F_B}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ and the definition $\mathbf{F_B} = \mathbf{B}^{\mathcal{H}}$, the integral in the right-hand side of Equation (87) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \oint_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F_B} &= \oint_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{B} \\ &= \oint_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}, \end{aligned} \tag{88}$$

where we used Equation (32) to write the last surface integral. Substituting Equation (88) back into Equation (86) gives the Gauss law for the magnetic field [11] (pp. 1-5–1-9).

Let now $\mathcal{V}^3$ be a time-space domain $(t_0, t_1) \times S$, where S is a two-dimensional spatial surface. With no real loss of generality we assume that S lies on the $\mathbf{e}_1 \wedge \mathbf{e}_2$ plane. Its boundary $\partial \mathcal{V}^3$ is the union of the sets $(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S$, $t_0 \times S$ and $t_1 \times S$. For the first set, we choose $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ as the vector normal to ∂S pointing outwards on the plane defined by S and $\mathbf{e}_\| = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_{\partial S}$, where $\mathbf{e}_{\partial S}$ is a vector tangent to ∂S with a counterclockwise orientation, so that $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\| = -\mathbf{e}_{012}$. Further, since $\mathbf{e}_\|$ is a time-space bivector, the contribution of $\mathbf{F_B}$ to the circulation of **F** over this first set in Equation (86) is zero, and

$$\int_{(t_0,t_1) \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} = -\int_{(t_0,t_1) \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}_\| \cdot \mathbf{F_E}. \tag{89}$$

Writing the differential vector as $\mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}_\| = \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{d}x \mathbf{e}_{0x}$, parameterizing the line integral over the boundary ∂S by the variable x with unit vector $\mathbf{e}_{0x}$, and using that $\mathbf{e}_{0x} \cdot \mathbf{F_E} = -\mathbf{e}_x \cdot \mathbf{E}$ and therefore $\mathrm{d}x\, \mathbf{e}_{0x} \cdot \mathbf{F_E} = -\mathrm{d}\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, the integral of the right-hand side of Equation (89) becomes

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_{\partial S} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{E}. \tag{90}$$

For the second and third sets the normal vector to the integration surface pointing outwards are $\mathbf{e}_\perp = -\mathbf{e}_0$ and $\mathbf{e}_\perp = \mathbf{e}_0$ respectively. Since $\mathbf{e}_\|$ is a space-space bivector in both cases, then the contribution of $\mathbf{F_E}$ to the circulation is zero. We express the circulations of $\mathbf{F_B}$ as fluxes of **B** and surface integrals as done in Equation (88). Using these observations the integral for the circulation of **F** over these two sets in Equation (86) is given by

$$\int_{t_0 \times S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} + \int_{t_1 \times S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{F} = -\int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}(t_0) + \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}(t_1). \tag{91}$$

Combining Equations (90) and (91) in Equation (86) we recover the integral over time of the so called Faraday law [11] (pp. 17-1–17-2). Equivalently, taking the time derivative recovers the usual Faraday law, namely

$$\int_{\partial S} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \partial_t \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0. \tag{92}$$

In regard to the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations, applying the Stokes Theorem 2 to Equation (77), we find that *the flux of the bivector field* **F** *across the boundary of any three-dimensional space–time volume is equal to the flux of the current density* **J** *across the three-dimensional space–time volume*:

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F} = \int_{\mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot (\boldsymbol{\partial} \lrcorner \mathbf{F}) = \int_{\mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{J}. \tag{93}$$

As with the homogeneous Maxwell equations, the scalar Equation (93) yields the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations by considering two different hypersurfaces $\mathcal{V}^3$.

First, let the integration domain $\mathcal{V}^3$ be a spatial volume V. Since there are no normal components to V with space indices only, the contribution of $\mathbf{F_B}$ to the flux is zero so that Equation (93) becomes

$$\int_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F_E} = \int_V \mathrm{d}^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{J}. \tag{94}$$

From the definition of inverse Hodge complement in Equation (10), we write the differential vectors

$$\mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = -\sum_{I, i \notin I} \mathrm{d}^2 x_I \sigma(0i, I) \mathbf{e}_{0i} \tag{95}$$

$$\mathrm{d}^3\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} = -\mathrm{d}V \mathbf{e}_0. \tag{96}$$

Plugging these expressions in Equation (94), using the definitions of $\mathbf{F_E}$ and $\mathbf{J}$, and computing the dot products on both sides of the equality, we obtain that Equation (94) simplifies as

$$-\int_{\partial V} \left(\sum_{I, i \notin I} \mathrm{d}^2 x_I \sigma(0i, I) \mathbf{e}_{0i} \right) \cdot \left(\sum_j E_j \mathbf{e}_{0j} \right) = -\int_V \mathrm{d}V \mathbf{e}_0 \cdot (\rho \mathbf{e}_0 + \mathbf{j}) \tag{97}$$

$$\int_{\partial V} \sum_{I, i \notin I} \mathrm{d}^2 x_I \sigma(i, I) E_i = \int_V \mathrm{d}V \rho \tag{98}$$

$$\int_{\partial V} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{E} = \int_V \mathrm{d}V \rho. \tag{99}$$

In Equation (98) we used that $\sigma(0i, I) = \sigma(i, I)$ and in Equation (99) we used that $\sum_{I, i \notin I} \mathrm{d}^2 x_I \sigma(i, I) E_i = \mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{E}$. Since the Hodge complement is over space, the result is a surface integral with positive orientation as in Equation (32). We recovered in Equation (99) the Gauss law for the electric field [11] (pp. 4-7–4-9).

For $\mathcal{V}^3 = (t_0, t_1) \times S$ where S is a two-dimensional surface lying on the $\mathbf{e}_1 \wedge \mathbf{e}_2$ plane, the boundary $\partial \mathcal{V}^3$ is the union of the sets $(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S$, $t_0 \times S$ and $t_1 \times S$. For the first set, since $\mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ has no time components, the contribution of $\mathbf{F_E}$ to this set is zero, that is

$$\int_{(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F} = \int_{(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F_B}. \tag{100}$$

As in the homogeneous case, we choose $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ as the vector normal to ∂S pointing outwards on the plane defined by S and $\mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_0 \wedge \mathbf{e}_{\partial S}$, where $\mathbf{e}_{\partial S}$ is a vector tangent to ∂S with a counterclockwise orientation, such that $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\parallel = -\mathbf{e}_{012}$ introduces a change of sign. Expressing $\mathrm{d}^2\mathbf{x}_\parallel^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ and $\mathbf{F_B}$ in the

canonical basis, defining $I = (0, i)$ so that I^c contains only space indexes, and using that $\mathbf{e}_{I^c} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{ic} = 1$ and $\sigma(I^c, I) = \sigma(I^c, 0, i) = \sigma(0, I^c, i) = \sigma(I^c, i)$, we obtain that Equation (100) simplifies to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \int_{(t_0, t_1) \times \partial S} \left(\sum_I \mathrm{d}x_I \sigma(I^c, I) \mathbf{e}_{I^c} \right) \cdot \left(\sum_i B_i \mathbf{e}_{ic} \sigma(i^c, i) \right) \\
&= - \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_{\partial S} \mathrm{d}x B_x \\
&= - \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_{\partial S} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{B}.
\end{aligned}
\tag{101}
$$

For the second and third sets we respectively choose $\mathbf{e}_\perp = -\mathbf{e}_0$ and $\mathbf{e}_\perp = \mathbf{e}_0$ pointing outside $\mathcal{V}^3$, implying that the contribution of $\mathbf{F_B}$ is zero for this set as the inverse Hodge complement of $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ is a space vector. Expressing $\mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}}$ in Equation (95) and using similar steps as in Equations (97)–(99), the left-hand side of Equation (93) over these two sets is given by

$$
\int_{t_0 \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F} + \int_{t_1 \times \partial S} \mathrm{d}^2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{F} = - \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{E}(t_0) + \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{E}(t_1)
\tag{102}
$$

Finally, for the right-hand side of Equation (93), we choose $\mathbf{e}_\perp$ as the vector normal to $\mathcal{V}^3$ pointing outside. Since $\mathbf{e}_\parallel = \mathbf{e}_{012}$ implies that $\mathbf{e}_\perp \wedge \mathbf{e}_\parallel = -\mathbf{e}_{0123}$, we obtain that

$$
\int_{\mathcal{V}^3} \mathrm{d}^3 \mathbf{x}^{\mathcal{H}^{-1}} \cdot \mathbf{J} = - \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{j}.
\tag{103}
$$

We have thusly recovered the integral form of the Ampere-Maxwell equation [11] (p. 18-1–18-4) integrated over the time interval (t_0, t_1) by combining Equations (101)–(103) into Equation (93), that is

$$
\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_{\partial S} \mathrm{d}\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{j} + \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{E}(t_1) - \int_S \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{E}(t_0).
\tag{104}
$$

5. Summary

In this paper, we aimed at showing how exterior calculus provides a tool merging the simplicity and intuitiveness of standard vector calculus with the power of tensors and differential forms. Set in the context of a general space–time algebra with multiple space and time components, we provided the basic concepts of exterior algebra and calculus, such as multivectors, wedge product and interior products, with a distinction between left and right products, Hodge complement, and exterior and interior derivatives. While a space–time with multiple time coordinates leads to several issues from the physical point of view [12], we did not deal with these problems as this paper focuses on the mathematical constructions. We also defined oriented integrals, with two important examples being the flux and circulation of grade m-vector fields as integrals of the normal and tangent components of the field to a hypersurface respectively. These operations extend the standard circulation of a vector field as a line integral and the flux of a vector field as a surface integral in three dimensions to any number of dimensions and any vector grade.

Armed with the theory of differential forms, we proved two exterior-calculus Stokes theorems, one for the circulation and one for the flux, that generalize the Kelvin-Stokes, Gauss and Green theorems. We saw that the flux of the curl of a vector field in three dimensions across a surface is also the circulation of the exterior derivative of the vector field along that surface. In exterior calculus, these Stokes theorems hold for any number of dimensions and any vector grade and are simply expressed in terms of the exterior and interior derivatives for the circulation and flux respectively.

As an application of our tools, we showed how to recover the classical laws of electromagnetism, Maxwell equations and Lorentz force, from a exterior-calculus formalism in relativistic space–time with one temporal and three spatial dimensions. The electromagnetic field is described by a bivector field with six components, closely related to Faraday's antisymmetric tensor, containing both electric and magnetic fields. The differential form of Maxwell equations relates the exterior derivative of the

bivector field with the zero trivector and the interior derivative of the field with the current density vector. In the integral form, these equations correspond to the statements that the circulation of the bivector field along the boundary of any three-dimensional space–time volume is zero, and that the flux of the bivector field across the boundary of any three-dimensional space–time volume is equal to the flux of the current density across the same space–time volume.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization, A.M.; Methodology, I.C., J.F.-S., A.M.; Investigation, I.C.; Writing—Original Draft Preparation, I.C.; Writing—Review & Editing, I.C., J.F.-S., A.M.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Appendix A. Proofs of Product Identities

In this appendix, we verify the relations about interior products introduced in Section 2.

Appendix A.1. Relation between Left and Right Interior Products

We now prove the formula

$$\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \mathbf{e}_J \llcorner \mathbf{e}_I (-1)^{|I|(|J|-|I|)}, \tag{A1}$$

relating left and right interior products. For two lists I and J, we have

$$\mathbf{e}_I \lrcorner \mathbf{e}_J = \Delta_{I,I} \sigma(J\backslash I, I) \mathbf{e}_{J\backslash I}, \tag{A2}$$

$$\mathbf{e}_J \llcorner \mathbf{e}_I = \Delta_{I,I} \sigma(I, J\backslash I) \mathbf{e}_{J\backslash I}, \tag{A3}$$

where we assumed that $I \subseteq J$ with no loss of generality and used that $\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c = J\backslash I$ in this case. The only difference between the expressions lies in the signatures, that are related by setting $A = J\backslash I$ and $B = I$ in the following lemma.

Lemma A1. *Given two arbitrary lists A and B, of length $|A|$ and $|B|$ respectively, then the permutations sorting the concatenated lists (A, B) and (B, A) satisfy the formula*

$$\sigma(A, B) = \sigma(B, A)(-1)^{|A||B|}. \tag{A4}$$

Proof. Given a list A, let $\bar{A}$ be the reversed list, namely the list where the order of all the elements is reversed. Counting the number of position jumps needed to reverse the list, we obtain the signature of this reversing operation as

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(A) = \sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{A}) = (-1)^{|A|-1+|A|-2+\dots+1} = (-1)^{\frac{|A|(|A|-1)}{2}}. \tag{A5}$$

The proof is based on the identity between two different ways of rearranging the concatenated list (A, B) into the ordered list $\varepsilon(A, B)$, as depicted in Figure A1.
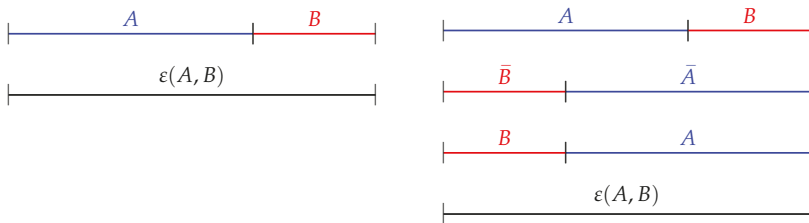

Figure A1. Visual aid for the relation between $\sigma(A, B)$ and $\sigma(B, A)$.

First, in the left column of Figure A1 we depict how a single permutation with signature $\sigma(A, B)$ orders the list (A, B). In the right column of Figure A1 we depict how a different series of permutations achieves the same result. We start by reversing the concatenated list (A, B), an operation with signature $\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{B}, \bar{A})$. Then, we separately partially reverse the lists $\bar{B}$ and $\bar{A}$, operations with respective signatures $\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{B})$ and $\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{A})$. A final permutation with signature $\sigma(B, A)$ orders the list (B, A) into $\varepsilon(A, B)$. Since the signature of a composition of permutations is the product of the signatures, we obtain that

$$\sigma(A, B) = \sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{B}, \bar{A})\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{A})\sigma_{\mathrm{r}}(\bar{B})\sigma(B, A). \tag{A6}$$

Using Equation (A5) in every σ_{r} in Equation (A6) and carrying out some simplifications yields Equation (A4). $\square$

Appendix A.2. Relation between Interior and Exterior Products

We start with the expression for the left interior product Equation (14). From Equations (9) and (10), we compute

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_J^{\mathcal{H}}\right)^{\mathcal{H}-1} &= \left(\Delta_{J,J}\sigma(J, J^c)\mathbf{e}_I \wedge \mathbf{e}_{J^c}\right)^{\mathcal{H}-1} \\
&= \Delta_{J,J}\Delta_{\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c,\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c}\,\sigma(J, J^c)\sigma(I, J^c)\sigma(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, \varepsilon(I, J^c))\,\mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c},
\end{aligned} \tag{A7}$$

and since $\Delta_{\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c,\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c} = \Delta_{J\backslash I,J\backslash I}$, we can conclude that $\Delta_{J,J}\Delta_{\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c,\varepsilon(I,J^c)^c} = \Delta_{I,I}$. If we now compare the result with Equation (11), we need just to verify the identity

$$\sigma\big(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, I\big) = \sigma(J, J^c)\sigma(I, J^c)\sigma(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, \varepsilon(I, J^c)), \tag{A8}$$

or equivalently

$$\sigma\big(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, I\big)\sigma(J, J^c) = \sigma(\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c, \varepsilon(I, J^c))\sigma(I, J^c). \tag{A9}$$

The left-hand side of Equation (A9) corresponds to taking the sets $\varepsilon(I, J^c)^c = J\backslash I$, I and J^c, in this order, and then merging and sorting $J\backslash I$ with I and then merging and sorting the resulting set J with J^c, as shown in the left column of Figure A2. On the right-hand side, we start we the same three lists, but we first merge and sort I with J^c, and then we get the whole list by merging and sorting the result with $J\backslash I$, as represented in the right column of Figure A2. Thus, starting from the three sets and rearranging them in different ways, we get the same final ordered list, and since the signatures of the left-hand side and right-hand side are the same, and Equation (A9) is proved. As a consequence, Equation (14) is verified.
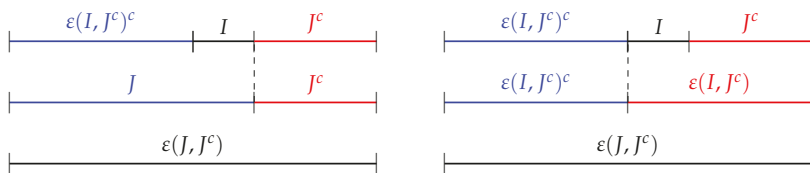
Figure A2. Visual aid for the permutations in Equation (A9).

Afterwards, we prove the formula for the right interior product Equation (15). Using Equations (9) and (10), we write

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\mathbf{e}_I^{\mathcal{H}-1} \wedge \mathbf{e}_J\right)^{\mathcal{H}} &= \left(\Delta_{I^c,I^c}\sigma(I^c, I)\mathbf{e}_{I^c} \wedge \mathbf{e}_J\right)^{\mathcal{H}} \\
&= \Delta_{I^c,I^c}\sigma(I^c, I)\sigma(I^c, J)\,\mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I^c,J)}^{\mathcal{H}} \\
&= \Delta_{I^c,I^c}\sigma(I^c, I)\sigma(I^c, J)\Delta_{\varepsilon(I^c,J),\varepsilon(I^c,J)}\sigma(\varepsilon(I^c, J), \varepsilon(I^c, J)^c)\,\mathbf{e}_{\varepsilon(I^c,J)^c}.
\end{aligned} \tag{A10}$$

Using that $\Delta_{\varepsilon(I^c,J),\varepsilon(I^c,J)}\Delta_{I^c,I^c} = \Delta_{J,J}$, in order to prove the validity of Equation (15), we need to prove the relation

$$\sigma(J,\varepsilon(I^c,J)^c) = \sigma(I^c,I)\sigma(I^c,J)\sigma(\varepsilon(I^c,J),\varepsilon(I^c,J)^c). \tag{A11}$$

We can prove it applying Lemma A1 to obtain the expression Equation (A8), or by following the same procedure as before, paying attention to the difference that now list J is included in I.

Appendix A.3. Triple mixed product

Given two 1-vectors **u** and **v** and a r-vector **w**, we prove the relation

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = (-1)^r (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{v} \wedge (\mathbf{u} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}). \tag{A12}$$

Proof. We start by evaluating $\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w})$ explicitly, separating terms $i = j$ and $i \neq j$, namely

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ j \notin I, i \in I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} + \sum_{\substack{i,I \\ i \in I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_i w_I \sigma(i,I)\sigma(I,i)\mathbf{e}_I, \tag{A13}$$

then, using $\sigma(i,I)\sigma(I,i) = (-1)^r$ and adding and removing a term $(-1)^r \sum_{\substack{i,I \\ i \notin I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_i w_I \mathbf{e}_I$, we get

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ i \in I, j \notin I\backslash i}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} + (-1)^r \sum_{i,I} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_i w_I \mathbf{e}_I. \tag{A14}$$

More concretely, the left-hand side $\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w})$ is given by

$$\sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ j \notin I, i \in I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} - (-1)^r \sum_{\substack{i,I \\ i \notin I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_i w_I \mathbf{e}_I$$

$$= \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ j \notin I, i \in I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} - \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ j=i,j\notin I\backslash i, i \in I}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} \tag{A15}$$

$$= \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ i \in I, j \notin I\backslash i}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i}.$$

Similarly, we evaluate the right-hand side $\mathbf{v} \wedge (\mathbf{u} \lrcorner \mathbf{w})$ as

$$\mathbf{v} \wedge (\mathbf{u} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ i \in I, j \notin I\backslash i}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(I\backslash i,i)\sigma(j,I\backslash i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i}. \tag{A16}$$

Comparing Equations (A15) and (A16), it remains to prove the equality, and now we prove the equality

$$\sigma(j,I)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i) = \sigma(I\backslash i,i)\sigma(j,I\backslash i). \tag{A17}$$

We rewrite Equation (A17) multiplying both sides for $\sigma(j,I)\sigma(I\backslash i)$ so that we obtain

$$\sigma(j,I\backslash i)\sigma(I+j\backslash i,i) = \sigma(I\backslash i,i)\sigma(j,I) \tag{A18}$$

which we verify with the help of Figure A3. On the left column, we first merge j with $I\backslash i$ and then the resulting list with i. On the right columns, the permutations first join $I\backslash i$ and i and the resulting I is then merged with j, getting the same result in both sides of the relation.
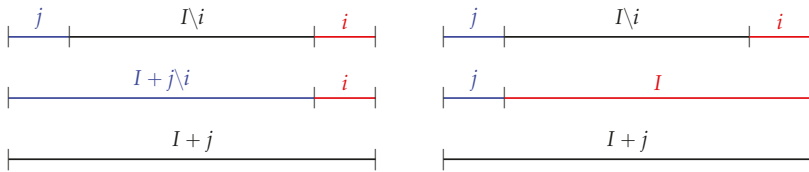
Figure A3. Visual aid for the identity $\sigma(j, I\backslash i)\sigma(I+j\backslash i, i) = \sigma(I\backslash i, i)\sigma(j, I)$.

Thus, we can write

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{\substack{i,j,I \\ i\in I, j\notin I\backslash i}} \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_j w_I \sigma(I\backslash i, i)\sigma(j, I\backslash i)\mathbf{e}_{I+j\backslash i} + (-1)^r \left(\sum_i \Delta_{i,i} u_i v_i\right)\left(\sum_I w_I \mathbf{e}_I\right), \quad \text{(A19)}$$

where we identify the term $(-1)^r(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})\mathbf{w}$, and finally conclude

$$\mathbf{u} \lrcorner (\mathbf{v} \wedge \mathbf{w}) - \mathbf{v} \wedge (\mathbf{u} \lrcorner \mathbf{w}) = (-1)^r(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})\mathbf{w}, \quad \text{(A20)}$$

which proves our initial formula. □

References

1. Gibbs, J.W.; Wilson, E.B. *Vector Analysis*; Yale University Press: New Haven, CT, USA, 1929.
2. Lorentz, H.A.; Einstein, A.; Minkowski, H.; Weyl, H. *The Principle of Relativity: A Collection of Original Memoirs on the Special and General Theory of Relativity*; Dover Publications: Mineola, NY, USA, 1923.
3. Ricci, M.M.G.; Levi-Civita, T. Méthodes de calcul différentiel absolu et leurs applications. *Math. Ann.* **1900**, *54*, 125–201. [CrossRef]
4. Cartan, E. *Les Systemes Differentiels Exterieurs Et Leurs Applications Geometriques*; Hermann & Cie: Paris, France, 1945.
5. Arnold, V.I.; Weinstein, A.; Vogtmann, K. *Mathematical Methods of Classical Mechanics*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 1989.
6. Clifford, W.K. *Mathematical Papers*; Macmillan: London, UK, 1882.
7. Grassmann, H. *Extension Theory (History of Mathematics, 19)*; American Mathematical Society: Providence, RI, USA; London Mathematical Society: London, UK, 2000.
8. Sommerfeld, A. Zur Relativitätstheorie. I. Vierdimensionale Vektoralgebra. *Ann. Phys.* **1910**, *337*, 749–776. [CrossRef]
9. Winitzki, S. *Linear Algebra via Exterior Products*; Free Software Foundation: Boston, MA, USA, 2010.
10. Frankel, T. *The Geometry of Physics*, 3rd ed.; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 2012.
11. Feynman, R.P.; Leyton, R.B.; Sands, M. *The Feynman Lectures on Physics*; Addison–Wesley: Boston, MA, USA, 1964; Volume 2.
12. Velev, M. Relativistic mechanics in multiple time dimensions. *Phys. Essays* **2012**, *25*, 403–438. [CrossRef]

Article

Dynamic Keynesian Model of Economic Growth with Memory and Lag

Vasily E. Tarasov [1,*] and Valentina V. Tarasova [2,3]

[1] Skobeltsyn Institute of Nuclear Physics, Lomonosov Moscow State University, 119991 Moscow, Russia

[2] Faculty of Economics, Lomonosov Moscow State University, 119991 Moscow, Russia; v.v.tarasova@mail.ru

[3] Yandex, Ulitsa Lva Tolstogo 16, 119021 Moscow, Russia

* Correspondence: tarasov@theory.sinp.msu.ru; Tel.: +7-495-939-5989

Abstract: A mathematical model of economic growth with fading memory and continuous distribution of delay time is suggested. This model can be considered as a generalization of the standard Keynesian macroeconomic model. To take into account the memory and gamma-distributed lag we use the Abel-type integral and integro-differential operators with the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function in the kernel. These operators allow us to propose an economic accelerator, in which the memory and lag are taken into account. The fractional differential equation, which describes the dynamics of national income in this generalized model, is suggested. The solution of this fractional differential equation is obtained in the form of series of the confluent hypergeometric Kummer functions. The asymptotic behavior of national income, which is described by this solution, is considered.

Keywords: fractional differential equations; fractional derivative; Abel-type integral; time delay; distributed lag; gamma distribution; macroeconomics; Keynesian model

MSC: 91B02; 26A33; 91B55

JEL Classification: E00; C02

1. Introduction

Advanced mathematical methods of fractional calculus [1–5] are a powerful tool for describing the fading memory and spatial non-locality. Fractional derivatives and integrals of non-integer order have different applications in natural and social sciences [6,7].

In this article, we suggest a generalization of one of the most famous models of economic growth, which is associated with the founder of modern macroeconomic theory, John M. Keynes [8–10]. In the suggested generalization, we take into account two types of phenomena: (I) long memory with power-law fading and (II) continuously distributed lag with gamma distribution of delay time.

The continuously distributed lag has been considered in economics starting with the works of Michal A. Kalecki [11] and Alban W.H. Phillips [12,13]. The macrodynamic models of business cycles, where the continuous uniform distribution of delay time is used, were considered by Michal A. Kalecki in 1935 [11], (see also Section 8.4 of [14], (pp. 251–254)). The economic growth models with continuously distributed lag were proposed by Alban W.H. Phillips [12,13] in 1954. In his works, the distribution of delay time has been described by exponential distribution. Operators with continuously distributed lag were considered by Roy G.D. Allen [14] (pp. 23–29), in 1956.

The time delay (lag) is caused by finite speeds of processes, i.e., the change of one variable does not lead to instant changes of another variable. Therefore, the distributed lag (time delay) cannot be considered as a long memory in processes. For example, in physics, the retarded potential of the

electromagnetic field is well known. The change in the value of the electromagnetic field at the point of observation r_1 is delayed with respect to the change in the sources of the field located at the point r_2 at the time $t = |r_1 r_2| / c$, where c is the speed of propagation of disturbances. It is known that the processes of propagation of the electromagnetic field in a vacuum do not mean the presence of memory in this process.

Long memory has been considered in economics starting with the works of C.W.J. Granger [15–18]. For the first time, the importance of long-range time dependence in economic data was recognized by C.W.J. Granger [15,16] in 1964, 1966. The long-range time dependencies have empirically observed in economics [19–21]. For these dependencies, the correlations between values of variables decay to zero more slowly than it can be expected from independent variables or variables from classical Markov model and autoregressive moving average (ARMA) model [19–25]. An interpretation of these dependencies between variables is that this process has a long memory. In economics, long memory was first related to fractional differencing and integrating by C.W.J. Granger., R. Joyeux [26] and J.R.M. Hosking [27] by using the discrete time approach. Granger, Joyeux, and Hosking independently proposed the so-called autoregressive fractional integrated moving average models (ARFIMA models). These models use the difference operator $\Delta^d := (1 - L)^d$, where L is the lag operator $LX(t) = X(t - 1)$, and d is the order of the fractional differencing if $d > 0$ (fractional integrating if $d < 0$), which need not be an integer. In papers [28,29], we noted that the operator Δ^d coincides with the Grunwald–Letnikov fractional difference $\Delta_\tau^\alpha := (1 - T_\tau)^\alpha$ of order $\alpha = d$ and the unit step $\tau = 1$, where T_τ is the translation (shift) operator that is defined [1], (pp. 95–96), by the expression $(T_\tau Y)(t) = Y(t - \tau)$, where $\tau > 0$ is the delay time. The Grunwald–Letnikov fractional differences were proposed over a hundred and fifty years ago. In mathematics these fractional differences are actively used (for example, see [1], (pp. 371–387), and [3], (pp. 43–62) and [4], (pp. 121–123)). Due to the historical circumstances, the description of processes with memory in economics was based on the Granger—Joyeux approach and models with discrete time only. The continuous time form of economic models with memory was practically not considered and advanced mathematical methods of fractional calculus were not applied in mathematical economics.

An application of advanced mathematical methods of fractional calculus in Keynesian economic models with continuous time was proposed by authors [30,31] in 2016 (see also [32–34]). The fractional differential equations of the dynamic Keynesian model with power-law memory and their solutions have been considered in [30–34]. Continuously distributed lag was not discussed in these works.

For macroeconomics, it is important to simultaneously take into account lagging and memory phenomena. In this article, we consider memory with power-law fading and lag with gamma distribution of delay time. The memory is described by the Riemann–Liouville fractional integrals and the Caputo fractional derivatives. The distributed lag is described by the translation T_τ, in which the delay time $\tau > 0$ is considered as a random variable that is distributed by probability law (distribution) on positive semiaxis. The composition of these operators is represented as the Abel-type integral and integro-differential operators with the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function in the kernel. Using these operators, we propose the fractional differential equation for the generalized dynamic Keynesian model that describes the fractional dynamics of national income. We obtain a solution for this equation that describes the macroeconomic growth with power-law fading memory and gamma distribution of delay time.

2. Standard Dynamic Keynesian Model

In macroeconomic growth models, two types of variables are used [14,35,36]. First, exogenous variables are considered as independent quantities that are external to the considered economic model. Secondly, endogenous variables are internal variables that are formed within the model. The endogenous variables are described as functions of exogenous variables. In models with continuous time, all these variables are considered as functions of time t.

Let us consider the standard dynamical Keynesian model with continuous time. In the Keynesian model, the following variables are used to describe the dynamics of the revenue and expenditure parts of the economy: $Y(t)$ is a national income; $G(t)$ is the government expenditure; $C(t)$ describes the consumption expenditure; $I(t)$ describes the investment expenditure, $E(t)$ is a total expenditure, i.e., $E(t)$ is defined as the sum of all expenditures:

$$E(t) \,=\, C(t) \,+\, I(t) \,+\, G(t). \tag{1}$$

In dynamic equilibrium, we have

$$Y(t) \,=\, E(t). \tag{2}$$

In this case, the balance equation establishes the equality of the national income to the sum of all expenditures

$$Y(t) =\, C(t) +\, I(t) +\, G(t). \tag{3}$$

In the Keynesian model, it is assumed that the consumption expenditure in period t depends on the income level in the same period. The consumption expenditure $C(t)$ is regarded as an endogenous variable equal to the amount of domestic consumption of some part of the national income and final consumption independent of income. As a result, the consumption expenditure $C(t)$ is described by the linear equation of the economic multiplier

$$C(t) = m(t)Y(t) + b(t), \tag{4}$$

where $m(t)$ is the multiplier factor that describes the marginal propensity to consume ($0 < m(t) < 1$), and the function $b(t) > 0$ describes the autonomous consumption that does not depend on income. The expression $m(t)Y(t)$ describes the part of consumption that depends on income.

In the static model, the investment expenditure and government expenditure are considered as exogenous variables. In the dynamic Keynesian model, the investment expenditure $I(t)$ is treated as endogenous and it is assumed to depend on the level of income [35], (pp. 95–97). The investment expenditure $I(t)$ is determined by the rate of change of the national income. This assumption is described by the equation of the economic accelerator

$$I(t) \,=\, v(t)Y^{(1)}(t), \tag{5}$$

where $v(t)$ is the rate of acceleration, which characterizes the level of technology and state infrastructure, and $Y^{(1)}(t) = dY(t)/dt$ is the first-order derivative of the income function $Y(t)$ with respect to the time variable.

In the Keynesian model, government expenditure $G(t)$, the propensity to consume $m(t)$, the rate of acceleration $v(t)$, and the autonomous consumption $b(t)$ are exogenous variables that are specified as external to the model and characterize the functioning and development of the economy. These variables, as functions of time, are assumed to be given.

The purpose of the dynamic Keynesian model is to describe the behavior of the national income. For this, it is necessary to find the national income $Y(t)$, as a function of time t. Substituting the multiplier Equation (4) and the accelerator Equation (5) into the balance Equation (3), we obtain

$$Y(t) \,=\, m(t)Y(t) \,+\, b(t) + v(t)Y^{(1)}(t) \,+\, G(t). \tag{6}$$

This equation can be written in the form

$$\frac{dY(t)}{dt} - \frac{1 - m(t)}{v(t)}Y(t) = -\frac{G(t) + b(t)}{v(t)}. \tag{7}$$

Equation (7) of the dynamic Keynesian model is a non-homogeneous linear differential equation with a first-order derivative.

We see that the functions $G(t)$ and $b(t)$ are included in Equation (7) as a sum. This could be expected since $G(t)$ is an independent expenditure on investment, that is independent of income, and $b(t)$ is an independent expenditure on consumption, also not dependent on national income. From the point of view of the main purpose of the Keynesian model, which is to describe the dynamics of the national income, these two types of expenditure simply complement each other [35], (pp. 95–98). Therefore, it is convenient to use the sum

$$G_b(t) = G(t) + b(t), \tag{8}$$

which describes the independent expenditure. In this case, the consumption function $C(t) = m(t)Y(t)$ is that part of consumption that depends on income. All this allows us to write down the equation of the standard dynamic Keynesian model in the form

$$\frac{dY(t)}{dt} = \frac{1 - m(t)}{v(t)} Y(t) - \frac{G_b(t)}{v(t)}, \tag{9}$$

where $0 < 1 - m(t) < 1$, and $v(t) > 0$. Equation (9) is a non-homogeneous first-order differential equation that describes the standard dynamic Keynesian model, which does not take into account the effects of memory and delay.

3. Dynamic Keynesian Model with Memory

In the standard Keynesian model, Equation (9) implies an instantaneous change in the investment expenditure, when the rate of growth of national income changes. This means that the equation of this model does not take into account the effects of memory and delay. Mathematically, this is due to the fact that the standard model equation is a first-order differential equation. The derivative of the first order, which is used in accelerator Equations (5), implies an instantaneous change of the investment expenditure $I(t)$, when changing the rate of the national income $Y(t)$. Because of this, accelerator Equation (5) does not take into account memory and lag. Multiplier Equation (4) also assumes that the consumption expenditure $C(t)$ changes instantly when the national income changes. As a result, model Equation (9) can describe an economy, in which agents have no memory. This fact greatly limits the applicability of the standard model to describe the real processes in the economy. To expand the scope of the model, we should take into account that economic agents can remember the history of changes of the national income and the investment expenditure, because it affects the behavior of these agents.

Generalization of the standard Keynesian model, in which memory [37,38] is taken into account, was proposed by the authors [30,31]. Let us briefly describe this generalized model with memory. The equation of investment accelerator with memory [37,39] can be written as

$$I(t) = v(t) \int_0^t M(t - \tau) \, Y^{(n)}(\tau) d\tau, \tag{10}$$

where $M(t - \tau)$ is the memory function. Note that Equation (10) can also be used to describe the distributed lag. In this case, $M(t - \tau)$ is called the weighting function, which is interpreted as the probability density function. Equation (5) can be obtained from (10) in the case $M(t - \tau) = \delta(t - \tau)$ and $n = 1$. Substitution of the investment $I(t)$ in the form of expression (10), and the consumption expenditure (4) into balance Equation (3), we get

$$v(t) \int_0^t M(t - \tau) Y^{(n)}(\tau) d\tau = (1 - m(t))Y(t) - G_b(t), \tag{11}$$

where $G_b(t)$ is defined by (8). Equation (9) of the standard Keynesian model without memory and lag can be obtained from (11) by using $M(t - \tau) = \delta(t - \tau)$ and $n = 1$.

Equation (11) describes the fractional dynamics of the national income within the framework of the Keynesian model of growth with memory. If the parameters $m(t)$ and $v(t)$ are given, the growth of national income $Y(t)$ is conditioned by the behavior of the independent expenditure (8).

The memory with one-parameter power-law fading is described [37,39] by the function

$$M(t - \tau) = M_{RL}^{n-\alpha}(t - \tau) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n - \alpha)}(t - \tau)^{n-\alpha-1}, \tag{12}$$

where $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the gamma function and $n - 1 < \alpha \le n$. Using (12), the accelerator with memory (10) is represented [37,39] as

$$I(t) = v(t) \, (D_{C,0+}^\alpha Y)(t), \tag{13}$$

where $(D_{C,0+}^\alpha Y)(t)$ is the Caputo fractional derivative [4,5]. In general, the rate of acceleration $v(t)$ depends on the parameter of memory fading, i.e., $v(t) = v(t, \alpha)$. The parameter $\alpha > 0$ is interpreted as a fading parameter of power-law memory [37]. The concept of an accelerator with memory [39] allows us to get the equation of the Keynesian model with power-law memory in the form of the fractional differential equation

$$(D_{C,0+}^\alpha Y)(t) = \frac{1 - m(t)}{v(t)} Y(t) - \frac{G_b(t)}{v(t)}, \tag{14}$$

where the Caputo fractional derivative can be represented by the Laplace convolution

$$(D_{C,0+}^\alpha Y)(t) = (M_{RL}^{n-\alpha} * Y^{(n)})(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n - \alpha)} \int_0^t (t - \tau)^{n-\alpha-1} Y^{(n)}(\tau) d\tau, \tag{15}$$

where $n = [\alpha] + 1$ for $\alpha \notin \mathbb{N}$ and $n = \alpha$ for $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$, and the function $Y(\tau)$ has integer-order derivatives $Y^{(j)}(\tau), j = 1, \ldots, (n - 1)$, that are absolutely continuous.

The solution of Equation (14) with constant values of $m(t) = m$ and $v(t) = v$ has the form

$$Y(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} Y^{(j)}(0) t^j E_{\alpha, j+1}\left[\frac{1 - m}{v} t^\alpha\right] - \frac{1}{v} \int_0^t (t - \tau)^{\alpha-1} E_{\alpha, \alpha}\left[\frac{1 - m}{v}(t - \tau)^\alpha\right] G_b(t) d\tau, \tag{16}$$

where $n - 1 < \alpha \le n$. Solution (16) of the fractional differential Equation (14) and its properties are described in [30,31] (see also [32–34]).

4. Memory and Lag by Abel-Type Integral and Derivative with Kummer Functions

The economic accelerator and multiplier with continuously distributed lag were proposed by Alban W.H. Phillips [12,13] in 1954 (see also Sections 3.4, 3.5 and 8.7 in [14]). The distribution of delay time has been described by the exponential distribution. In 1956, the operators with continuously distributed lag were considered by Roy G.D. Allen in the book [14], (pp. 23–29). In the general case, the distribution of delay time can be described by other probability distributions [40], not just exponential distributions. Note that the time delay is caused by finite speeds of processes. Therefore, the distributed lag (time delay) cannot be interpreted as a memory.

4.1. Fractional Integral with Memory and Lag

The translation operator T_τ is defined [1], (pp. 95–96), by the expression $(T_\tau Y)(t) = Y(t - \tau)$, where $\tau > 0$ is the delay time. In the general case, the delay time $\tau > 0$ can be considered as a random variable, which is distributed by probability law (distribution) on positive semiaxis [40]. The translation operator with the continuously distributed delay time can be defined [40] by the equation

$$(T_M Y)(t) = \int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \, (T_\tau Y)(t) \, d\tau = \int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \, Y(t-\tau) d\tau, \tag{17}$$

where we assume that $Y(t)$ and $M_T(t)$ are piecewise continuous functions on $\mathbb{R}$ and the integral $\int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \, |Y(t-\tau)| \, d\tau$ converges. In Equation (17), the kernel $M_T(\tau)$ is the weighting function that satisfies the condition

$$M_T(\tau) \geq 0, \quad \int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) d\tau = 1. \tag{18}$$

To take into account the distributed time delay and power-law fading memory, we can use a composition of the translation operator (17) and integration of non-integer order. The Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with a distributed time delay can be defined [40] by the equation

$$(I_{T;RL;t_0}^\alpha Y)(t) = (T_M(I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y))(t) = \int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \, (I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau) d\tau, \tag{19}$$

where $(I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y)(t)$ is the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral of the order $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}_+$, and $M_T(\tau)$ is the weighting function that satisfies the conditions (18). Here we can assume that $(I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y)(t)$ and $M_T(t)$ are piecewise continuous functions on $\mathbb{R}$ such that $\int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \left|(I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau)\right| d\tau$ converges. The Riemann–Liouville fractional integral I_{RL,t_0}^α is defined [4], (p. 92), by the expression

$$(I_{RL,t_0}^\alpha Y)(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1} Y(\tau) d\tau, \tag{20}$$

where $\alpha \geq 0$ is the order of the fractional integral, $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the gamma function, and $\tau \in [t_0, t]$.

However, in order for definition (19) to be correct, it needs to take into account that the fractional integral (20) is defined for the case $t > t_0$ [4], (p. 69). By virtue of this, we can consider the two following cases.

For $t_0 = -\infty$, Equation (20) defines the Liouville fractional integral $(I_{L,+}^\alpha Y)(t)$, where $\tau \in (-\infty, t]$. Then the Liouville fractional integration with continuously distributed lag is defined in the form

$$(I_{T,L}^\alpha Y)(t) = (T_M(I_{L,+}^\alpha Y))(t) = \int_0^\infty M_T(\tau) \, (I_{L,+}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau) d\tau. \tag{21}$$

Considering that integral (20) is defined for the case $t > t_0 = 0$ [4], (p. 69), we can assume that $(I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y)(t) = 0$ for $t < t_0 = 0$ in expression (20) with $t_0 = 0$. Here the function $Y(\tau)$ is defined on the finite interval $[t_0, t_1]$ with $0 = t_0 < t_1 < \infty$, [4], (p. 69). This allows us to use the upper limit $t > 0$ insteat of infinity in Equation (19), such that

$$(I_{T;RL;0+}^\alpha Y)(t) = (T_M(I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y))(t) = \int_0^t M_T(\tau) \, (I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau) d\tau. \tag{22}$$

As a result, we can define the fractional integration with the gamma-distributed lag in the form

$$(I_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha} Y)(t) = (M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau) * (I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y))(t) = \int_0^t M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau)(I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau) \, d\tau, \tag{23}$$

where $M_T(\tau) = M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau)$ is the probability density function of the gamma distribution

$$M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda^a \tau^{a-1}}{\Gamma(a)} exp(-\lambda \, \tau) & if \; \tau > 0, \\ 0 & if \; \tau \leq 0 \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

with the shape parameter $a > 0$ and the rate parameter $\lambda > 0$. If $a = 1$, the function (24) describes the exponential distribution.

In economics, the gamma distribution (24) is applied to take into account waiting times, when there is a sharp increase in the average delay time. For example, this distribution is used to describe delays orders in queues, delays in payments, and to take into account the likelihood of risk events. The distribution also describes the time of receipt of the order for the enterprise, the service life of device components, and time between store visits.

Substitution of (24) into (23) gives the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with gamma distribution of delay time in the form of the Laplace convolution of memory and weighting functions

$$(I_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \int_0^t M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau)(I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y)(t-\tau)\,d\tau = (M_T^{\lambda,a} * (M_{RL}^\alpha * Y))(t), \tag{25}$$

where $M_{RL}^\alpha(t) = (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1}/\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the kernel of the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral (20). The associativity of the Laplace convolution gives

$$(M_T^{\lambda,a} * (M_{RL}^\alpha * Y^{(n)}))(t) = (M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha} * Y^{(n)})(t), \tag{26}$$

where $M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t)$ is the memory-and-lag function

$$M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t) = (M_T^{\lambda,a} * M_{RL}^\alpha)(t). \tag{27}$$

This allows us to represent operator (25) in the form

$$(I_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = (T_M^{\lambda,a}(I_{RL,0+}^\alpha Y))(t) = \int_0^t M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t-\tau)Y(\tau)\,d\tau, \tag{28}$$

where $M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t-\tau)$ is defined by Equation (27). Let us obtain an explicit form of the memory-and-lag function $M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t)$. For this purpose, we can use Equation 2.3.6.1 of [41], (p. 324), that has the form

$$\int_0^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1}\tau^{\beta-1}\,exp(-\lambda\,\tau)d\tau = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)\Gamma(\beta)}{\Gamma(\alpha+\beta)}\,t^{\alpha+\beta-1}F_{1,1}(\beta;\alpha+\beta;-\lambda t), \tag{29}$$

where $Re(\alpha) > 0$, $Re(\beta) > 0$ and $F_{1,1}(a;b;z)$ is the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function. The function $F_{1,1}(a;b;z)$ can be defined (see [42], (p. 115), and [4], (pp. 29–30)) by the equation

$$F_{1,1}(a;c;z) = \frac{\Gamma(c)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(c-a)}\int_0^1 t^{a-1}(1-t)^{c-a-1}\exp(zt)dt = \sum_{k=0}^\infty \frac{\Gamma(a+k)\Gamma(c)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(c+k)}\frac{z^k}{k!}, \tag{30}$$

where a, $z \in \mathbb{C}$, $Re(c) > Re(a) > 0$ such that $c \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots$. Series (30) is absolutely convergent for all $z \in \mathbb{C}$.

Using Equation (29), the memory-and-lag function (27) can be written as

$$M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}(t) = \frac{\lambda^a\,\Gamma(a)}{\Gamma(a+n-\alpha)}\,t^{a+\alpha-1}F_{1,1}(a;a+\alpha;-\lambda t) \tag{31}$$

that defines the kernel of operator (28). In general, the function (31) can be interpreted as a new memory function. Note that equality $F_{1,1}(a;c;z) = \Gamma(c)E_{1,c}^a(z)$ (see Equation 5.1.18 of [43]) allows us to represent the memory kernel (31) through the three parameter Mittag–Leffler functions [43].

As a result, the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with gamma distribution of delay time can represented [40] by the equation

$$(I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \frac{\lambda^a\,\Gamma(a)}{\Gamma(a+\alpha)}\int_0^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha+a-1}F_{1,1}(a;a+\alpha;-\lambda(t-\tau))Y(\tau)\,d\tau, \tag{32}$$

where $\alpha > 0$ is the order of integration and the parameters $a > 0$, $\lambda > 0$ describe the shape and rate of the gamma distribution, respectively.

It is known (see Section 37 of [2] and [44]), the integral operators of the form

$$(A_\alpha Y)(t) = \int_0^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1} K(t,\tau) Y(\tau)\, d\tau \tag{33}$$

are called the Abel-type integral operators. For example, we can consider the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function $F_{1,1}(\beta; \alpha; \lambda(t-\tau))$ as the kernel $K(t,\tau)$ of the operator (33). It is known that the Abel-type (AT) fractional integral operator with Kummer function in the kernel (see equation 37.1 in [1], (p. 731), and [45]) is defined by the equation

$$(I_{AT;0+}^{\alpha,\beta,\lambda} Y)(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_0^t (t-\tau)^{\alpha-1} F_{1,1}(\beta; \alpha; \lambda(t-\tau)) Y(\tau)\, d\tau. \tag{34}$$

In paper [45], the integral operator (34) is denoted as $K_0(\beta, \alpha, \lambda)$.

As a result, the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with gamma-distributed lag (32) can be expressed through the AT fractional integral (34) by the equation

$$(I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha} Y)(t) = \lambda^a\, \Gamma(a)(I_{AT;0+}^{a+\alpha,a,-\lambda} Y)(t). \tag{35}$$

The AT fractional integral (34) can be represented as an infinite series of the Riemann–Liouville fractional integrals

$$I_{AT;0+}^{\alpha,\beta,\lambda} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\beta)_k}{k!}\, \lambda^k I_{RL,0+}^{\alpha+k}, \tag{36}$$

where $(\beta)_k = \Gamma(\beta+k)/\Gamma(\beta)$ is the Pochhammer symbol. Expression (36) is called the Neumann generalized series (see Equation 37.10 of [1], (p. 732)), which characterizes the structure of the AT fractional integral operator (34). Using (35) and (36), the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with gamma-distributed lag (32) can be represented as the series

$$(I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha} Y)(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(a+k)}{\Gamma(k+1)}\, (-1)^k \lambda^{k+a} I_{RL,0+}^{\alpha+a+k}. \tag{37}$$

Since the Riemann–Liouville fractional integrals (20) are bounded in $L_p(t_0, t_1)$, where $p \geq 1$, $t_1 < \infty$ (see the proof of Theorem 2.6 in [1], (pp. 48–51)), then the series (37) may be summed for $|\lambda| < I_{RL,a+L_p(t_0,t_1)}^{1}{}^{-1}$. After evaluating the sums one may remove this restriction on λ and on the sum (37), since the suggested fractional integral operators (32) are analytic functions with respect to λ (see [1], (p. 732)).

Using Equation (37) and the semigroup property of the Riemann–Liouville fractional integrals, we can get the semigroup property for the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral with gamma-distributed lag (32) in the form

$$I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha} I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,b;\beta} = B(\alpha,\beta) I_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a+b;\alpha+\beta}, \tag{38}$$

where

$$B(\alpha,\beta) = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)\Gamma(\beta)}{\Gamma(\alpha+\beta)} \tag{39}$$

is the beta function. Equality (38) directly follows from Equation 37.14 of [1], (p. 733).

Using Theorem 37.1 of [1], (p. 733), and Equation (35), we can state that the suggested fractional integral with lag (32) has the same range in $L_p(t_0, t_1)$ as the Riemann–Liouville fractional integrals and it is bounden from $L_p(t_0, t_1)$ onto $I_{RL,0+}^{\alpha}[L_p(t_0, t_1)] \subset L_p(t_0, t_1)$.

Using the condition of the invertibility of the AT operators (34), which is described by Theorem 37.2 of [1], (p. 736), and Equation 37.32 of [1], (p. 735), we get that the solution of the fractional integral Equation

$$m(t)(\boldsymbol{I}_{AT;0+}^{\alpha,\beta,\lambda}Y)(t) = X(t) \tag{40}$$

can be represented in the form

$$Y(t) = \frac{m(t)}{\lambda^a \, \Gamma(a)} e^{-\lambda t} D_{RL,0+}^a \, (e^{\lambda t} D_{RL,0+}^{\alpha} \, X)(t) \, , \tag{41}$$

where $D_{RL,0+}^{\alpha}$ and $D_{RL,0+}^a$ are the Riemann–Liouville fractional derivatives of orders $\alpha > 0$ and $a > 0$ respectively. These derivatives can be defined by the Laplace convolution as $(D_{RL,0+}^{\alpha} X)(t) = D_t^n (M_{RL}^{n-\alpha} * X)(t)$, where $D_t^n = d^n/dt^n$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Note that Equation (40) can be interpreted as an equation of economic multiplier with power-law memory and distributed lag [39], which is a generalization of the multiplier Equation (4), where $m(t)$ is the multiplier factor. In this case, Equation (41) can be considered as the equation of an economic accelerator with memory [39]. The equation of multiplier with memory is a reversible, such that the dual (inverse) equation describes an accelerator with memory (see Section 4 of [39]).

4.2. Fractional Derivative with Memory and Lag

Using the integral operator (32), we can define the fractional derivatives with continuously distributed lag [40]. For example, the Caputo fractional derivative with gamma-distributed lag is defined by the Laplace convolution in the form

$$(\boldsymbol{D}_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \int_0^t M_T^{\lambda,a}(\tau)(D_{C,0+}^{\alpha}Y)(t-\tau) \, d\tau = (M_T^{\lambda,a} * (M_{RL}^{n-\alpha} * Y^{(n)}))(t). \tag{42}$$

The convolution is an associative operation that allows us to write

$$(M_T^{\lambda,a} * (M_{RL}^{n-\alpha} * Y^{(n)}))(t) = (M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha} * Y^{(n)})(t), \tag{43}$$

where $M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha}(t)$ is defined by Equation (31). This allows us to represent operators (42) in the form

$$(\boldsymbol{D}_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \int_0^t M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha}(t-\tau)Y^{(n)}(\tau) \, d\tau, \tag{44}$$

where $n - 1 < \alpha \le n$. Using Equation (31), we have the representation of the kernel $M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha}(t)$ in the form

$$M_{TRL}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha}(t) = \frac{\lambda^a \, \Gamma(a)}{\Gamma(a+n-\alpha)} \, t^{a+n-\alpha-1} F_{1,1}(a; a+n-\alpha; -\lambda t). \tag{45}$$

As a result, the Caputo fractional derivative with gamma-distributed lag is represented [40] by the Equation

$$(\boldsymbol{D}_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \frac{\lambda^a \, \Gamma(a)}{\Gamma(a+n-\alpha)} \int_0^t (t-\tau)^{n-\alpha+a-1} F_{1,1}(a; a+n-\alpha; -\lambda(t-\tau))Y^{(n)}(\tau) \, d\tau, \tag{46}$$

where $n - 1 < \alpha \le n$. Fractional differential operator (46) can be expressed through the Riemann–Liouville fractional integral (32) with gamma-distributed lag in the form

$$(\boldsymbol{D}_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = (\boldsymbol{I}_{T;RL;0+}^{\lambda,a;n-\alpha}Y^{(n)})(t), \tag{47}$$

where $n - 1 < \alpha \le n$.

Using the Laplace transform of the Caputo fractional derivative and the gamma distribution function, we get [40] the Laplace transform of the Caputo fractional derivative with gamma-distributed lag in the form

$$(\mathcal{L}(D_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t))(s) = \frac{\lambda^a}{(s+\lambda)^a}\left(s^\alpha(\mathcal{L}Y)(s) - \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} s^{\alpha-j-1}Y^{(j)}(0)\right), \tag{48}$$

where $n-1 < \alpha \leq n$.

Let us note that the operator (42) with $a = 1$ describes the Caputo fractional derivative with exponentially distributed lag [40]. Using the fact that the Caputo fractional derivatives with integer values $\alpha = n \in \mathbb{N}$ are the integer-order derivatives $(D_{C,0+}^\alpha Y)(t) = d^n Y(t)/dt^n$, the operator (42) with $a = 1$ and $\alpha = n$ describes the integer-order derivatives with the exponential distribution [40]. Note that these operators with exponentially distributed lag were defined in the works of Caputo and Fabrizio [46,47], where they have been misinterpreted as fractional derivatives of non-integer orders. We can state [40] that the derivative of integer order with exponentially distributed lag coincides with the Caputo–Fabrizio operator of the order $\beta = n - 1/(\lambda + 1)$, where λ is the rate parameter of the distribution and $n = [\beta] + 1$. As a result, the Caputo–Fabrizio operator can be interpreted as an integer-order derivative with the exponentially distributed lag.

The proposed operator (42) in the form (46) can be interpreted as a new generalized operator with the memory function given by the confluent hypergeometric function. The generalized fractional derivative (46) can be used to simultaneously account of long memory with power-law fading and distributed lag with the gamma distribution of delay time. In the next section, we describe a macroeconomic model with memory and distributed lag by using this proposed operator.

5. Fractional Differential Equation of a Keynesian Model with Memory and Lag

Let us take into account that the relationship between the investment expenditure $I(t)$ and the national income $Y(t)$ depends on memory and lag effects. For the case of the power-law memory and gamma distribution of the delay time, we can use the generalized accelerator equation

$$I(t) = v(t)\,(D_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t), \tag{49}$$

where $D_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}$ is the Caputo fractional derivative with distributed lag given by (46). Equation (49) describes the economic accelerator that takes into account the power-law fading memory and the gamma-distributed lag.

Substituting expressions (49) and (4) into balance Equation (3), we obtain the fractional differential equation of the Keynesian model with power-law memory and gamma distribution of delay time in the form

$$(D_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \frac{1-m(t)}{v(t)}Y(t) - \frac{G_b(t)}{v(t)}, \tag{50}$$

where α is the parameter of memory fading, $a > 0$ is the shape parameter and $\lambda > 0$ is the rate parameter of the gamma distribution of the delay time.

Let us consider the case where $v(t)$ and $m(t)$ are constant quantities. Then the Keynesian model with one-parameter power-law memory and gamma-distributed lag is described by the fractional differential equation

$$(D_{T;C;0+}^{\lambda,a;\alpha}Y)(t) = \omega Y(t) + F(t), \tag{51}$$

where $\omega = (1-m)/v$ and $F(t) = -v^{-1}G_b(t)$.

The general solution of Equation (51) can be written as

$$Y(t) = Y_0(t) + Y_F(t), \tag{52}$$

where $Y_0(t)$ is the solution of Equation (51) with $F(t) = 0$, i.e., the homogeneous equation

$$(D^{\lambda,a;\alpha}_{T;C;0+}Y)(t) = \omega Y(t),\tag{53}$$

and $Y_F(t)$ is particular solution of (51) that can be represented in the form

$$Y_F(t) = \int_0^t G_\alpha[t-\tau]\,F(\tau)d\tau,\tag{54}$$

where $G_\alpha[t-\tau]$ is the generalized Green function [4], (p.281,295). Equation (54) yields the solution $Y_F(t)$ for Equation (51) with initial conditions, $Y^{(j)}(0) = 0$ for all $j = 0,\dots,(n-1)$.

Theorem 1. *The fractional differential Equation*

$$(D^{\lambda,a;\alpha}_{T;C;0+}Y)(t) = \omega Y(t) + F(t),\tag{55}$$

where $D^{\lambda,a;\alpha}_{T;C;0+}$ is the fractional derivative of order $\alpha > 0$ with gamma-distributed lag, in which $a > 0$ and $\lambda > 0$ are the shape and rate parameters of the gamma distribution respectively, has the solution

$$Y(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} S^{\alpha-j-1}_{\alpha,a}[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda|t]Y^{(j)}(0) + \frac{1}{\omega}F(t) - \frac{1}{\omega}\int_0^t S^{\alpha}_{\alpha,a}\left[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda|t-\tau\right]F(\tau)d\tau,\tag{56}$$

where $n = [\alpha] + 1$, and $S^{\gamma}_{\alpha,\delta}[\mu,\lambda|t]$ is the special function that is defined by the expression

$$S^{\gamma}_{\alpha,\delta}[\mu,\lambda|t] = -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{t^{\delta(k+1)-\alpha k-\gamma-1}}{\mu^{k+1}\Gamma(\delta(k+1)-\alpha k-\gamma)}\,F_{1,1}(\delta(k+1);\delta(k+1)-\alpha k-\gamma,-\lambda t),\tag{57}$$

where $F_{1,1}(a;b;z)$ is the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function (30).

Proof. The first step is to find a solution for the homogeneous Equation (53). Using the Laplace transform of Equation (53), we get

$$\frac{\lambda^a}{(s+\lambda)^a}\left(s^\alpha(\mathcal{L}Y)(s) - \sum_{j=0}^{n-1}s^{\alpha-j-1}Y^{(j)}(0)\right) = \omega(\mathcal{L}Y)(s).\tag{58}$$

Then we can write

$$(\mathcal{L}\,Y)(s) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1}\frac{s^{\alpha-j-1}}{s^\alpha - \mu(s+\lambda)^a}Y^{(j)}(0),\tag{59}$$

where $\mu = \omega\,\lambda^{-a}$. Using Equation 5.4.9 of [48] in the form

$$\left(\mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{s^a}{(s+b)^c}\right)\right)(s) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(c-a)}t^{c-a-1}F_{1,1}(c;c-a,-bt),\tag{60}$$

where $Re(c-a) > 0$, we get [40] the Laplace transform of the function (57) (**Theorem 1**) as

$$\mathcal{L}\left(S^{\gamma}_{\alpha,\delta}[\mu,\lambda|t]\right)(s) = \frac{s^\gamma}{s^\alpha - \mu(s+\lambda)^\delta}.\tag{61}$$

Using Equation (61) the solution of the homogenous fractional differential Equation (53) has the form

$$Y_0(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1}S^{\alpha-j-1}_{\alpha,a}[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda|t]Y^{(j)}(0),\tag{62}$$

where $S_{\alpha,a}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda\,|t]$ is defined by Equation (57).

The second step is to find a particular solution (54) of Equation (55). The Laplace transform of Equation (55) with conditions $Y^{(j)}(0)=0$ for all $j=0,\dots(n-1)$ gives the expression

$$\frac{\lambda^a}{(s+\lambda)^a}s^\alpha(\mathcal{L}Y)(s)=\omega(\mathcal{L}Y)(s)+(\mathcal{L}F)(s) \tag{63}$$

that can be rewritten in the from

$$(\mathcal{L}Y)(s)=\frac{(s+\lambda)^a}{\lambda^a\,s^\alpha-\omega(s+\lambda)^a}(\mathcal{L}F)(s). \tag{64}$$

The equality

$$\frac{(s+\lambda)^a}{\lambda^a\,s^\alpha-\omega(s+\lambda)^a}=-\frac{1}{\omega}+\frac{1}{\omega}\frac{s^\alpha}{s^\alpha-\mu(s+\lambda)^a}, \tag{65}$$

where $\mu=\omega\,\lambda^{-a}$, gives

$$(\mathcal{L}Y)(s)=-\frac{1}{\omega}(\mathcal{L}F)(s)+\frac{1}{\omega}\frac{s^\alpha}{s^\alpha-\mu(s+\lambda)^a}(\mathcal{L}F)(s). \tag{66}$$

Using (61) with $\delta=a,\gamma=\alpha$, we have

$$G_\alpha[t-\tau]=-\frac{1}{\omega}\delta(t-\tau)+\frac{1}{\omega}S_{\alpha,a}^\alpha\,[\mu,\lambda|t-\tau]. \tag{67}$$

As a result, we obtain

$$Y_F(t)=\frac{1}{\omega}F(t)-\frac{1}{\omega}\int_0^t S_{\alpha,a}^\alpha\,[\mu,\lambda|t-\tau]\,F(\tau)d\tau \tag{68}$$

that describes the particular solution of Equation (55).

Substitution of (62) and (68) into (52) gives (56).

This ends the proof. □

As a result, the solution of Equation (55) of the Keynesian model with one-parameter power-law memory and gamma-distributed lag for constant $v(t)=v$ and $m(t)=m$ is described by the expression

$$Y(t)=\sum_{j=0}^{n-1}S_{\alpha,a}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda|t]Y^{(j)}(0)-\frac{1}{1-m}G_b(t)+\frac{1}{1-m}\int_0^t S_{\alpha,a}^\alpha\,[\omega\,\lambda^{-a},\lambda|t-\tau]\,G_b(\tau)d\tau, \tag{69}$$

where $G_b(\tau)=G(\tau)+g(\tau)$ and $\omega=(1-m)/v$.

6. Asymptotic Behavior of National Income Growth with Memory and Lag

In economic theory, the important concept of the Harrod's warranted rate of growth [14] is used, which is also called the technological growth rate. The warranted growth rate describes the growth when the following two conditions are satisfied. The first condition is the constancy of the structure of the economy. This condition means that the parameters of the model do not change over time. In the Keynesian model, we should consider the parameters (t), $b(t)$, and $m(t)$ as constant quantities. The second condition is the absence of external influences. This condition means the absence of exogenous variables. In the Keynesian model, we should consider the case of the absence of the independent expenditure, i.e., $G_b(t)=0$. Mathematically the warranted growth rate can be obtained from the asymptotic expression of the solution of the homogeneous differential equation of the macroeconomic model. In the standard Keynesian model, the solution of Equation (9) with $G_b(t)=0$ has the form $Y(t)=Y(0)\exp(\omega\,t)$. Therefore, the warranted growth rate of this model is described by the value $\omega=(1-m)/v$, when $G_b(t)=0$.

The Keynesian model with memory was suggested by authors [30,31] in 2016 (see also [32–34]). For this growth model, the fractional differential equation, its solution, and properties have been described. We proved [32,33] that the warranted growth rate with memory is equal to the value $\omega_{\text{eff}}(\alpha) = \omega^{1/\alpha}$, where $\alpha > 0$ is a parameter of power-law memory fading and ω is the rate of growth without memory ($\alpha = 1$). The warranted growth rates of models with memory do not coincide with the growth rates of the standard Keynesian model. The memory effects can significantly change the growth rates of the economy [32–34] and lead to new types of behavior for the same parameters of the economic model. The principles of changing growth rates by memory have been proposed in [32,33]. The memory effects can both increase and decrease the warranted growth rates in comparison with the standard Keynesian model. For the memory fading with $\alpha < 1$, we get a slowdown in the growth and decline of the economy. We can state that memory with $\alpha < 1$ leads to inhibition of economic growth or decline, i.e., we have stagnation of the economy if $\alpha < 1$. For the memory fading with $\alpha > 1$ we have an improvement in the economy. In this case, the memory effect leads either to the slowdown in the decline rate or to the replacement of the decline with growth, or to the increase in the growth rate.

To consider the warranted growth rate of national income for the Keynesian model with memory and distributed lag, we should obtain an asymptotic behavior of the solution (62) of homogenous model Equation (53). This solution is expressed by the function $S_{\alpha,\delta}^{\gamma}[\mu, \lambda|t]$ that is represented as an infinite sum (57) of the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function $F_{1,1}(a;c;z)$. We can use the asymptotic expression of the function $F_{1,1}(a;c;z)$ at infinity $z \to -\infty$ that is given in [4] (p. 29), in the form

$$F_{1,1}(a;c;z) = \frac{\Gamma(c)}{\Gamma(c-a)} e^{-i\pi a} z^{-a} \left(1 + O\left(\frac{1}{z}\right)\right), \tag{70}$$

where $z = -\lambda t < 0$. Therefore the asymptotic expression for $t \to \infty$ is

$$F_{1,1}(\delta(k+1); \delta(k+1) - \alpha k - \gamma, -\lambda t) = \frac{\Gamma(\delta(k+1) - \alpha k - \gamma)}{\Gamma(-\alpha k - \gamma)} (\lambda t)^{-\delta(k+1)} e^{-i\pi\delta(k+1)} \left(1 + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)\right). \tag{71}$$

Equation (71) leads to the asymptotic expression at infinity ($t \to \infty$) of the function (57) in the form

$$S_{\alpha,\delta}^{\gamma}[\mu, \lambda|t] = -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^{-\delta(k+1)} t^{-\alpha k - \gamma - 1}}{\mu^{k+1} \Gamma(-\alpha k - \gamma)} e^{-i\pi\delta(k+1)} \left(1 + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)\right) = -\frac{\lambda^{-\delta} t^{-\gamma-1}}{\mu^1 \Gamma(-\gamma)} e^{-i\pi\delta} \left(1 + O(t^{-\alpha-\gamma-1})\right), \tag{72}$$

where $\alpha k + \gamma \neq 0, 1, 2, \dots$ for all integer k.

Solution (62) is expressed by the function $S_{\alpha,a}^{\alpha-j-1}[\mu, \lambda|t]$, where $\mu = \omega \lambda^{-a}$. Then using Equation (72), we get the asymptotic expression

$$S_{\alpha,a}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega \lambda^{-a}, \lambda|t] = -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^{-a} t^{-\alpha(k+1)+j}}{\omega^{k+1} \Gamma(-\alpha(k+1)+j+1)} e^{-i\pi a} \left(1 + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)\right). \tag{73}$$

For the gamma distribution with the integer shape parameter ($a = m \in \mathbb{N}$), which is called the Erlang distribution, expression (73) gives

$$S_{\alpha,m}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega \lambda^{-a}, \lambda|t] = -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m \lambda^{-m} t^{-\alpha(k+1)+j}}{\omega^{k+1} \Gamma(-\alpha(k+1)+j+1)} \left(1 + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)\right), \tag{74}$$

where $e^{-i\pi m} = (-1)^m$ is used.

Using Equation 5.1.18 of [43], (p. 99), in the form $F_{1,1}(a;c;z) = \Gamma(c) E_{1,c}^{a}(z)$, we can get asymptotic expressions (72) and (74) by using asymptotic expressions of the three parameter Mittag–Leffler functions $E_{1,\delta(k+1)-\alpha k-\gamma}^{\delta(k+1)}(-\lambda t)$ (for example, see [49]). Using Equation (74) we can see that the series

(74) can be represented through the two-parameter Mittag–Leffler function with the negative first parameter [50] as

$$-\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m \lambda^{-m} t^{-\alpha(k+1)+j}}{\omega^{k+1}\, \Gamma(-\alpha(k+1)+j+1)} = \frac{(-1)^m \lambda^{-m} t^j}{\Gamma(j+1)} - (-1)^m \lambda^{-m} t^j E_{-\alpha,j+1}\left(t^{-\alpha}/\omega\right). \tag{75}$$

This allows us to state that the function $S_{\alpha,m}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega\, \lambda^{-a}, \lambda|t]$ in the long time limit leads to a series, which can be interpreted as a two-parameter Mittag–Leffler function, which is analogous to the property of the three-parameter Mittag–Leffler function described in [51].

Equation (74) allows us to give the asymptotic expression

$$S_{\alpha,a}^{\alpha-j-1}[\omega\, \lambda^{-a}, \lambda|t] = -\frac{(-1)^m \lambda^{-m} t^{-\alpha+j}}{\omega^1\, \Gamma(-\alpha+j+1)}\left(1 + O\!\left(t^{-2\alpha+j}\right)\right). \tag{76}$$

As a result, the asymptotic behavior of solution (69) with $G_b(t) = 0$ can be described by the Equation

$$Y(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^{m+1} \lambda^{-m} t^{-\alpha+j}}{\omega\, \Gamma(-\alpha+j+1)}\, Y^{(j)}(0)\left(1 + O\!\left(t^{-2\alpha+j}\right)\right) \tag{77}$$

that characterizes warranted growth of national income, which is represented by solution (69) with $G_b(\tau) = 0$ and $a = m \in \mathbb{N}$. Equation (77) allows us to state that the warranted growth has the power-law form with the power $-\alpha + j$, where $j \in \{0, \ldots, n-1\}$ is the smallest value at which $Y^{(j)}(0) \neq 0$. As a result, the warranted growth of the national income with memory and distributed lag has the power-law type instead of the exponential type of growth with memory without time delay [32,33], where warranted growth rate is $\omega_{\mathrm{eff}}(\alpha) = \omega^{1/\alpha}$. Therefore we can state that the distributed lag (time delay) suppresses the effects of fading memory.

7. Conclusions

The standard Keynesian model [8–10,14] describes the dynamics of national income in the absence of long memory and distributed time delay. The Keynesian model with power-law memory has been suggested by authors [30,31]. The effects of continuously distributed lag are not considered in [30,31]. In this paper, we generalize the Keynesian model with memory by taking into account gamma distribution of delay time. To take into account the distributed lag, we use the operators that are compositions of the translation operator with distributed delay time and the fractional derivatives or integrals. These operators allow us to take into account the memory and lag in the economic accelerator. These operators are the Abel-type integro-differential operators with the confluent hypergeometric Kummer function in the kernel. The solution of the suggested fractional differential Equation, which describes the fractional dynamics of national income, has been suggested. The asymptotic behavior of economic processes with memory and distributed lag demonstrates power-law growth. In the absence of delays, the processes with fading memory demonstrate exponential growth. The warranted growth rate with memory [30–34] is equal to the value $\omega_{\mathrm{eff}}(\alpha) = \omega^{1/\alpha}$, where $\alpha > 0$ is a memory fading parameter. Therefore effects of long memory can significantly accelerate the growth rate of the economy by several orders of magnitude [30–33]. Fading memory can lead to an increase in the growth rate in processes without lag [30–34]. The appearance of distributed lag does not accelerate growth due to the memory effect (see also [52,53]). Moreover, we can state that the lag can suppress the effect of fading memory. The distributed lag leads to slower growth. We assume that the suggested approach and model can be used for economic growth modeling by analogy with the computer simulation of the economy in [54–58]. It should also be noted that fractional differential Equations have been applied to describe power-law memory in continuous-time finance [59–72]. This fact allows us to assume that the proposed approach can be used to take into account the continuously distributed time delay and memory in financial processes with the waiting-time distribution [60,62].

References

1. Samko, S.G.; Kilbas, A.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Fractional Integrals and Derivatives Theory and Applications*; Gordon and Breach: New York, NY, USA, 1993; 1006p, ISBN 9782881248641.

2. Kiryakova, V. *Generalized Fractional Calculus and Applications*; Longman and J. Wiley: New York, NY, USA, 1994; 360p, ISBN 9780582219779.

3. Podlubny, I. *Fractional Differential Equations*; Academic Press: San Diego, CA, USA, 1998; 340p.

4. Kilbas, A.A.; Srivastava, H.M.; Trujillo, J.J. *Theory and Applications of Fractional Differential Equations*; Elsevier: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2006; 540p, ISBN 9780444518323.

5. Diethelm, K. *The Analysis of Fractional Differential Equations: An Application-Oriented Exposition Using Differential Operators of Caputo Type*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2010; 247p.

6. Mainardi, F. (Ed.) *Fractional Calculus Theory and Applications*; MDPI: Basel, Switzerland, 2018; 208p, ISBN 978-3-03897-207-5. Available online: https://www.mdpi.com/books/pdfview/book/755 (accessed on 24 January 2019).

7. Tenreiro Machado, J.A. (Ed.) *Handbook of Fractional Calculus with Applications*; De Gruyter: Berlin, Germany, 2019; Volumes 1–8.

8. Keynes, J.M. *The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money*; Macmillan: London, UK, 1936.

9. Keynes, J.M. *The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money: With the Economic Consequences of the Peace*; Series: Classics of World Literature; Wordsworth Editions: Hertfordshire, UK, 2017; 576p, ISBN 978-1840227475.

10. Keynes, J.M. *The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money: With the Economic Consequences of the Peace*; Palgrave Macmillan: London, UK, 2018; 438p.

11. Kalecki, M. A macrodynamic theory of business cycles. *Econometrica* **1935**, *3*, 327–344. [CrossRef]

12. Phillips, A.W. Stabilisation policy in a closed economy. *Econ. J.* **1954**, *64*, 290–323. [CrossRef]

13. Phillips, A.W. *A. W. H. Phillips Collected Works in Contemporary Perspective*; Leeson, R., Ed.; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 2000; 515p, ISBN 9780521571357.

14. Allen, R.G.D. *Mathematical Economics*, 2nd ed.; Macmillan: London, UK, 1959; 812p.

15. Granger, C.W.J. *The Typical Spectral Shape of an Economic Variable*; Technical Report No. 11. January 30, 1964; Department of Statistics, Stanford University: Stanford, CA, USA, 1964; 21p, Available online: https://statistics.stanford.edu/research/typical-spectral-shape-economic-variable (accessed on 24 January 2019).

16. Granger, C.W.J. The typical spectral shape of an economic variable. *Econometrica* **1966**, *34*, 150–161. [CrossRef]

17. Granger, C.W.J. *Essays in Econometrics: Collected Papers of Clive W. J. Granger. Volume. I. Spectral Analysis, Seasonality, Nonlinearity, Methodology, and Forecasting*; Ghysels, E., Swanson, N.R., Watson, M.W., Eds.; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK; New York, NY, USA, 2001; 523p.

18. Granger, C.W.J. *Essays in Econometrics Collected Papers of Clive W.J. Granger. Volume II: Causality, Integration and Cointegration, and Long Memory*; Ghysels, E., Swanson, N.R., Watson, M.W., Eds.; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 2001; 398p.

19. Bearn, J. *Statistics for Long-Memory Processes*; Capman and Hall: New York, NY, USA, 1994; 315p, ISBN 0-412-04901-5.

20. Palma, W. *Long-Memory Time Series: Theory and Methods*; Wiley-InterScience: Hoboken, NJ, USA, 2007; 304p, ISBN 978-0-470-11402-5.

21. Beran, J.; Feng, Y.; Ghosh, S.; Kulik, R. *Long-Memory Processes: Probabilistic Properties and Statistical Methods*; Springer: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany; New York, NY, USA, 2013; 884p.

22. Robinson, P.M. (Ed.) *Time Series with Long Memory*; Series: Advanced Texts in Econometrics; Oxford University Press: Oxford, UK, 2003; 392p, ISBN 978-0199257300.

23. Teyssiere, G.; Kirman, A.P. (Eds.) *Long Memory in Economics*; Springer: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 2007; 390p.

24. Baillie, R. Long memory processes and fractional integration in econometrics. *J. Econom.* **1996**, *73*, 5–59. [CrossRef]

25. Graves, T.; Gramacy, R.; Watkins, N.; Franzke, C. A Brief History of Long Memory: Hurst, Mandelbrot and the Road to ARFIMA, 1951–1980. *Entropy* **2017**, *19*, 437. [CrossRef]

26. Granger, C.W.J.; Joyeux, R. An introduction to long memory time series models and fractional differencing. *J. Time Ser. Anal.* **1980**, *1*, 15–39. [CrossRef]

27. Hosking, J.R.M. Fractional differencing. *Biometrika* **1981**, *68*, 165–176. [CrossRef]

28. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Long and short memory in economics: Fractional-order difference and differentiation. *IRA Int. J. Manag. Soc. Sci.* **2016**, *5*, 327–334. [CrossRef]

29. Tarasova, V.V.; Tarasov, V.E. Comments on the article «Long and short memory in economics: Fractional-order difference and differentiation». *Probl. Modern Sci. Educ.* **2017**, *113*, 26–28. [CrossRef]

30. Tarasova, V.V.; Tarasov, V.E. Keynesian model of economic growth with memory. *Econ. Manag. Probl. Solut.* **2016**, *58*, 21–29. (In Russian)

31. Tarasova, V.V.; Tarasov, V.E. Memory effects in hereditary Keynes model. *Probl. Modern Sci. Educ.* **2016**, *80*, 56–61. (In Russian) [CrossRef]

32. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Macroeconomic models with long dynamic memory: Fractional calculus approach. *Appl. Math. Comput.* **2018**, *338*, 466–486. [CrossRef]

33. Tarasov, V.E. Economic models with power-law memory. In *Handbook of Fractional Calculus with Applications*; Volume 8: Applications in Engineering, Life and Social Sciences, Part B; Chapter 1; De Gruyter: Berlin, Germany, 2019; ISBN 978-3-11-057092-2.

34. Tarasov, V.E. Self-organization with memory. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2019**, *72*, 240–271. [CrossRef]

35. Volgina, O.A.; Golodnaya, N.Y.; Odiako, N.N.; Shuman, G.I. *Mathematical Modeling of Economic Processes and Systems*, 3rd ed.; Kronus: Moscow, Russia, 2014; 200p, ISBN 978-5-406-03252-7.

36. Shone, R. *An Introduction to Economic Dynamics*, 2nd ed.; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 2012; 224p, ISBN 9781139165020.

37. Tarasova, V.V.; Tarasov, V.E. Concept of dynamic memory in economics. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2018**, *55*, 127–145. [CrossRef]

38. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Criterion of existence of power-law memory for economic processes. *Entropy* **2018**, *20*, 414. [CrossRef]

39. Tarasova, V.V.; Tarasov, V.E. Accelerator and multiplier for macroeconomic processes with memory. *IRA Int. J. Manag. Soc. Sci.* **2017**, *9*, 86–125. [CrossRef]

40. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, S.S. Fractional and integer derivatives with continuously distributed lag. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* **2019**, *70*, 125–169. [CrossRef]

41. Prudnikov, A.P.; Brychkov, Y.A.; Marichev, O.I. *Integrals and Series. Vol. 1. Elementary Functions*, 5th ed.; Taylor & Francis: London, UK, 2002; 798p, ISBN 2-88124-089-5.

42. Luke, Y.L. *The Special Functions and Their Approximations*; Academic Press: San Diego, CA, USA; New York, NY, USA, 1969; Volume 1, 348p, ISBN 0-12-459901-X.

43. Gorenflo, R.; Kilbas, A.A.; Mainardi, F.; Rogosin, S.V. *Mittag-Leffler Functions, Related Topics and Applications*; Springer: Berlin, Germany, 2014; 443p.

44. Gorenflo, R.; Vessella, S. *Abel Integral Equations: Analysis and Applications*; Springer: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1991; 215p, ISBN 3-540-53668-X.

45. Prabhakar, T.R. Some integral equations with Kummer's functions in the kernels. *Can. Math. Bull.* **1971**, *4*, 391–404. [CrossRef]

46. Caputo, M.; Fabrizio, M. A new definition of fractional derivative without singular kernel. *Prog. Fract. Differ. Appl.* **2015**, *1*, 73–85. [CrossRef]

47. Caputo, M.; Fabrizio, M. Applications of new time and spatial fractional derivatives with exponential kernels. *Prog. Fract. Differ. Appl.* **2016**, *2*, 1–11. [CrossRef]

48. Bateman, H. *Tables of Integral Transforms*; McGraw-Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1954; Volume I, 391p, ISBN 07-019549-8.

49. Mainardi, F.; Garrappa, R. On complete monotonicity of the Prabhakar function and non-Debye relaxation in dielectrics. *J. Comput. Phys.* **2015**, *293*, 70–80. [CrossRef]

50. Hanneken, J.W.; Narahari Achar, B.N.; Puzio, R.; Vaught, D.M. Properties of the Mittag–Leffler function for negative alpha. *Phys. Scr.* **2009**, *2009*, 014037. [CrossRef]

51. Sandev, T.; Metzler, R.; Tomovski, Z. Correlation functions for the fractional generalized Langevin equation in the presence of internal and external noise. *J. Math. Phys.* **2014**, *55*, 023301. [CrossRef]

52. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Phillips model with exponentially distributed lag and power-law memory. *Comput. Appl. Math.* **2019**, *38*, 13. [CrossRef]

53. Tarasov, V.E.; Tarasova, V.V. Harrod-Domar growth model with memory and distributed lag. *Axioms* **2019**, *8*, 9. [CrossRef]

54. Tejado, I.; Valerio, D.; Perez, E.; Valerio, N. Fractional calculus in economic growth modelling: The Spanish and Portuguese cases. *Int. J. Dyn. Control* **2015**, *5*, 208–222. [CrossRef]

55. Tejado, I.; Valerio, D.; Perez, E.; Valerio, N. Fractional calculus in economic growth modelling: The economies of France and Italy. In Proceedings of the International Conference on Fractional Differentiation and its Applications, Novi Sad, Serbia, 18–20 July 2016; Spasic, D.T., Grahovac, N., Zigic, M., Rapaic, M., Atanackovic, T.M., Eds.; pp. 113–123.

56. Tejado, I.; Perez, E.; Valerio, D. Fractional calculus in economic growth modelling of the group of seven. *SSRN Electron. J.* **2018**. [CrossRef]

57. Luo, D.; Wang, J.R.; Feckan, M. Applying fractional calculus to analyze economic growth modelling. *J. Appl. Math. Stat. Inform.* **2018**, *14*, 25–36. [CrossRef]

58. Tejado, I.; Perez, E.; Valerio, D. Economic growth in the European Union modelled with fractional derivatives: First results. *Bull. Pol. Acad. Sci. Tech. Sci.* **2018**, *66*, 455–465. [CrossRef]

59. Scalas, E.; Gorenflo, R.; Mainardi, F. Fractional calculus and continuous-time finance. *Physica A* **2000**, *284*, 376–384. [CrossRef]

60. Mainardi, F.; Raberto, M.; Gorenflo, R.; Scalas, E. Fractional calculus and continuous-time finance II: The waiting-time distribution. *Physica A* **2000**, *287*, 468–481. [CrossRef]

61. Laskin, N. Fractional market dynamics. *Physica A* **2000**, *287*, 482–492. [CrossRef]

62. Raberto, M.; Scalas, E.; Mainardi, F. Waiting-times and returns in high-frequency financial data: An empirical study. *Physica A* **2002**, *314*, 749–755. [CrossRef]

63. West, B.J.; Picozzi, S. Fractional Langevin model of memory in financial time series. *Phys. Rev. E* **2002**, *65*, 037106. [CrossRef] [PubMed]

64. Picozzi, S.; West, B.J. Fractional Langevin model of memory in financial markets. *Phys. Rev. E* **2002**, *66*, 046118. [CrossRef]

65. Scalas, E. The application of continuous-time random walks in finance and economics. *Physica A* **2006**, *362*, 225–239. [CrossRef]

66. Meerschaert, M.M.; Scalas, E. Coupled continuous time random walks in finance. *Physica A* **2006**, *370*, 114–118. [CrossRef]

67. Cartea, A.; Del-Castillo-Negrete, D. Fractional diffusion models of option prices in markets with jumps. *Physica A* **2007**, *374*, 749–763. [CrossRef]

68. Mendes, R.V. A fractional calculus interpretation of the fractional volatility model. *Nonlinear Dyn.* **2009**, *55*, 395–399. [CrossRef]

69. Blackledge, J. Application of the fractional diffusion equation for predicting market behavior. *Int. J. Appl. Math.* **2010**, *40*, 130–158.

70. Tenreiro Machado, J.; Duarte, F.B.; Duarte, G.M. Fractional dynamics in financial indices. *Int. J. Bifurc. Chaos* **2012**, *22*, 1250249. [CrossRef]

71. Kerss, A.; Leonenko, N.; Sikorskii, A. Fractional Skellam processes with applications to finance. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2014**, *17*, 532–551. [CrossRef]

72. Korbel, J.; Luchko, Yu. Modeling of financial processes with a space-time fractional diffusion equation of varying order. *Fract. Calc. Appl. Anal.* **2016**, *19*, 1414–1433. [CrossRef]

Discrete Two-Dimensional Fourier Transform in Polar Coordinates Part I: Theory and Operational Rules

Natalie Baddour

Department of Mechanical Engineering, University of Ottawa, 161 Louis Pasteur, Ottawa, ON K1N 6N5, Canada;
nbaddour@uottawa.ca; Tel.: +1-(613)5625800 (ext. 2324)

Abstract: The theory of the continuous two-dimensional (2D) Fourier transform in polar coordinates has been recently developed but no discrete counterpart exists to date. In this paper, we propose and evaluate the theory of the 2D discrete Fourier transform (DFT) in polar coordinates. This discrete theory is shown to arise from discretization schemes that have been previously employed with the 1D DFT and the discrete Hankel transform (DHT). The proposed transform possesses orthogonality properties, which leads to invertibility of the transform. In the first part of this two-part paper, the theory of the actual manipulated quantities is shown, including the standard set of shift, modulation, multiplication, and convolution rules. Parseval and modified Parseval relationships are shown, depending on which choice of kernel is used. Similar to its continuous counterpart, the 2D DFT in polar coordinates is shown to consist of a 1D DFT, DHT and 1D inverse DFT.

Keywords: Fourier Theory; DFT in polar coordinates; polar coordinates; multidimensional DFT; discrete Hankel Transform; discrete Fourier Transform; Orthogonality

1. Introduction

The Fourier transform (FT) in continuous and discrete forms has seen much application in various disciplines [1]. It easily expands to multiple dimensions, with all the same rules of the one-dimensional (1D) case carrying into the multiple dimensions. Recent work has developed the complete toolkit for working with the continuous multidimensional Fourier transform in two-dimensional (2D) polar and three-dimensional (3D) spherical polar coordinates [2–4]. However, to date no discrete version of the 2D Fourier transform exists in polar coordinates. Hence, the aim of this paper is to develop the discrete version of the 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates.

For the discrete version of the transform, the values of the transform will be available only at discrete points. To quote Bracewell [5], "we often think of this as though an underlying function of a continuous variable really exists and we are approximating it. From an operational viewpoint, however, it is irrelevant to talk about the existence of values other than those given and those computed (the input and output). Therefore, it is desirable to have a mathematical theory of the actual quantities manipulated". This paper thus aims to develop the mathematical theory of the discrete two-dimensional Fourier transform in polar coordinates. Standard 'operational rules' associated with any Fourier transform (shift, modulation, multiplication, and convolution) will be developed. Parseval and modified Parseval relationships will also be shown, depending on the choice of kernel used.

To the best of the author's knowledge, there is no discrete version of the 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates. It was shown in [2,4] that the 2D continuous Fourier transform in polar coordinates is actually a combination of a single dimensional Fourier transform, a Hankel transform, followed by an inverse Fourier transform. Of course, the discrete version of the 1D standard Fourier transform is very well known and the literature on this subject alone is vast. Recently, a discrete version of the Hankel transform has been proposed [6,7], yet this discrete transform is still in one dimension. We will show further on that the 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates requires this transform.

Other researchers have defined the idea of a polar Fourier transform (polar FT), in which the original function in the spatial domain is in Cartesian coordinates but its FT is computed in polar coordinates, meaning discrete polar Fourier data and Cartesian spatial data [8–10]. Fast Fourier transforms (FFT) have also been developed for non-equispaced data, referred to as a unequally spaced FFT (USFFT) or non-uniform FFT (NUFFT) [11–15]. Using this approach, frequencies in a polar frequency domain can be considered to be unequally spaced and hence the problem of evaluating a polar FT can be considered as a special case of the USFFT. Averbuch et al. [8] compared the accuracy results of their proposed approach which used a pseudo-polar grid to those obtained by an USFFT approach and demonstrated that their approach show marked advantage over the USFFT. Fenn et al. [10] examined computing the FT on a polar, modified and pseudo-polar grid using the NUFFT, for both forward and backwards transforms. They demonstrated that the NUFFT was effective at this computation. Although the above demonstrate that the computation of a discrete 2D FT on a polar grid has previously been considered in the literature, there is, to date, no discrete 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates that exists as a transform in its own right, with its own set of rules of the actual manipulated quantities.

The outline of the paper is as follows. Section 2 presents some of the necessary background material. Section 3 introduces an intuitive 'motivation' for the definition of the 2D Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) in polar coordinates that will be introduced by considering space and band-limited functions. This leads to an intuitive discretization scheme and an intuitive kernel for the proposed 2D DFT, which is introduced in Section 4. Section 5 introduces the proposed transform while Section 6 derives the transform properties including modulation, shift, multiplication and convolution rules. Section 7 discusses Parseval relations while Section 8 demonstrates that the proposed transform can indeed be decomposed a sequence of DFT, Discrete Hankel Transform (DHT) and inverse DFT (IDFT), in keeping with the approach of the continuous version of the transform. Finally, Section 8 concludes the paper.

2. Background: Continuous 2D Fourier Transforms in Polar Coordinates

The 2D Fourier transform of a function $f(\vec{r}) = f(x, y)$ expressed in 2D Cartesian coordinates is defined as [4]:

$$F(\vec{\omega}) = F(\omega_x, \omega_y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x, y) \, e^{-i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}} dx \, dy \tag{1}$$

The inverse Fourier transform is given by:

$$f(\vec{r}) = f(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega_x, \omega_y) e^{i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}} d\omega_x \, d\omega_y \tag{2}$$

where the shorthand notation of $\vec{\omega} = (\omega_x, \omega_y)$, $\vec{r} = (x, y)$ has been used. For functions with cylindrical or circular symmetry, it is often more convenient to express both the original function $f(\vec{r})$ and its 2D Fourier transform $F(\vec{\omega})$ in polar coordinates. If so, polar coordinates can be introduced as $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$ and similarly in the spatial frequency domain as $\omega_x = \rho\cos\psi$ and $\omega_y = \rho\sin\psi$, otherwise written as, $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, $\theta = \arctan(y/x)$ and $\rho^2 = \omega_x^2 + \omega_y^2$, $\psi = \arctan(\omega_y/\omega_x)$.

Given a function in polar coordinates $f(r, \theta)$, where θ is the angular variable and r is the radial variable, the function can be expanded into a Fourier series as:

$$f(\vec{r}) = f(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f_n(r) \, e^{in\theta} \tag{3}$$

where the Fourier coefficients are given by:

$$f_n(r) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int\limits_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(r,\theta)\, e^{-in\theta} d\theta \tag{4}$$

Similarly, the 2D Fourier transform of $f(r,\theta)$ is given by $F(\rho,\psi)$. The function $F(\rho,\psi)$, where ψ is the angular frequency variable and ρ is the radial frequency variable, can also be expanded into a Fourier series as:

$$F(\vec{\omega}) = F(\rho,\psi) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F_n(\rho)\, e^{in\psi} \tag{5}$$

where:

$$F_n(\rho) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int\limits_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(\rho,\psi) e^{-in\psi} d\psi \tag{6}$$

We note that $F_n(\rho)$ is NOT the Fourier transform of $f_n(r)$. The development details can be found in [4], where it is demonstrated that the relationship is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} F_n(\rho) &= 2\pi\, i^{-n} \int\limits_{0}^{\infty} f_n(r) J_n(\rho r)\, r dr \\ &= 2\pi\, i^{-n} \mathbb{H}_n\{f_n(r)\}, \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

where $\mathbb{H}_n\{\cdot\}$ denotes an nth order Hankel transform [3], see Appendix A.1 [3]. The inverse relationship is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} f_n(r) &= \frac{i^n}{2\pi} \int\limits_{0}^{\infty} F_n(\rho) J_n(\rho r)\, \rho d\rho \\ &= \frac{i^n}{2\pi} \mathbb{H}_n\{F_n(\rho)\}. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Thus, the nth term in the Fourier series of the original function will Hankel transform into the nth term of the Fourier series of the Fourier transform function via an nth order Hankel transform for the nth term. Therefore, the steps for finding the 2D Fourier transform $F(\rho,\psi)$ of a function $f(r,\theta)$ are (i) finding its Fourier series coefficients in the angular variable $f_n(r)$, Equation (4), (ii) finding the Fourier series coefficient of the Fourier transform, $F_n(\rho)$ via $F_n(\rho) = 2\pi\, i^{-n}\mathbb{H}_n\{f_n(r)\}$, then (iii) taking the inverse Fourier series transform (summing the series) with respect to the frequency angular variable, Equation (5).

The discrete equivalent to the relationships given by Equations (3) to (8) have not been developed and it is the goal of this paper to develop the discrete counterparts of these equations.

3. Motivation for the Discrete 2D Fourier Transform in Polar Coordinates

3.1. Space-Limited Functions

To motivate the discrete version of a 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates, we follow the same path used to derive the classical discrete Fourier transform (DFT) and also the recently-proposed discrete Hankel transform (DHT) [6]. This approach starts with a space (or time for the traditional FT) limited function in one domain and then makes the assumption that the transform of the function is also limited in the corresponding frequency domain. While strictly speaking, functions cannot be limited in both space and spatial frequency domains, in practice, they can be made 'effectively' limited in the domain where they are not exactly limited by suitable truncation of an appropriate series. This is how the DFT and DHT were both motivated. The discrete transforms derived in this manner then have properties that exist in their own right, independent of their ability to approximate their continuous transform counterpart.

The same path is followed here. A function $f(r, \theta)$ in polar coordinates, where θ is the angular variable and r is the radial variable, is expanded into a Fourier series given by Equation (3) where $f_n(r)$ is given by Equation (4). It is now supposed that the function $f(r, \theta)$ is space-limited, meaning that $f(r, \theta)$ and, by virtue of Equation (4), all the Fourier coefficients $f_n(r)$ are zero for $r \geq R$. Then, it follows that each of the Fourier coefficients $f_n(r)$ can be written in terms of a Fourier Bessel series (see [6] and Appendix A.2) as:

$$f_n(r) = \begin{cases} \sum\limits_{k=1}^{\infty} C_{nk}^f J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}r}{R}\right) & r < R \\ 0 & r \geq R \end{cases} \tag{9}$$

where the order, n, of the Bessel function in (9) matches the order f_n of the Fourier coefficient, C_{nk}^f denotes the kth coefficient of the Fourier–Bessel expansion of $f_n(r)$ and denotes the kth zero of the nth Bessel function. The C_{nk}^f can be found from [16]:

$$C_{nk}^f = \frac{2}{R^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} \int_0^R f_n(r) J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}r}{R}\right) r \, dr \tag{10}$$

Equation (7) gives the relationship between the Fourier coefficients of the function itself and its 2D Fourier transform. Using Equation (7) and making use of the space limited nature of $f_n(r)$, Equation (10) can be written as:

$$C_{nk}^f = \frac{2}{R^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} \int_0^{\infty} f_n(r) J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}r}{R}\right) r \, dr = \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} F_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}}{R}\right) \tag{11}$$

Therefore, for $r < R$, Equation (9) becomes:

$$f_n(r) = \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) \frac{1}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}r}{R}\right) \tag{12}$$

Equation (12) with its infinite summation is *exact*. Now, evaluating Equation (12) at $r = r_{nk} = \frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}$ for *any* N_1 and where $k < N_1$ gives:

$$f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right) = \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) \frac{1}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right) \qquad k < N_1 \tag{13}$$

For $k < N_1$, then $r_{nk} = \frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}} < R$, and Equation (13), summing over infinite m, is still exact. For $k \geq N_1$, then $r_{nk} = \frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}} \geq R$ and by the assumption of the space-limited nature of the function, $f(r_{nk}) = 0$ for $k \geq N_1$.

We now assume that the function is also effectively band limited, in addition to being space-limited. Now, a function cannot be finite in both space and spatial frequency (equivalently if using a standard Fourier transform it cannot be finite in both time and frequency). However, if a function is *effectively* band-limited, then there exists an integer N_1 for which $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) \approx 0$ for $m > N_1$. In other words, an interval can be found beyond which the Fourier transform coefficients $F_n(\rho)$ become very small. Since the convergence of the Fourier–Bessel series in (13) is known, then $\lim\limits_{m \to \infty} F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) = 0$. In other words, for any arbitrarily small ρ, there exists an integer N_1 for which $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) < \rho$ for $m > N_1$.

Hence, using notion of an effective band-limit as stated in the preceding paragraph, the series in Equation (13) can be terminated at a suitably chosen N_1, thus giving an effective band limit. Termination

of the series at $m = N_1$ is equivalent to assuming that $F_n(\rho) \approx 0$ for $\rho > W_\rho = \frac{j_{nN_1}}{R}$. It is noted that at $m = N_1$, the last term in Equation (13) is $J_n\left(\frac{j_{nN_1} j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right) = J_n(j_{nk}) = 0$, so that termination of the series at N_1 implies that Equation (13) becomes

$$f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right) = \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{1}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm} j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right) F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) \quad k = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{14}$$

Equation (14) is the discrete equivalent of Equation (8) in that it demonstrates that the relationship between discrete samples of $f_n(r)$ and $F_n(r)$ is given by a discrete Hankel transform type of relationship, whereas the continuous relationship involved a continuous Hankel transform. The termination of the series at N_1 is equivalent to assuming an "effective" band-limit on the function. In other words, it states that for $m > N_1$, the values of $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right)$, which from Equation (11) are proportional to the Fourier–Bessel coefficients, are negligibly small. Of course, this is never exactly true, however, since the Fourier–Bessel series converges, it is always possible to choose N_1 so that the approximation introduced by truncating the series at N_1 is good [16].

The truncation of the series at N_1 also permits Equation (14) to be easily inverted. Multiplying both sides of (14) by $\frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{np}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}$ and summing over k gives:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right) \frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{np}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} = \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2} \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm} j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right) J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{np}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm}) J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}}_{=\delta_{mp}} F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) \tag{15}$$

where we have used the discrete orthogonality of the Bessel functions as given in Appendix A.4. Hence,

$$F_n\left(\frac{j_{np}}{R}\right) = i^{-n} \pi R^2 \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right) \frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{np}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} \tag{16}$$

Equations (14) and (16) offer the basic structure on which to base the discrete transform formulation. Equation (16) is the basic structure to define the forward transform and Equation (14) offers the basic structure to define the inverse transform.

To proceed further, we need ways to compute $f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right)$ and $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right)$. Here, the theory of discrete Fourier transforms can be used. For $n \in [-M, M]$ where $N_2 = 2M + 1$, it is shown in [17] that the Fourier coefficients $f_n(r)$ and $F_n(\rho)$ can be well approximated with expressions given by (see Appendix A.5):

$$F_n(\rho) \approx \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\rho, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}$$
$$f_n(r) \approx \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(r, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}} \tag{17}$$

Hence, we will use Equation (17) to write:

$$F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right) = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{pm}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}$$
$$f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right) = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}} \tag{18}$$

Equation (18) is a key assumption of the development. Note that in both cases, the function is sampled in the summation over p at the radial variable $\left(\frac{j_{pk,m}}{R}\right)$, that is, it is included in the summation index. However, the function on the left hand side of Equation (18) is sampled at $\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right)$ We show in Appendix A.6 that this assumption is valid. This assumption is what also permits the invertibility of the discrete transforms, since without this assumption it would not be possible to propose an invertible, orthogonal discrete transform. Equation (18) will be used to derive the forward and inverse discrete transforms.

3.1.1. Forward Transform

For the forward transform, we can start with Equation (16), and use the key relationships given by Equation (18). Under these conditions, Equation (16) becomes:

$$\underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{l=-M}^{M}F\left(\frac{j_{lm}}{R},\frac{2\pi l}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n l}{N_2}}}_{F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right)} = i^{-n}\pi R^2 \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}\underbrace{\left\{\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}},\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}\right\}}_{f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right)} \quad (19)$$

Equation (19) is the discrete equivalent of Equation (7). From Equation (19), multiply both sides by $e^{+i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}}$ and sum from $n=-M..M$ gives:

$$\sum_{n=-M}^{M}\sum_{l=-M}^{M}F\left(\frac{j_{lm}}{R},\frac{2\pi l}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n l}{N_2}}e^{+i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}} = \sum_{n=-M}^{M}i^{-n}\pi R^2\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}},\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}e^{+i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}} \quad (20)$$

Interchanging the order of summation on the left hand side of (20) and using the orthogonality relationship of the complex exponential (Appendix A.3) gives:

$$F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R},\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) = \frac{2\pi R^2}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}},\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right)\frac{2i^{-n}J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}e^{+i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}} \quad (21)$$

3.1.2. Inverse Transform

For the inverse transform, we start with the structure of Equation (14) and then use the key approximations given in Equation (18) to obtain:

$$\underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}},\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}}_{f_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}R}{j_{nN_1}}\right)} = \frac{i^n}{\pi R^2}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}\underbrace{\left\{\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R},\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}}\right\}}_{F_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}}{R}\right)} \quad (22)$$

Multiplying both sides of Equation (22) by $e^{+i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}}$, summing from $n=-M..M$, interchanging the order of summation on the left hand side and using the orthogonality relationship of the discrete complex exponential gives:

$$f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}},\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) = \frac{1}{2\pi R^2 N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R},\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right)\frac{2i^n J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n q}{N_2}}e^{+i\frac{2\pi n p}{N_2}} \quad (23)$$

3.2. Band-Limited Functions

The process in the previous section can be repeated by starting with the assumption that the function is band-limited. That is, we suppose that the 2D Fourier transform $F(\rho, \psi)$ of $f(r, \theta)$ is band-limited, meaning that $F(\rho, \psi)$ itself and therefore by virtue of the equivalent of Equation (9), all of its Fourier coefficients $F_n(\rho)$ are zero for $\rho \geq W_\rho = 2\pi W$. Typically, W would be given in units of Hz (cycles per second) if using temporal units, or cycles per meter if using spatial units. Hence, the definition of W_ρ (with a multiplication by 2π) ensures that the final units are given in s^{-1} or m^{-1}. The details of this development follow the same steps as for the space-limited function but start with the assumption of a band-limited function and then impose a space-limit (i.e., truncation of the series). The results of this are summarized below.

3.3. Summary of Above Relationships

From the above, we summarize the derived relationships. In the case of a space-limited function, it is found that the forward transform is given by:

$$
F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) = \frac{2\pi R^2}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \frac{2i^{-n} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}
\tag{24}
$$

and the inverse transform is given by:

$$
f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) = \frac{1}{2\pi R^2 N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) \frac{2i^n J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm} j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}
\tag{25}
$$

Similarly, starting from the assumption of a bandlimited function, the forward transform is given by:

$$
F\left(\frac{j_{qm} W_\rho}{j_{qN_1}}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) = \frac{2\pi}{W_\rho^2 N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{k=1}^{N_1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(\frac{j_{pk}}{W_\rho}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \frac{2\, i^{-n} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}
\tag{26}
$$

and the inverse transform is given by:

$$
f\left(\frac{j_{pk}}{W_\rho}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) = \frac{W_\rho^2}{2\pi N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{qm} W_\rho}{j_{qN_1}}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) \frac{2i^n J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm} j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}
\tag{27}
$$

It is noted that the forward-inverse transform pair defined by Equations (24) and (25) is similar to the transform pair defined by (26) and (27), with a few differences. First, the sampling points *appear* to be slightly different, depending on whether we started with the assumption of a space-limited function or a bandlimited function. The second observation is that the form of the transform itself might appear to be slightly different, depending on whether a space-limited or a band-limited function was assumed as a starting point. However, it was shown in [6] that for a nth order discrete Hankel transform, the required relationship between the band limit and space limit is given by $W_\rho R = j_{nN_1}$. If the substitution $W_\rho R = j_{nN_1}$ is used in Equations (24) and (25), then it yields the same discrete transform as the transform pair defined by (26) and (27). Also, the relationship $W_\rho R = j_{nN_1}$ arose naturally in the development above when the truncation of the Fourier–Bessel series at N_1 was implemented, meaning that the truncation of the series at N_1 is the same as assuming $W_\rho R = j_{nN_1}$.

Formally using the relationship $W_\rho R = j_{nN_1}$, the expressions in Equations (24) and (25) can also be written using a symmetric forward/inverse transform pair, where the forward transform is given by:

$$F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) = \frac{2\pi R}{N_2 W_\rho} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \frac{2i^{-n} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1} J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} \tag{28}$$

For the inverse transform, we can similarly write:

$$f\left(\frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) = \frac{W_\rho}{2\pi R N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{qm}}{R}, \frac{2\pi q}{N_2}\right) \frac{2i^{n} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1} J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \tag{29}$$

The advantage of the formulation in Equations (28) and (29) shall be noted in the next section in that it suggests a symmetric form of the kernel for the 2D discrete transform in polar coordinates.

The above demonstrates that a natural, $(N_1 - 1) \times N_2$ dimensional discretization scheme in finite space and finite frequency space is given by:

$$r_{pk} = \frac{j_{pk}R}{j_{pN_1}} \quad \text{or} \quad r_{pk} = \frac{j_{pk}}{W_\rho}, \quad \text{and} \quad \theta_p = \frac{p2\pi}{N_2} \tag{30}$$

and:

$$\rho_{qm} = \frac{j_{qm}}{R} \quad \text{or} \quad \rho_{qm} = \frac{j_{qm}W_\rho}{j_{qN_1}}, \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_q = \frac{q2\pi}{N_2} \tag{31}$$

where p, k, q, m, n, N_1, and N_2 are integers such that $-M \leq n \leq M$, where $2M + 1 = N_2$, $1 \leq m, k, \leq N_1 - 1$ and $-M \leq p, q \leq M$. The relationship $W_\rho = \frac{j_{nN_1}}{R}$ can be used to formally switch from a finite frequency domain to a finite space domain. This is a 'formal' approach because in making this substitution, the index of the Bessel function is not fixed whereas W_ρ and R are assumed fixed values. Nevertheless, it demonstrates the approach to switching from a space-limited based discretization scheme to a band-limited discretization scheme.

4. Proposed Kernel for the Discrete Transform

4.1. Proposed Kernel for 2D Polar Discrete Fourier Transform

To work with the polar 2D DFT, a kernel for the transformation is required. Inspired by the formulations shown in Equations (24) and (25), we propose the following kernels:

$$E_{qm;pk}^{-} = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} 2i^{-n} e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}} e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}}$$
$$E_{qm;pk}^{+} = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} 2i^{n} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} \tag{32}$$

where p, k, q, m, n, N_1, and N_2 are integers such that $-M \leq n \leq M$, where $2M + 1 = N_2$, $1 \leq m, k, \leq N_1 - 1$ and $-M \leq p, q \leq M$. It is noted that the proposed kernels in Equation (32) are *almost* complex conjugates of each other save for a factor of $j_{nN_1}^2$ in the denominator of $E_{qm;pk}^{-}$. The formulation in Equation (32) is proposed in order to emulate Equations (24) and (25). A symmetric formulation of the kernels, with one j_{nN_1} in the denominator of each of $E^-(qm; pk)$ and $E^+(qm; pk)$ would also be possible and would make $E_{qm;pk}^{\pm}$ complex conjugates of each other; however, such a kernel would be more of a departure from a discretization of the continuous transform. The integers N_1, and N_2 denote the size of the working spaces, with N_2 giving the size in the angular direction and N_1 giving the size in the radial direction. Since $N_2 = 2M + 1$, it follows that N_2 must be an odd integer. The notation for $E^-(qm; pk)$

and $E^+(qm;pk)$ are chosen deliberately. The subscript (+ or -) indicate the sign on the $i^\pm$ and on the exponent containing the p variable; the q variable exponent then takes the opposite sign.

4.2. Another Choice of Kernel

A second, more symmetric choice of kernel is also possible. We will see that this choice of kernel will allow for a more traditional version of Parseval's theorem. All the following expressions will hold with either form of kernel. Using as inspiration the forms written in Equations (28) and (29), then we suggest for a kernel the following expression:

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{qm;pk}^{(s)-} &= \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} 2i^{-n} e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}} e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} \\
E_{qm;pk}^{(s)+} &= \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} 2i^{n} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}
\end{aligned}
\tag{33}
$$

As before, $p, k, q, m, n, N_1,$ and N_2 are integers such that $-M \le n \le M$, where $2M + 1 = N_2$ $1 \le m, k, \le N_1 - 1$ and $-M \le p, q \le M$. In Equation (33), $E_{qm;pk}^{(s)+}$ is now the complex conjugate of $E_{qm;pk}^{(s)-}$, as mentioned above.

4.3. Orthogonality of the Proposed Kernel

In what follows, we assume the ranges of the variables are such that $p, k, q, m, n, N_1,$ and N_2 are integers such that $-M \le n \le M$, where $2M + 1 = N_2$, $1 \le m, k, \le N_1 - 1$ and $-M \le p, q \le M$. We state and prove that the following relationship is true:

$$
\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{qm;p'k'}^{+} = \delta_{pp'} \delta_{kk'}
\tag{34}
$$

where $\delta_{pp'}$ is the Kronecker-delta function, defined as $\delta_{pp'} = 1$ if $p = p'$ and $\delta_{pp'} = 0$ otherwise. It is known that the continuous complex exponential expression can be written as:

$$
e^{i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} i^n J_n(\rho r) e^{in\theta} e^{-in\psi}
\tag{35}
$$

Hence, the form of the discrete kernel as proposed in (32) or (33) *resembles* discrete samples of the right hand side of Equation (35). It then follows that our proposed kernels in (32) or (33) can be considered to be the (discrete) corresponding form of the complex exponential kernel for the proposed discrete transform. The orthogonality relationship in (34) can then be considered to be the discrete version of:

$$
\int_0^\infty \int_0^{2\pi} e^{-i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}} e^{i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}'} d\vec{\omega} = \delta\left(\vec{r} - \vec{r}'\right)
\tag{36}
$$

where the integration over the frequency vector $\vec{\omega}$ has been replaced with a discrete sum over the frequency vector indices (q,m). The proof of Equation (34) uses the orthogonality of the discrete complex exponential and the discrete Hankel transform and can be found in Appendix A.7.

It can be similarly shown that the following orthogonality relationship is also true:

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{q'm';pk}^{+} = \delta_{qq'} \delta_{mm'}
\tag{37}
$$

which is similarly to be considered to be the discrete version of:

$$\int_0^\infty \int_0^{2\pi} e^{-i\vec{\omega}\cdot\vec{r}} e^{i\vec{\omega}'\cdot\vec{r}} d\vec{r} = \delta\left(\vec{\omega} - \vec{\omega}'\right) \tag{38}$$

Once again, the integration over the vector $\vec{r}$ has been replaced with a discrete sum over the $\vec{r}$ vector indices (p,k). The proof of Equation (37) can also be found in Appendix A.7. The orthogonality expressions in Equations (34) and (37) still hold if $E^\pm_{qm;pk}$ is replaced with the symmetric $E^{(s)\pm}_{qm;pk}$ since the only difference between the $E^\pm_{qm;pk}$ and $E^{(s)\pm}_{qm;pk}$ is the attribution of a j_{nN_1} term in the denominator and this makes no difference when the two kernels are multiplied.

5. Proposed Transform

In this section, we propose a definition of the 2D discrete Fourier transform (DFT) in polar coordinates which is motivated by the results of the 2D Fourier transform applied to space-limited and band-limited functions and also by the proposed kernel. The 2D DFT in polar coordinates will be a transform that transforms a 2-subscript set of numbers (ie matrix) f_{pk} to another set of values, matrix F_{qm} where p, k, q, m, are integers such that $1 \le m, k, \le N_1 - 1$ and $-M \le p, q \le M$ where $N_2 = 2M + 1$ for integers N_1, and N_2.

Forward and Inverse Transform

The proposed forward transform, $f_{pk} \to F_{qm}$ is given by:

$$\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} 2i^{-n} f_{pk} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f_{pk} E^-_{qm;pk}
\end{aligned} \tag{39}$$

where $N_2 = 2M + 1$ for some integer M. Similarly, for the inverse transform we propose:

$$\begin{aligned}
f_{pk} &= \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} 2i^n F_{qm} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} F_{qm} E^+_{qm;pk}
\end{aligned} \tag{40}$$

In the proposed transform, $E^{(s)\pm}_{qm;pk}$ could easily be used in placed of $E^\pm_{qm;pk}$ and all the following expressions will still be valid.

Proof. Substituting Equation (39) into the right-hand side of (40), interchanging the order of summation and using the orthogonality relationships of the kernel given in Equation (34) gives:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} \underbrace{\left\{ \sum_{l=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{s=-M}^{M} f_{sl} E^-_{qm;sl} \right\}}_{F_{qm}} E^+_{qm;pk} = \sum_{l=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{s=-M}^{M} f_{sl} \delta_{sp} \delta_{lk} = f_{pk} \tag{41}$$

Similarly, substituting Equation (40) into the right-hand side of (39), interchanging the order of summation and using the orthogonality of the kernel given in Equation (37) gives:

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\underbrace{\left\{\sum_{l=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{s=-M}^{M}F_{sl}E^+_{sl;pk}\right\}}_{f_{pk}}E^-_{qm;pk}=\sum_{l=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{s=-M}^{M}F_{sl}\delta_{sq}\delta_{lm}=F_{qm} \tag{42}
$$

Hence, Equation (39) and (40) are inverses of each other. These expressions would also hold if $E^{(s)\pm}_{qm;pk}$ were used instead of $E^{\pm}_{qm;pk}$.

6. Properties of the Transform—Transform Rules

6.1. The Complex Exponential

For the discrete case, the functions $E^-_{qm;pk}$ and $E^+_{qm;pk}$ as introduced above are the complex exponentials for this space, satisfying the required orthogonality condition and functioning as the kernel for the 2D-DFT in polar coordinates. These kernels are *not* $e^{\pm i \vec{\omega} \cdot \vec{r}}$ evaluated at particular points because the evaluation of the discrete radial variables in regular and frequency space varies with the order of the Bessel function. Nevertheless, these functions are the 'effective' complex exponentials for the space under consideration. From the orthogonality condition of the 2D polar DFT kernel, it can be shown that the expected Fourier rule of a complex exponential transforming to a delta function applies. Specifically, the 2D DFT of $f_{pk}=E^+_{q_0 m_0;pk}$ for some fixed, given values (q_0, m_0) is given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f_{pk}E^-_{qm;pk}=\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}E^+_{q_0 m_0;pk}E^-_{qm;pk}\\
&=\delta_{qq_0}\delta_{mm_0}
\end{aligned} \tag{43}
$$

Hence, $f_{pk}=E^+_{q_0 m_0;pk}$ transforms to $\delta_{qq_0}\delta_{mm_0}$ or in compact notation, $E^+_{q_0 m_0;pk}\Leftrightarrow\delta_{qq_0}\delta_{mm_0}$. This is the discrete version of the transform of $\exp\left(\vec{\omega}_0 \cdot \vec{r}\right)$.

6.2. The Delta Function

Clearly, the discrete equivalent of the Dirac-delta function is the Kronecker-delta function and in 2D, this needs to be a 2-subscript function. Thus, the discrete function whose 2D DFT is sought is given by $f_{pk}=\delta_{pp_0}\delta_{kk_0}$, which defines a matrix indexed by (p,k) where all the entries are zero except for the index where $p=p_0$ and $k=k_0$. The dimensions of this matrix are in keeping with all the dimensions assumed for the space which are p,k,q,m,n,N_1, and N_2 are integers such that $-M\le n\le M$, $1\le m,k,\le N_1-1$ and $-M\le p,q\le M$ and where $2M+1=N_2$. Finding the 2D DFT of this function gives:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=0}^{N_2-1}f_{pk}E^-_{qm;pk}=\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=0}^{N_2-1}\delta_{pp_0}\delta_{kk_0}E^-_{qm;pk}\\
&=E^-_{qm;p_0 k_0}
\end{aligned} \tag{44}
$$

Hence, as in the continuous case, the delta function transforms to the complex exponential (with a negative sign in the exponent). Hence we have another the Fourier pair $\delta_{pp_0}\delta_{kk_0}\Leftrightarrow E^-_{qm;p_0 k_0}$.

6.3. The Generalized Shift Operator

For a one dimensional Fourier transform, the shift rule is one of the known transform rules. This rule says that a shift in time is equivalent to a modulation in frequency. Mathematically, this is stated as:

$$f(t-a) = \mathbb{F}^{-1}\left\{e^{-ia\omega}\hat{f}(\omega)\right\} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left\{e^{-ia\omega}\hat{f}(\omega)\right\}e^{i\omega t}d\omega \tag{45}$$

Using this result as motivation, a generalized-shift operator is defined by finding the inverse DFT of the DFT of the function multiplied by the DFT kernel (modulation). A generalized shift operator was first proposed by Levitan [18], and our definition is a discretized version of this definition. Levitan suggested the complex conjugate of the Fourier operator as a generalized shift operator, which for Fourier transforms is the inverse transform operator. This approach to a generalized shift operator has previously been used with the Hankel transform itself [6,19]. Thus, we *define* the definition of a generalized-shifted function $f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}$ as the inverse Fourier transform of the function multiplied by the inverse transform operator. That is, it is defined as:

$$f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0} := \sum_{q=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\left\{F_{qm}E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-}\right\}E_{qm;pk}^{+} \tag{46}$$

Here, f_{pk} is the original (unshifted) function with 2D DFT F_{qm} such that $f_{pk} \to F_{qm}$. $f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}$ is the shifted function where $p_0 k_0$ denotes the amount of the shift (the equivalent of a in Equation (45)).

The shifted function $f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}$ can also be expressed in terms of the unshifted function f_{pk} by writing F_{qm} in terms of f_{pk} such as:

$$\begin{aligned}
f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0} &= \sum_{q=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}F_{qm}E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-}E_{qm;pk}^{+} \\
&= \sum_{q=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\left\{\sum_{p'=-M}^{M}\sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1}f_{p'k'}E_{qm;p'k'}^{-}\right\}E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-}E_{qm;pk}^{+}
\end{aligned} \tag{47}$$

By interchanging the order of summation, this can be rewritten as:

$$f_{pk}^{p_0 k_0} = \sum_{p'=-M}^{M}\sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1}f_{p'k'}\underbrace{\sum_{q=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}E_{qm;p'k'}^{-}E_{qm;pk}^{+}E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-}}_{\substack{\text{shift operator in space domain}\\ = S_{p'k',pk}^{p_0 k_0}}} \tag{48}$$

Equation (48) permits the definition of a shift operator so that the shift operator in the spatial domain is defined as:

$$S_{p'k',pk}^{p_0 k_0} = \sum_{q=-M}^{M}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}E_{qm;p'k'}^{-}E_{qm;pk}^{+}E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-} \tag{49}$$

This triple-product shift operator resembles previous definitions of shift operators for multidimensional Fourier transforms [2,3], generalized Hankel convolutions [20–22] and also discrete Hankel transforms [6].

6.4. Forward Transform of the Generalized Shift

We now consider the forward 2D Fourier transform of the generalized shifted function $f_{pk}^{p_0k_0}$. From the definition of the shifted function given in Equation (46), it is obvious that the forward transform of the shifted function is given by:

$$\mathbb{F}^{2D}\left(f_{pk}^{p_0k_0}\right) = F_{qm}E_{qm;p_0k_0}^{-} \tag{50}$$

The above can also be verified directly. The 2D Fourier transform of the shifted function can be found from:

$$\mathbb{F}^{2D}\left(f_{pk}^{p_0k_0}\right) = \sum_{p=-M}^{M}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} f_{pk}^{p_0k_0}E_{qm;pk}^{-}$$
$$= \sum_{p=-M}^{M}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\left\{\sum_{q'=-M}^{M}\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} F_{q'm'}E_{q'm';p_0k_0}^{-}E_{q'm';pk}^{+}\right\}E_{qm;pk}^{-} \tag{51}$$

where the definition in (46) was used. Interchanging the order of summation and using the orthogonality result in (37) gives:

$$\mathbb{F}^{2D}\left(f_{pk}^{p_0k_0}\right) = \sum_{q'=-M}^{M}\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} F_{q'm'}E_{q'm';p_0k_0}^{-}\underbrace{\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} E_{q'm';pk}^{+}E_{qm;pk}^{-}}_{=\delta_{qq'}\delta_{mm'}} = F_{qm}E_{qm;p_0k_0}^{-} \tag{52}$$

This gives another transform pair and also defines the shift-modulation rule. This rule is in analogy with the shift-modulation rule for regular Fourier transforms that states that a shift in the spatial/time domain is equivalent to modulation in the frequency domain:

$$f_{pk}^{p_0k_0} \Leftrightarrow F_{qm}E_{qm;p_0k_0}^{-} \tag{53}$$

Equation (53) is equivalent to the standard 1D continuous transform rule of:

$$\mathbb{F}\{f(t-a)\} = e^{-ia\omega}\hat{f}(\omega) \tag{54}$$

6.5. Modulation

We suppose that the forward 2D-DHT of a function g_{pk} is 'modulated' in the space domain so that the function whose transform we seek is $f_{pk} = E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk}$. This is the discrete equivalent of a function $g(t)$ modulated as $e^{iat}g(t)$ Here, the interpretation of $f_{pk} = E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk}$ is as follows:

$$f_{pk} = E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk}$$
$$f_{pk} = g_{pk}\frac{2}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}\frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm_0}j_{nk}}{j_nN_1}\right)}{J_{n+1}\left(j_{nm_0}\right)}i^n e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq_0}{N_2}} \tag{55}$$

Again, we implement the definition of the forward transform on the modulated function $f_{pk} = E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk}$ so that:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} f_{pk}E_{qm;pk}^{-} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk}E_{qm;pk}^{-} \tag{56}$$

and write g_{pk} in terms of its inverse transform:

$$g_{pk} = \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} G_{qm} E_{qm;pk}^{+} \tag{57}$$

So that Equation (56) becomes:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q_0 m_0;pk}^{+} \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} G_{q'm'} E_{q'm';pk}^{+} E_{qm;pk}^{-} \tag{58}$$

Interchanging the order of summation gives:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} G_{q'm'} \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q'm';pk}^{+} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{q_0 m_0;pk}^{+}}_{\text{shift operator in the frequency domain}} = G_{qm}^{q_0 m_0} \tag{59}$$

By comparing Equation (59) with Equation (49), we recognize the shift operator as shown in (59). This follows from a shift over the (q,m) variables and defines a shift operator in the frequency domain as:

$$S_{q'm',qm}^{q_0 m_0} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q'm';pk}^{+} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{q_0 m_0;pk}^{+} \tag{60}$$

Hence, Equation (59) can be written as:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} G_{q'm'} S_{q'm',qm}^{q_0 m_0} = G_{qm}^{q_0 m_0} \tag{61}$$

The shift operator in the frequency domain over the (q,m) variables as given by Equation (60) can be compared to the shift operator over the (p,k) variables in the space domain as shown in (49). We note that operations in the spatial domains are operations that involve the (p,k) variables or the second group of variables in $E_{qm;pk}^{\pm}$. Similarly, operations in the frequency domain involve operations over the (q,m) variables or the first set of variables in $E_{qm;pk}^{\pm}$.

Hence, the above development shows the derivation of a modulation-shift rule, where the forward 2D-DHT of a modulated function is equivalent to a generalized shift in the frequency domain. This gives the following transform pair:

$$E_{q_0 m_0;pk}^{+} g_{pk} \Leftrightarrow G_{qm}^{q_0 m_0} \tag{62}$$

Otherwise stated, Equation (62) shows that modulation in the space domain is equivalent to shift in the frequency domain, in keeping with expectations for a (generalized) Fourier transform.

6.6. Convolution–Multiplication

For a 2D convolution/multiplication rule, we consider a 2D convolution in the space domain. The convolution is defined in the traditional manner as the product of a shifted function with another unshifted function, and then the summation over all possible shifts. Specifically, we write it as:

$$f_{pk} = h_{pk} * * g_{pk} = \underbrace{\sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1}} \underbrace{h_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}} \underbrace{g_{p_0 k_0}} \tag{63}$$

$$\underbrace{\phantom{\sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1}}}_{\substack{\text{summation over} \\ \text{all possible shifts}}} \quad \substack{\text{shifted} \\ \text{function}} \quad \substack{\text{unshifted} \\ \text{function}}$$

where $h_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}$ is the h_{pk} shifted by $p_0 k_0$ given by:

$$h_{pk}^{p_0 k_0} = \sum_{q=-M}^{M} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} H_{qm} E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-} E_{qm;pk}^{+} \tag{64}$$

The summation in Equation (63) is then over all the possible shifts. Taking the forward transform of f_{pk} as defined in (63) gives:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f_{pk} E_{qm;pk}^{-} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} \left\{ \sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1} h_{pk}^{p_0 k_0} g_{p_0 k_0} \right\} E_{qm;pk}^{-} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} \sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1} \underbrace{\sum_{q'=-M}^{M} \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} H_{q'm'} E_{q'm';p_0 k_0}^{-} E_{q'm';pk}^{+}}_{h_{pk}^{p_0 k_0}} \underbrace{\sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} G_{q''m''} E_{q''m'';p_0 k_0}^{+} E_{qm;pk}^{-}}_{g_{p_0 k_0}}
\end{aligned}
\tag{65}
$$

Interchanging the order of summation so that the summation over p,k is performed first and using the orthogonality of the kernel gives:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} H_{q'm'} E_{q'm';p_0 k_0}^{-} G_{q''m''} E_{q''m'';p_0 k_0}^{+} \delta_{qq'} \delta_{mm'} \\
&= \sum_{p_0=-M}^{M} \sum_{k_0=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} H_{qm} E_{qm;p_0 k_0}^{-} G_{q''m''} E_{q''m'';p_0 k_0}^{+}
\end{aligned}
\tag{66}
$$

Now summing over p_0, k_0 and again using the orthogonality of the kernel gives:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} H_{qm} G_{q''m''} \delta_{qq''} \delta_{mm''} = H_{qm} G_{qm} \tag{67}$$

In other words, we have the result that:

$$h_{pk} * * g_{pk} \Leftrightarrow H_{qm} G_{qm} \tag{68}$$

Equation (68) is, of course, the expected convolution–multiplication rule where convolution in the space domain is equivalent to multiplication in the frequency domain.

6.7. Multiplication–Convolution Rule

We now consider the forward 2D FT of a term-by-term product in the space domain so that $f_{pk} = h_{pk} g_{pk}$. Then, the forward transform of the term-by-term product is given by:

$$F_{qm} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f_{pk} E_{qm;pk}^{-} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} \left\{ h_{pk} g_{pk} \right\} E_{qm;pk}^{-} \tag{69}$$

Using the definitions of the inverse 2D FT to write h_{pk} and g_{pk} then:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{qm} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} f_{pk}E_{qm;pk}^{-} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\underbrace{\sum_{q'=-M}^{M}\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}H_{q'm'}E_{q'm';pk}^{+}}_{h_{pk}}g_{pk}E_{qm;pk}^{-} \\
&= \sum_{q'=-M}^{M}\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}H_{q'm'}\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}g_{pk}E_{q'm';pk}^{+}E_{qm;pk}^{-}}_{=G_{qm}^{q'm'}}
\end{aligned}
\tag{70}
$$

In Equation (70), we have used the modulation rule $E_{q_0m_0;pk}^{+}g_{pk} \Leftrightarrow G_{qm}^{q_0m_0}$. In other words, Equation (70) states that:

$$
F_{qm} = \sum_{q'=-M}^{M}\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}H_{q'm'}G_{qm}^{q'm'} = H_{qm}**G_{qm}
\tag{71}
$$

Hence, $h_{pk}g_{pk} \Leftrightarrow H_{qm}**G_{qm}$ which is the multiplication-convolution rule where multiplication in the space domain is equivalent to convolution in the frequency domain.

6.8. Rotation

It is generally known that rotating a function in 2D space also rotates its 2D Fourier transform. We demonstrate that this is still true with our definition of the discrete 2D DFT in polar coordinates. To see this, we consider a shift of the function in frequency space, meaning consider $F_{(q-q_0)m}$ where a shift by q_0 in the angular coordinate has been implemented. In this case, since the circular direction is circularly periodic, we interpret $q-q_0$ in the sense of modulo N_2. So consider the inverse discrete 2D DFT of $F_{(q-q_0)m}$, that is from the definition in Equation (40)

$$
\mathbb{F}_{2D}^{-1}\{F_{(q-q_0)m}\} = \frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}j_{nN_1}i^n e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}\left\{\sum_{q=-M}^{M}F_{(q-q_0)m}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}\right\}
\tag{72}
$$

Now suppose that $q' = q - q_0$ so that $q = q' + q_0$ and $q = -M$ implies $q' = -q_0 - M$ and also $q = +M$ implies $q' = -q_0 + M$. Hence, Equation (72) becomes:

$$
\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}j_{nN_1}i^n e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}\left\{\sum_{q'=-q_0-M}^{q'=-q_0+M}F_{q'm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n(q'+q_0)}{N_2}}\right\}
\tag{73}
$$

But because of the circular (N_2) periodicity of the function, then:

$$
\sum_{q'=-q_0-M}^{q'=-q_0+M}F_{q'm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n(q'+q_0)}{N_2}} = e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq_0}{N_2}}\sum_{q'=-q_0-M}^{q'=-q_0+M}F_{q'm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq'}{N_2}} = e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq_0}{N_2}}\sum_{q'=-M}^{q'=+M}F_{q'm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq'}{N_2}}
\tag{74}
$$

Hence, Equation (72) becomes:

$$
\frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}j_{nN_1}i^n \underbrace{e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq_0}{N_2}}}_{=e^{+i\frac{2\pi n(p-q_0)}{N_2}}}\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}\left\{\sum_{q=-M}^{M}F_{qm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}\right\} = f_{(p-q_0)k}
\tag{75}
$$

As above, $f_{(p-q_0)k}$ is to be interpreted in the sense of modulo N_2. However, what this clearly demonstrates is that rotating the Fourier transform by q_0 is equivalent to rotating the original function by q_0, as is expected of a 2D Fourier transform.

7. Generalized Parseval Theorem

Under the proposed transform, inner products are preserved and, therefore, energies are preserved with the symmetric version of the transform. With the non-symmetric version of the transform, a modified version of Parseval's theorem is possible. This will be demonstrated in the following subsections.

7.1. Parseval's Theorem with the Symmetric Kernel

Consider the total energy of the term-by-term product (Hadamard product) of two matrices in the spatial domain $f_{pk} = h_{pk}\overline{g_{pk}}$. We use the overbar notation to denote the complex conjugate, so that $\overline{g_{pk}}$ denotes the complex conjugate of g_{pk}. We recall that in the case of the symmetric kernel, the complex conjugate of $E_{qm;pk}^{(s)+}$ is $E_{qm;pk}^{(s)-}$, which is what will enable the Parseval relationship to exist in its expected form, as will be shown. More specifically, it is noted that:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} h_{pk}\overline{g_{pk}} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\left\{\sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'}E_{q'm';pk}^{(s)+}\right\}\left\{\sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q''=-M}^{M}\overline{G_{q''m''}}\,E_{q''m'';pk}^{(s)-}\right\} \\
&= \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'}\sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q''=-M}^{M}\overline{G_{q''m''}}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q'm';pk}^{(s)+}E_{q''q'';pk}^{(s)-}
\end{aligned}
\tag{76}
$$

However,

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q'm';pk}^{(s)+}E_{q''m'';pk}^{(s)-} = \delta_{q'q''}\,\delta_{m'm''}
\tag{77}
$$

Hence, Equation (76) becomes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M} h_{pk}\overline{g_{pk}} &= \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'}\sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q''=-M}^{M}\overline{G_{q''m''}}\,\delta_{q'q''}\,\delta_{m'm''} \\
&= \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'}\overline{G_{q'm'}}
\end{aligned}
\tag{78}
$$

For the special case that $g_{pk} = h_{pk}$ then Equation (78) yields:

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\left|h_{pk}\right|^2 = \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}\left|H_{qm}\right|^2
\tag{79}
$$

Equations (78) and (79) are the expected for of the Parseval relationship, which essentially states that the energy computed in one domain is equivalent to the energy computed in the other domain. The reader is reminded that the symmetric kernel was used for the derivation in (79).

7.2. Parseval's Theorem with the Non-Symmetric Kernel

For the non-symmetric kernel, some modifications to the above Parseval relationship are necessary. Again, we consider the total energy of a Hadamard product of two matrices in the spatial domain. However, now we need to define a more 'general' version of a complex conjugate expression in order

for the Parseval relationship to exist. We denote this more general version as $\overline{g_{pk}}^*$ (over bar *and* star) and define this expression as:

$$\overline{g_{pk}}^* := \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \overline{G_{q''m''}} E_{q''m'';pk}^- \quad \text{(definition)} \tag{80}$$

We note in Equation (80) that $\overline{g_{pk}}^*$ uses $E_{q''m'';pk}^-$ instead of $\overline{E_{q''m'';pk}^+}$ (where the latter would normally be used for the complex conjugate). The reason for this is that with the non-symmetric kernel, using $\overline{E_{q''m'';pk}^+}$ will not lead to the required orthogonality condition. However, with our 'modified' version of the complex conjugate as denoted by the $\overline{g_{pk}}^*$ and defined in Equation (80), it then follows that:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} h_{pk} \overline{g_{pk}}^* = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} \left\{ \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'} E_{q'm';pk}^+ \right\} \left\{ \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \overline{G_{q''m''}} E_{q''m'';pk}^- \right\}$$

$$= \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \overline{G_{q''m''}} \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{q'm';pk}^+ E_{q''m'';pk}^-}_{\delta_{q'q''}\,\delta_{m'm''}} \tag{81}$$

Using the orthogonality of the kernel, Equation (81) becomes:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} h_{pk} \overline{g_{pk}}^* = \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'} \sum_{m''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q''=-M}^{M} \overline{G_{q''m''}} \, \delta_{q'q''}\,\delta_{m'm''}$$

$$= \sum_{m'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q'=-M}^{M} H_{q'm'} \overline{G_{q'm'}} \tag{82}$$

Similarly, we can consider the special product in the frequency domain $F_{qm} = H_{qm} \overline{G_{qm}}^*$ where again the special expression $\overline{G_{qm}}^*$ needs to be defined as follows:

$$\overline{G_{qm}}^* := \sum_{k''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p''=-M}^{M} \overline{g_{p''k''}} E_{qm;p''k''}^+ \quad \text{(definition)} \tag{83}$$

Consider:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} H_{qm} \overline{G_{qm}}^* = \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} \left\{ \sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p'=-M}^{M} h_{p'k'} E_{qm;p'k'}^- \right\} \cdot \left\{ \sum_{k''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p''=-M}^{M} \overline{g_{p''k''}} E_{qm;p''k''}^+ \right\} \tag{84}$$

Interchanging the order of summation and summing over the (q,m) variables first gives:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} H_{qm} \overline{G_{qm}}^* = \sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p'=-M}^{M} h_{p'k'} \sum_{k''=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p''=-M}^{M} \overline{g_{p''k''}} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} E_{qm;p'k'}^- E_{qm;p''k''}^+ \tag{85}$$

Using the orthogonality of the kernel, the last line can be rewritten as:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} H_{qm} \overline{G_{qm}}^* = \sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p'=-M}^{M} h_{p'k'} \sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p''=-M}^{M} \overline{g_{p''p''}} \, \delta_{p'p''}\,\delta_{k'k''}$$

$$= \sum_{k'=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p'=-M}^{M} h_{p'k'} \overline{g_{p'k'}} \tag{86}$$

In summary, Equation (82) shows how to interpret $\sum\limits_{m'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum\limits_{q'=-M}^{M}H_{q'm'}\overline{G_{q'm'}}$ and Equation (86) shows

how to interpret $\sum\limits_{k'=1}^{N_1-1}\sum\limits_{p'=-M}^{M}h_{p'k'}\overline{g_{p'k'}}$ and also shows that they are not quite equivalent as was the case

for the symmetric kernel. In summary,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}H_{qm}\overline{G_{qm}} &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}h_{pk}\overline{g_{pk}}^{\,*}\\
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}h_{pk}\overline{g_{pk}} &= \overline{\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}H_{qm}\overline{G_{qm}}}^{\,*}
\end{aligned}
\tag{87}
$$

In the special case that $h = g$, then Equation (87) becomes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}\left|H_{qm}\right|^2 &= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}h_{pk}\overline{h_{pk}}^{\,*}\\
\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{p=-M}^{M}\left|h_{pk}\right|^2 &= \overline{\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1}\sum_{q=-M}^{M}H_{qm}\overline{H_{qm}}}^{\,*}
\end{aligned}
\tag{88}
$$

8. Discussion: Interpretation of the Transform

In the previous sections, we demonstrated that the 2D DFT in polar coordinates is most conveniently defined in terms of the kernels $E_{qm;pk}^{\pm}$ or $E_{qm;pk}^{(s)\pm}$, and indeed this definition allows many of the proofs of the DFT properties to assume a straightforward form that exploits the properties of the kernel. In this section, we demonstrate that the proposed forms of the 2D DFT can be interpreted in terms of a sequence of 1D DFT, DHT and IDFT discrete transforms, thereby demonstrating that the proposed transform follows the same path as the continuous 2D transform in that it can be decomposed into a sequence of Fourier, Hankel and inverse Fourier transforms [2].

8.1. Interpretation of the 2D Forward DFT in Polar Coordinates

Let us reconsider the definition of the forward 2D DFT, Equation (39), and rewrite it as:

$$
F_{qm} = \frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M}e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}}\frac{i^{-n}}{j_{nN_1}}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}\left\{\sum_{p=-M}^{M}f_{pk}e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}}\right\}
\tag{89}
$$

We can consider these as a sequence of 1D discrete Fourier transforms, with a discrete Hankel transform, as explained in the following. The first step is a forward 1D DFT transforming $f_{pk}\to\widetilde{f}_{nk}$ where the p subscript is transformed to the n subscript as:

$$
\widetilde{f}_{nk} = \sum_{p=-M}^{M}f_{pk}e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}}\qquad\text{for } n = -M..M,\ k = 1..N_1-1
\tag{90}
$$

The tilde is used to indicate a standard 1D DFT. In matrix terms, this says that each *column* of f_{pk} is DFT'ed to yield $\widetilde{f}_{nk}$. The second step of Equation (89) is a discrete Hankel transform of order n that transforms $\widetilde{f}_{nk}\to\widetilde{\widetilde{f}}_{nm}$, where the k subscript is Hankel transformed to the m subscript via:

$$
\widetilde{\widetilde{f}}_{nm} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1}\frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}\widetilde{f}_{nk}\qquad\text{for } n = -M..M,\ m = 1..N_1-1
\tag{91}
$$

The overhat denotes a DHT, as defined in [6]. Using the transformation matrix notation defined in [6], we define:

$$Y_{m,k}^{nN_1} = \frac{2}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})}J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right) \quad 1 \le m,k \le N_1 - 1 \tag{92}$$

Hence Equation (91) can be written as

$$\widetilde{\widehat{f}}_{nm} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} Y_{m,k}^{nN_1} \widetilde{f}_{nk} \quad \text{for } n = -M..M, \ m = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{93}$$

In matrix terms, this shows that each *row* of $\widetilde{f}_{nk}$ is nth-order DHT'ed to yield $\widetilde{\widehat{f}}_{nm}$. The nth row is nth order DHT'ed (with some loose interpretation of row counters since in this case the index n takes on negative values). A scaling operation then gives the Fourier coefficients of the 2D DFT $\widetilde{\widehat{f}}_{nm} \to \widetilde{F}_{nm}$ such that:

$$\widetilde{F}_{nm} = \frac{i^{-n}}{j_{nN_1}}\widetilde{\widehat{f}}_{nm} = \frac{i^{-n}}{j_{nN_1}}\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} Y_{m,k}^{nN_1} \widetilde{f}_{nk} \quad \text{for } n = -M..M, \ m = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{94}$$

It is noted that Equation (94) exactly parallels the equivalent step of the continuous form of the transform where $F_n(\rho) = 2\pi\, i^{-n}\mathbb{H}_n\{f_n(r)\}$, see [4,6]. If the symmetric form of the kernel is used, that is, Equation (33), then Equation (94) is replaced with $\widetilde{F}_{nm} = i^{-n}\widetilde{\widehat{f}}_{nm}$.

The final step to compute the forward 2D DFT in polar coordinates is then a standard *inverse* 1D DFT. Here, each *column* of $\widetilde{F}_{nm} \to F_{qm}$ is transformed so that the n subscript is (inverse) transformed to the q subscript via

$$F_{qm} = \frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M} \widetilde{F}_{nm}e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} \quad \text{for } q = -M..M, \ m = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{95}$$

This last step is a 1D IDFT for each *column* of $\widetilde{F}_{nm}$ to obtain F_{qm}. It was shown in [2,4] that a continuous 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates is a sequence of operations consisting of (i) a Fourier series transform (transforming the continuous function to its discrete set of Fourier coefficients), (ii) a Hankel transform for each Fourier coefficient (an nth order transform for the nth coefficient), and (iii) an inverse Fourier series transform (a set of Fourier coefficients is transformed back to a continuous function via the infinite Fourier series summation). Hence, we have shown here that the proposed 2D DFT in polar coordinates consists of the same sequence of transforms: a forward DFT, a forward DHT and then an inverse DFT.

8.2. Interpretation of the 2D Inverse DFT in Polar Coordinates

Similarly, we can decompose the inverse 2D DFT in polar coordinates, from Equation (40) written as:

$$f_{pk} = \frac{1}{N_2}\sum_{n=-M}^{M} j_{nN_1}i^n e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{2J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}\left\{\sum_{q=-M}^{M} F_{qm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}}\right\} \tag{96}$$

The steps of the inverse 2D DFT are the reverse of those outlined for the forward 2DDFT. First $F_{qm} \to \widetilde{F}_{nm}$ via a forward 1D DFT:

$$\widetilde{F}_{nm} = \sum_{q=-M}^{M} F_{qm}e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq}{N_2}} \quad n = -M..M, \ m = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{97}$$

This is followed by a discrete Hankel transform to obtain $\widetilde{F}_{nm} \to \widetilde{\hat{F}}_{nk}$

$$\widetilde{\hat{F}}_{nk} = \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} Y_{k,m}^{nN_1} \widetilde{F}_{nm} \qquad \text{for } n = -M..M, \ k = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{98}$$

The next step is a scaling operation to obtain $\widetilde{\hat{F}}_{nk} \to \widetilde{f}_{nk}$ via:

$$\widetilde{f}_{nk} = j_{nN_1} i^{+n} \widetilde{\hat{F}}_{nk} \qquad \text{for } n = -M..M, \ k = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{99}$$

The step in Equation (99) follows the pattern of the continuous form transform, where $f_n(r) = \frac{i^n}{2\pi} \mathbb{H}_n\{F_n(\rho)\}$, see [2,4,6]. As before, if the symmetric form of the kernel is used (Equation (33)), then Equation (99) is replaced with $\widetilde{f}_{nk} = i^{+n} \widetilde{\hat{F}}_{nk}$. Finally, an inverse 1D DFT is used to obtain $\widetilde{f}_{nk} \to f_{pk}$ via:

$$f_{pk} = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \widetilde{f}_{nk} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \qquad \text{for } p = -M..M, \ k = 1..N_1 - 1 \tag{100}$$

As previously mentioned, this parallels the steps taken for the continuous case, with each continuous operation (Fourier series, Hankel transform) replaced by its discrete counterpart (DFT, DHT).

For both forward and inverse 2D DFT, the same sequence of steps are followed. The operations are a 1D DFT of each column of the given matrix, then a DHT of each row, then a term-by-term scaling, and finally an IDFT of each column.

9. Conclusions

In this paper, a discrete 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates was motivated and proposed by applying a discretization and truncation approach to the continuous 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates. This new transform stands in its own right and, unlike previous approaches to a polar FT, is not an evaluation of the Cartesian form of the transform on a polar grid. This approach yields two possible kernels for the discrete 2D transform in polar coordinates. One of these two kernels is closer to the continuous version of the transform and the second kernel is symmetric, in that the kernel for the forward transform is the complex conjugate of the kernel for the inverse transform. Both versions of the kernel yield a 2D transform that transform a 2-subscripted entity (matrix) to another one. The standard set of shift, modulation, multiplication and convolution rules were derived for both kernels and are the same for either form of the kernel. However, only the symmetric kernel yields the expected Parseval relationship. It was also shown that the 2D discrete transform can be interpreted as a 1D discrete Fourier transform (DFT), followed by a 1D discrete Hankel transform (DHT), followed by a 1D inverse DFT. This DFT-DHT-IDFT pattern mimics the manner in which the continuous 2D Fourier transform in polar coordinates is evaluated. In conclusion, part I of the paper proposes the form of the 2D DFT in polar coordinates, and demonstrates the expected operational rules for this transform. Part II of the paper will examine how the proposed 2D DFT in polar coordinates can be used to approximate the continuous FT at certain discrete points.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Appendix A

The following appendices give important definitions for Hankel transforms (Appendix A.1), Fourier Bessel series (Appendix A.2), finite Fourier transforms (Appendix A.5) and also contain statements of the orthogonality of the discrete complex exponential (Appendix A.3) and the discrete Bessel functions (Appendix A.4). Section Appendix A.6 contains a discussion on the sampling points

and how they affect the proposed evaluation of the discrete Fourier coefficients at the chosen sampling points. Proofs of the orthogonality of the proposed kernel can be found in Appendix A.7.

Appendix A.1. Hankel Transform

The nth order Hankel transform is defined by the integral [3]:

$$\widehat{f}^{\,n}(\rho) = \int_0^\infty f(r) J_n(\rho r) r \, dr \tag{A1}$$

where $J_n(z)$ is the nth order Bessel function with the overhat indicating a Hankel transform as shown in Equation (A1). Here, n may be an arbitrary real or complex number. The Hankel transform is self-reciprocating and the inversion formula is given by:

$$f(r) = \int_0^\infty \widehat{f}^{\,n}(\rho) J_n(\rho r) \rho \, d\rho \tag{A2}$$

The Hankel transform exists only if the Dirichlet condition is satisfied, i.e., $\int_0^\infty \left| r^{1/2} f(r) \right| dr$ exists and is particularly useful for problems involving cylindrical symmetry.

Appendix A.2. Fourier–Bessel Series

Functions defined on a finite portion of the real line $[0, R]$ in the radial coordinate can be expanded in terms of a Fourier–Bessel series [16] given by:

$$f(r) = \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^\infty f_k J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} r}{R}\right) & r \le R \\ 0 & r > R \end{cases} \tag{A3}$$

where $J_n(z)$ is the nth order Bessel function, the order of the Bessel function in (A3) is arbitrary and j_{nk} denotes the kth root of the nth Bessel function. The kth order Fourier–Bessel coefficients f_k of the function $f(r)$ can be found from:

$$f_k = \frac{2}{R^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} \int_0^R f(r) J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk} r}{R}\right) r \, dr \tag{A4}$$

Equations (A3) and (A4) can be considered to be a transform pair where the continuous function $f(r)$ is forward-transformed to the discrete vector f_k given by the finite integral in (A4). The summation in Equation (A3) is then taken as the inverse transformation which returns $f(r)$ when starting with f_k. The Fourier–Bessel series is the cylindrical coordinate counterpart of the Fourier series. Just as the Fourier series is defined for a finite interval and has a counterpart, the continuous Fourier transform over an infinite interval, so the Fourier–Bessel series has a counterpart over an infinite interval, namely the Hankel transform.

Appendix A.3. Orthogonality of the Discrete Complex Exponential

The success of the discrete Fourier transform (DFT) is based on the exploitation of known discrete orthogonality relationships for the complex exponential evaluated at a finite number of certain special points [23]. This relationship is given by:

$$\sum_{p=0}^{N-1} e^{-\frac{ip2\pi n}{N}} e^{+\frac{ip2\pi m}{N}} = N\delta_{mn} \tag{A5}$$

where m, n, p, N are integers. In Equation (A5), δ_{mn} is the Kronecker delta function, defined as:

$$\delta_{mn} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } m = n \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{A6}$$

It can easily be shown by a simple change of variables that the following orthogonality relationship is true:

$$\sum_{p'=-M}^{M} e^{-\frac{ip'2\pi n}{N}} e^{+\frac{ip'2\pi m}{N}} = N\delta_{mn} \tag{A7}$$

Appendix A.4. Discrete Orthogonality of the Bessel Functions

It is shown in [24] that the following discrete orthogonality relationship is true:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk}}{j_{nN}}\right) J_n\left(\frac{j_{ni}j_{nk}}{j_{nN}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} = \frac{j_{nN}^2}{4} J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})\delta_{mi} \tag{A8}$$

where j_{nm} represents the mth zero of $J_n(x)$.

It is noted that Equation (A8) is the discrete version of the Bessel orthogonality relationship on a finite interval given by:

$$\int_0^1 J_n(rj_{nm})J_n(rj_{ni})rdr = \frac{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}{2}\delta_{mi}$$
$$\int_0^b J_n\left(\frac{r'j_{nm}}{b}\right)J_n\left(\frac{r'j_{ni}}{b}\right)r'dr' = \frac{b^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}{2}\delta_{mi} \tag{A9}$$

From Watson in [25], the following expressions are also valid:

$$\int_0^{W_\rho} J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}\rho}{W_\rho}\right)J_n(r\rho)\rho d\rho = \frac{j_{nk}}{\frac{j_{nk}^2}{W_\rho^2}-r^2} J_{n+1}(j_{nk})J_n\left(rW_\rho\right)$$
$$\int_0^R J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}r}{R}\right)J_n(\rho r)rdr = \frac{j_{nk}}{\frac{j_{nk}^2}{R^2}-\rho^2} J_{n+1}(j_{nk})J_n(\rho R) \tag{A10}$$

Appendix A.5. Fourier Series and Finite Fourier Transform

A function of angular position $f(\theta)$, where $-\pi \leq \theta \leq \pi$ can be expanded into a Fourier series as:

$$f(\theta) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f_n e^{in\theta} \tag{A11}$$

where the Fourier coefficients are given by:

$$f_n = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(\theta) e^{-in\theta} d\theta \tag{A12}$$

A principal application of the finite Fourier transform (FFT) is to approximately compute samples of the Fourier transform of a function. We define the FFT partial sum of the samples $f\left(\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right)$ of the continuous function $f(\theta)$ as:

$$\widehat{f}_n = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} f\left(\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \qquad n \in [-M, M] \tag{A13}$$

where N_2 is an integer such that $N_2 = 2M + 1$ for some other integer M. The over square-hat notation $\widehat{f}$ indicates the taking of a (finite) Fourier transform. Clearly, Equation (A13) is a Riemann sum for the integral in (A12). It is generally asserted in the signal processing literature that $\widehat{f}_n \approx f_n$, and it is specifically shown in [17] that $\widehat{f}_n$ provides a uniformly good estimate for f_n for $n \in [-M, M]$.

It is also shown in [17] that the finite Fourier transform partial sum given by:

$$\widehat{f}(\theta) = \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \widehat{f}_n e^{in\theta} \tag{A14}$$

is almost as good an approximation to $f(\theta)$ as the usual partial sum:

$$f^{N_2}(\theta) = \sum_{n=-M}^{M} f_n e^{in\theta} \tag{A15}$$

Appendix A.6. Sampling Points

In this section, the difference between including the radial sampling points in the index of summation for the discrete Fourier transform is discussed. We noted above in Equation (18) that the radial sampling point is included in the index of summation of the discrete Fourier transform. In other words, we wrote for $n \in [-M, M]$ that:

$$F_n\left(\frac{j_{nl}}{R}\right) = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{pl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \qquad (i) \tag{A16}$$

However, strictly speaking, the radial sampling points should be fixed to the value of the radial sampling point on the left hand side, that is the *expected* discrete definition of $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nl}}{R}\right)$ should be given by:

$$F_n\left(\frac{j_{nl}}{R}\right) = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{nl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} \qquad (ii) \tag{A17}$$

Note that in both Equations (A16) and (A17), the index of summation is p, and the radial sampling point is j_{pl} in (A16) but j_{nl} in (A17).

Which of the definitions for $F_n\left(\frac{j_{nl}}{R}\right)$ is correct? Definition (i), as given in Equation (A16), or definition (ii) as given in Equation (A17)? Traditionally, (ii) of Equation (A17) would be expected but taking this form does not allow the 2D discrete transform that ensues to be invertible. We showed above in the main text of the manuscript, that version (i) with Equation (A16) leads to an invertible, discrete 2D transform. We show in this section that if we confine ourselves to the chosen sampling points, then both versions are equivalent.

Considering the reconstruction formula based on (A14) which says:

$$F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \theta\right) = \sum_{n=-M}^{M} F_n\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}\right) e^{in\theta} \tag{A18}$$

Then, sampling at $\theta = \frac{2\pi m}{N_2}$ gives:

$$F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi m}{N_2}\right) = \sum_{n=-M}^{M} F_n\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}\right) e^{i\frac{2\pi nm}{N_2}} \tag{A19}$$

So now consider the right hand side of Equation (A19) under the two different sampling assumptions implied by (i) or (ii). That is:

$$\begin{cases} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \left\{ \underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{pl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}}_{F_n\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}\right) \text{ using } (i)} \right\} e^{i\frac{2\pi nm}{N_2}} & (i) \\[4em] \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \left\{ \underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}}_{F_n\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}\right) \text{ using } (ii)} \right\} e^{i\frac{2\pi nm}{N_2}} & (ii) \end{cases} \tag{A20}$$

Equation (A20) (i) gives:

$$\sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{i\frac{2\pi nm}{N_2}}}_{N_2 \delta_{pm}}$$
$$= \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \delta_{pm} = F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi m}{N_2}\right) \tag{A21}$$

Therefore, the (i) version works the way it is expected to work. Now considering the (ii) version:

$$\sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \underbrace{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{i\frac{2\pi nm}{N_2}}}_{N_2 \delta_{pm}}$$
$$= \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \delta_{pm} = F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi m}{N_2}\right) \tag{A22}$$

Therefore, the (ii) version also works the way it is expected to work. Therefore, both (i) and (ii) work properly.

However, if we try evaluating at different values of angular position, say $\theta = \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}$ where now the sampling index on the angle and the Bessel function do not match, in other words:

$$F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) = \sum_{n=-M}^{M} F_n\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}\right) e^{i\frac{2\pi nr}{N_2}} \tag{A23}$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) &= \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{\left\{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{pl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}\right\}} e^{i\frac{2\pi nr}{N_2}} \\
&= \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{pl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) \delta_{pr} = F\left(\frac{j_{rl}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) \quad (i) \\
F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) &= \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{\left\{\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}}\right\}} e^{i\frac{2\pi nr}{N_2}} \\
&= \sum_{p=-M}^{M} F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi p}{N_2}\right) \delta_{pr} = F\left(\frac{j_{ml}}{R}, \frac{2\pi r}{N_2}\right) \quad (ii)
\end{aligned} \tag{A24}$$

In this case, (ii) does not yield the expected result, but (i) does. So the question of (i) vs (ii) becomes a question of where on the theta (angular position) the total function needs to be evaluated—not only a question of evaluating on a discrete radial position. However, if the fixed set of sampling points that have been proposed for the discrete 2D transform are used, where the indices on radial and angular position match, then the results are as expected.

Appendix A.7. Proofs of Orthogonality of the Proposed Kernel

In what follows, we assume the ranges of the variables are such that $p, k, q, m, n, N_1,$ and N_2 are integers such that $-M \leq n \leq M$, where $2M + 1 = N_2$ $1 \leq m, k, \leq N_1 - 1$ and $0 \leq p, q \leq N_2 - 1$.

Appendix A.7.1. Proof of Orthogonality of the Kernel over the Frequency Indices

We state and prove that the following relationship is true:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{qm;p'k'}^{+} = \delta_{pp'} \delta_{kk'} \tag{A25}$$

The proof is as follows. We start by substituting the definition of the kernel into the expression:

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^{-} E_{qm;p'k'}^{+} = $$
$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{q=-M}^{M} \frac{4}{N_2^2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} i^{-n} e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}} e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} \sum_{n'=-M}^{M} \frac{J_{n'}\left(\frac{j_{n'm}j_{n'k'}}{j_{n'N_1}}\right)}{J_{n'+1}^2(j_{n'm})} i^{n'} e^{+i\frac{2\pi n'p'}{N_2}} e^{-i\frac{2\pi n'q}{N_2}} \tag{A26}$$

Summing over the index q and using the orthogonality of the discrete complex exponential (Appendix A.3) returns a $N_2 \delta_{nn'}$ so that $n' = n$ and Equation (A26) becomes:

$$\frac{4}{N_2} \sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk'}}{j_{nN_1}}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np'}{N_2}} \tag{A27}$$

This can be rewritten as:

$$\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np'}{N_2}} \underbrace{\sum_{m=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{4J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_nN_1}\right)J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm}j_{nk'}}{j_nN_1}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm})}}_{=\delta_{kk'}} \tag{A28}$$

Now, summing over the index and using the discrete orthogonality relationship of the Bessel functions (Appendix A.4) gives:

$$\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} e^{-i\frac{2\pi np}{N_2}} e^{+i\frac{2\pi np'}{N_2}} \delta_{kk'} = \delta_{pp'}\delta_{kk'} \tag{A29}$$

where the orthogonality relationship of the discrete complex exponential has been used again.

Appendix A.7.2. Proof of Orthogonality of the Kernel over the Spatial Indices

It can be similarly shown that the following orthogonality relationship is also true:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^- E_{q'm';pk}^+ = \delta_{qq'}\delta_{mm'} \tag{A30}$$

The proof is as follows. We start by substituting the definition of the kernel into the expression:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^- E_{q'm';pk}^+$$
$$= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_nN_1}\right)2i^{-n}e^{-in\frac{2\pi p}{N_2}} e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}}}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n'=-M}^{M} \frac{J_{n'}\left(\frac{j_{n'm'}j_{n'k}}{j_{n'}N_1}\right)2i^{n'}e^{+i\frac{2\pi n'p}{N_2}} e^{-i\frac{2\pi n'q'}{N_2}}}{J_{n'+1}^2(j_{n'm'})} \tag{A31}$$

Summation over p gives:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^- E_{q'm';pk}^+$$
$$= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_nN_1}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} 2i^{-n}e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n'=-M}^{M} \frac{J_{n'}\left(\frac{j_{n'm'}j_{n'k}}{j_{n'}N_1}\right)}{J_{n'+1}^2(j_{n'm'})} 2i^{n'}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n'q'}{N_2}} N_2\delta_{nn'}$$
$$= \sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nk}j_{nm}}{j_nN_1}\right)}{j_{nN_1}^2 J_{n+1}^2(j_{nk})} 2e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} \frac{J_n\left(\frac{j_{nm'}j_{nk}}{j_nN_1}\right)}{J_{n+1}^2(j_{nm'})} 2e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq'}{N_2}} \tag{A32}$$

Now summation over k gives the right hand side of (A32) and using the discrete orthogonality of the Bessel functions (Appendix A.4) gives for the right hand side:

$$\frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n=-M}^{M} \delta_{mm'} e^{+in\frac{2\pi q}{N_2}} e^{-i\frac{2\pi nq'}{N_2}} \tag{A33}$$

Then, finally summation over n and using the orthogonality of the discrete complex exponential (Appendix A.3) finally gives:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N_1-1} \sum_{p=-M}^{M} E_{qm;pk}^- E_{q'm';pk}^+ = \delta_{mm'}\delta_{qq'} \tag{A34}$$

as required.

References

1. Sneddon, N. *The Use of Integral Transforms*, 2nd ed.; McGraw Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1972.
2. Baddour, N. Operational and convolution properties of two-dimensional Fourier transforms in polar coordinates. *J. Opt. Soc. Am. A* **2009**, *26*, 1767–1777. [CrossRef]
3. Baddour, N. Operational and convolution properties of three-dimensional Fourier transforms in spherical polar coordinates. *J. Opt. Soc. Am. A* **2010**, *27*, 2144–2155. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
4. Baddour, N. Two-Dimensional Fourier Transforms in Polar Coordinates. *Adv. Imaging Electron Phys.* **2011**, *165*, 1–45.
5. Bracewell, R. *The Fourier Transform and its Applications*; McGraw Hill: New York, NY, USA, 1999.
6. Baddour, N.; Chouinard, U. Theory and operational rules for the discrete Hankel transform. *J. Opt. Soc. Am. A* **2015**, *32*, 611–622. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
7. Baddour, N.; Chouinard, U. Matlab Code for the Discrete Hankel Transform. *J. Open Res. Softw.* **2017**, *5*, 4.
8. Averbuch, A.; Coifman, R.R.; Donoho, D.L.; Elad, M.; Israeli, M. Fast and accurate Polar Fourier transform. *Appl. Comput. Harmon. Anal.* **2006**, *21*, 145–167. [CrossRef]
9. Abbas, S.A.; Sun, Q.; Foroosh, H. An Exact and Fast Computation of Discrete Fourier Transform for Polar and Spherical Grid. *IEEE Trans. Signal Process.* **2017**, *65*, 2033–2048. [CrossRef]
10. Fenn, M.; Kunis, S.; Potts, D. On the computation of the polar FFT. *Appl. Comput. Harmon. Anal.* **2007**, *22*, 257–263. [CrossRef]
11. Dutt, A.; Rokhlin, V. Fast Fourier Transforms for Nonequispaced Data. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **1993**, *14*, 1368–1393. [CrossRef]
12. Fourmont, K. Non-Equispaced Fast Fourier Transforms with Applications to Tomography. *J. Fourier Anal. Appl.* **2003**, *9*, 431–450. [CrossRef]
13. Dutt, A.; Rokhlin, V. Fast Fourier Transforms for Nonequispaced Data, II. *Appl. Comput. Harmon. Anal.* **1995**, *2*, 85–100. [CrossRef]
14. Potts, D.; Steidl, G.; Tasche, M. Fast Fourier Transforms for Nonequispaced Data: A Tutorial. In *Modern Sampling Theory: Mathematics and Applications*; Benedetto, J.J., Ferreira, P.J.S.G., Eds.; Birkhäuser Boston: Boston, MA, USA, 2001; pp. 247–270.
15. Fessler, J.A.; Sutton, B.P. Nonuniform fast Fourier transforms using min-max interpolation. *IEEE Trans. Signal Process.* **2003**, *51*, 560–574. [CrossRef]
16. Schroeder, J. Signal Processing via Fourier-Bessel Series Expansion. *Digit. Signal Process.* **1993**, *3*, 112–124. [CrossRef]
17. Epstein, C.L. How well does the finite Fourier transform approximate the Fourier transform? *Commun. Pure Appl. Math.* **2005**, *58*, 1421–1435. [CrossRef]
18. Levitan, B.M. Generalized Displacement Operators. In *Encyclopedia of Mathematics*; Springer: Heidelberg, Germany, 2002.
19. Baddour, N. Application of the generalized shift operator to the Hankel transform. *SpringerPlus* **2014**, *3*, 1–6. [CrossRef] [PubMed]
20. Belhadj, M.; Betancor, J.J. Hankel convolution operators on entire functions and distributions. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.* **2002**, *276*, 40–63. [CrossRef]
21. de Sousa Pinto, J. A Generalised Hankel Convolution. *SIAM J. Math. Anal.* **1985**, *16*, 1335–1346. [CrossRef]
22. Malgonde, S.P.; Gaikawad, G.S. On a generalized Hankel type convolution of generalized functions. *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. Math. Sci.* **2001**, *111*, 471–487. [CrossRef]
23. Arfken, G.; Weber, H. *Mathematical Methods for Physicists*; Elsevier Academic Press: New York, NY, USA, 2005.
24. Johnson, H.F. An improved method for computing a discrete Hankel transform. *Comput. Phys. Commun.* **1987**, *43*, 181–202. [CrossRef]
25. Watson, G.N. *A Treatise on the Theory of Bessel Functions*; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 1995.

Article

On the Fredholm Property of the Trace Operators Associated with the Elastic Layer Potentials

Giulio Starita and Alfonsina Tartaglione *

Department of Mathematics and Physics, University of Campania, 81100 Caserta, Italy; giulio.starita@unicampania.it
* Correspondence: alfonsina.tartaglione@unicampania.it

Abstract: We deal with the system of equations of linear elastostatics, governing the equilibrium configurations of a linearly elastic body. We recall the basics of the theory of the elastic layer potentials and we extend the trace operators associated with the layer potentials to suitable sets of singular densities. We prove that the trace operators defined, for example, on $W^{1-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ (with $k \geq 2$, $q \in (1,+\infty)$ and Ω an open connected set of $\mathbb{R}^3$ of class C^k), satisfy the Fredholm property.

1. Introduction

As is well-known [1], the equilibrium configurations of a homogeneous linearly elastic body $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ (see Notation and Functional spaces in Section 2) with no body forces acting on it, satisfy the differential system

$$\operatorname{div}\mathbb{C}[\nabla u] = 0, \tag{1}$$

where $\mathbb{C}$ is the elasticity tensor and u is the unknown displacement field. Wide efforts have been directed, from a theoretical point of view, to the problem of existence and uniqueness of solutions of system (1) when the displacement, the traction, or a combination of them are prescribed on the boundary (see, e.g., [2–5]). In all the cited references, the regularity of the boundary values is required, since the problem is formulated within the approach of the variational theory. Nevertheless, in view of possible applications, it is clear that the investigation of the boundary value problems when the data are singular is a notable and engaging issue. Now, since the elasticity tensor $\mathbb{C}$ is independent on the point, the analysis can be done by means of the elastic layer potentials defined through the fundamental solution (see Section 2). In particular, the proof of the existence and uniqueness of a solution of (1) passes through the possibility to apply the Fredholm alternative to the integral equation translating the boundary value problem which is examined. So, a preliminary step in the analysis of the existence and uniqueness problem is to show that the trace operators involved in the integral equations satisfy the so-called Fredholm property (see Notation and Functional spaces in Section 2). Obviously, this is well-understood when the densities are regular fields on the boundary (see, e.g., [6]). The aim of this paper is to show that the Fredholm property is also met for singular densities. For example, we prove that the trace operator associated with the single layer potential with density in $W^{1-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ is Fredholmian.

The paper is organized as follows. In Section 2 we recall some classical results about the system of homogeneous elastostatics and some notations on the involved functional spaces. In Sections 3 and 4 we

recall the most important facts about the layer potentials and we prove the Fredholm property for the associated trace operators.

2. Some Classical Results of Homogeneous Elastostatics

We essentially follow the notation in [1]. In particular, we denote by Lin the set of all tensors, i.e., linear applications from $\mathbb{R}^3$ to $\mathbb{R}^3$ and by Skw$\subset$Lin the set of all skew tensors. We use bold lower-case letters, like a and b, for vectors, and bold upper–case letters, like E, L and W for tensors.

Recall that the elasticity tensor $\mathbb{C}$, representing the elastic properties of the body, is a linear map from Lin $\to$ Lin such that

$$\mathbb{C}[W] = 0, \ \forall \, W \in \text{Skw} \tag{2}$$

and

$$E \cdot \mathbb{C}[L] = L \cdot \mathbb{C}[E], \quad \forall \, E, L \in \text{Lin}. \tag{3}$$

$\mathbb{C}$ is positive definite if

$$\pi[E] \geq |\text{sym}E|^2, \quad \forall E \in \text{Lin} \tag{4}$$

where

$$\pi[E] = E \cdot \mathbb{C}[E], \qquad \forall E \in \text{Lin} \tag{5}$$

and $\mathbb{C}$ is strongly elliptic if

$$\pi[a \otimes b] = (a \otimes b) \cdot \mathbb{C}[a \otimes b] > 0, \quad \forall \, a, b \neq 0. \tag{6}$$

- From now on we shall assume $\mathbb{C}$ to be at least strongly elliptic.

A weak solution of (1) (variational solution for $q = 2$) is a field $u \in W_{\text{loc}}^{1,q}(\Omega)$ such that

$$\int_{\Omega} \nabla \phi \cdot \mathbb{C}[\nabla u] = 0, \quad \forall \phi \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega). \tag{7}$$

It is well–known that for $\mathbb{C}$ strongly elliptic, every weak solution to (1) is analytical in Ω.

Equation (1) admits a fundamental solution $U(x - y)$ [7], i.e., a regular solution for all $x \neq y$ to

$$\text{div}\,\mathbb{C}[\nabla U(x - y)] = \delta(x - y)$$

where δ denotes the Dirac distribution, expressed by

$$U(z) = \frac{\Phi(z)}{|z|}, \tag{8}$$

with Φ homogeneous second–order tensor function of degree zero.

If Ω is a bounded domain, then a standard computation assures that every solution $u \in W^{1,q}(\Omega)$ of (1) is represented by the Somigliana formula [1]

$$u(x) = \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} U(x - \zeta)s(u)(\zeta)d\sigma_{\zeta} + \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \mathbb{C}[\nabla U(x - \zeta)](u \otimes n)(\zeta)d\sigma_{\zeta} \tag{9}$$

for all $x \in \Omega$, where

$$s(u) = \mathbb{C}[\nabla u]n \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \tag{10}$$

is the traction field on $\partial\Omega$ associated with u (from now on we denote by n the unit normal to $\partial\Omega$ exterior [resp. interior] with respect to Ω for Ω bounded [resp. exterior] domain). Starting from (9) and making use of Liouville's theorem (see, e.g., [8,9]) one proves that if $u \in W^{1,q}_{\text{loc}}(\overline{\Omega})$ is a solution of (1) in an exterior domain such that $u = o(r^2)$, then (9) becomes

$$u(x) = Ax + u_0 + \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} U(x-\zeta)s(u)(\zeta)\mathrm{d}\sigma_\zeta$$
$$+ \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \mathbb{C}[\nabla U(x-\zeta)](u \otimes n)(\zeta)\mathrm{d}\sigma_\zeta,$$

for suitable constants u_0 and A. Hence the following representation follows

$$u(x) = Ax + u_0 + U(x)\int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} s(u) + f(x), \tag{11}$$

with

$$\nabla_k f(x) = O(r^{-2-k}).$$

Clearly, for $A = u_0 = 0$,

$$u = O(r^{-2}) \iff \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} s(u) = 0. \tag{12}$$

Let $u \in W^{1,2}_{\text{loc}}(\overline{\Omega})$ be a variational solution of (1). If Ω is bounded, then the work and energy theorem follows [1]

$$\int_\Omega \pi[\nabla u] = \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} u \cdot s(u). \tag{13}$$

Let denote by $\mathfrak{R}$ the set of all (infinitesimal) rigid displacements.

If Ω is exterior and $u = \varrho + o(1)$, with $\varrho = u_0 + \omega \times x \in \mathfrak{R}$ assigned, (13) implies

$$\int_{\Omega_R} \pi[\nabla u] = \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} (u - \varrho) \cdot s(u) + \int_{\partial S_R} (u - \varrho) \cdot s(u).$$

Hence, taking into account that by (11) $(u - \varrho) \cdot s(u) = O(r^{-3})$, letting $R \to +\infty$ we obtain the work and energy theorem in exterior domains [1]

$$\int_\Omega \pi[\nabla u] = \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} u \cdot s(u) - u_0 \cdot \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} s(u) - \omega \cdot \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} x \times s(u). \tag{14}$$

The following result is due to L. Van Hove [10] (see also [1] p. 105).

Lemma 1. *It holds*

$$\int_\Omega |\nabla u|^2 \le \int_\Omega \pi[\nabla u],$$

for all $u \in D^{1,2}_0(\Omega)$, where $D^{1,2}_0(\Omega)$ denotes the completion of $C^\infty_0(\Omega)$ with respect to $\|\nabla \phi\|_{L^2(\Omega)}$.

Relations (13), (14) and Lemma 1 imply the following classical uniqueness results [1]: if u is a variational solution of (1), with $u = o(1)$ for Ω exterior, then

$$u_{|\partial\Omega} = 0 \Rightarrow u \equiv 0$$

and

$$\mathbb{C} \text{ positive definite,} \quad \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \boldsymbol{s}(\boldsymbol{u}) \le 0 \implies \boldsymbol{u} \begin{cases} \in \mathfrak{R}, & \Omega \text{ bounded,} \\ = \mathbf{0}, & \Omega \text{ exterior.} \end{cases}$$

- From now on uniqueness for the traction problem in bounded domains will be understood in the class of normalized displacement, *i.e*, the set of fields $\boldsymbol{u}$ such that (cf. [1] p. 110)

$$\int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \boldsymbol{u} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \boldsymbol{x} \times \boldsymbol{u} = \mathbf{0}.$$

We will need the following result.

Lemma 2. *If $\boldsymbol{u}$ is a variational solution of* (1), *then*

$$\|\boldsymbol{u}\|_{W^{k,2}(\Omega'')} \le c\|\boldsymbol{u}\|_{L^2(\tilde\Omega)} \tag{15}$$

for all bounded domains Ω'', $\tilde\Omega$ such that $\overline{\Omega''} \subset \tilde\Omega \subset \Omega$, with c independent of $\boldsymbol{u}$.

Proof. (15) is a simple consequence of the classical Caccioppoli's inequality (see, e.g., [11])

$$\int_{S_R(x_0)} |\nabla \boldsymbol{u}|^2 \le \frac{c}{R^2} \int_{S_{2R}(x_0) \setminus S_R(x_0)} |\boldsymbol{u}|^2$$

for all $x_0 \in \Omega$ and $R < \text{dist}(x_0, \partial\Omega)/2$, with c independent of $\boldsymbol{u}$, taking into account that any derivative of $\boldsymbol{u}$ is a solution of (1) and making use of Sobolev's lemma. $\quad\square$

Notation and Functional spaces – The body is identified with the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ it occupies in a reference configuration. We suppose Ω to be a bounded or exterior domain of class C^k ($k \ge 2$). We denote by o the origin of the reference frame; we suppose $o \in \Omega$ [resp. $o \in \mathsf{C}\overline{\Omega}$] for Ω bounded [resp. exterior] domain. For every $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ we set $\boldsymbol{x} = x - o$; $r = |x|$. Unless otherwise specified, in the formulas including integrals, the variable of integration is a point of the region indicated by the integral (Ω, $\partial\Omega$, etc.); we shall omit it when it will be clear from the context. If Ω is exterior, we set $\Omega_R = \Omega \cap S_R$, where $S_R = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : r < R\}$ and, as usual, if $f(x)$ and $g(r) > 0$ are two functions on Ω, by $f = o(g)$ and $f = O(g)$ we mean that $\lim_{r \to +\infty} f(x)/g(r) = 0$ and $|f(x)| \le cg(r)$.

$W^{k,q}(\Omega)$ is the Sobolev space of all $\varphi \in L^1_{\text{loc}}(\Omega)$ such that $\|\varphi\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} = \|\varphi\|_{L^q(\Omega)} + \|\nabla_k \varphi\|_{L^q(\Omega)} < +\infty$; $W^{k,q}_0(\Omega)$ is the completion of $C^\infty_0(\Omega)$ with respect to $\|\varphi\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)}$ and $W^{-k,q'}(\Omega)$ is its dual space. $W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ is the trace space of $W^{k,q}(\Omega)$ and $W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$ is its dual space. We set

$$\int_{\Omega}^{\star} f\varphi \quad \left[\int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} f\varphi\right]$$

to denote (say) the value of the functional $f \in W^{-k,q'}(\Omega)$ $[f \in W^{-k,q'}(\partial\Omega)]$ at $\varphi \in W^{k,q}_0(\Omega)$ $[\varphi \in W^{k,q}(\partial\Omega)]$. Of course, if $f\varphi$ is integrable, then $\int \equiv \int^{\star}$. If Ω is of class C^k, since $W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega) \hookrightarrow C^{k-1,\mu}(\partial\Omega)$, for $kq > 3$ and $\mu = 1 - 3/q$, we have that $[C^{k-1,\mu}(\partial\Omega)]' \hookrightarrow W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$. Then, in particular, $W^{-1,q}(\partial\Omega)$, $q \in (1,2)$ contains the space of all Borel measures on $\partial\Omega$.

If $\mathcal{F}(\Omega)$ is a functional space in Ω, we denote by $\mathcal{F}_{\text{loc}}(\Omega)$ the set of all functions that belong to $\mathcal{F}(K)$ for every compact set $K \subset \Omega$.

Let $\mathcal{B}$, $\mathcal{D}$ be two Banach spaces and denote by $\mathcal{B}'$, $\mathcal{D}'$ their dual spaces. A linear and continuous map $\mathcal{T} : \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{D}$ is said to be Fredholmian (or satisfies the Fredholm property) if its range is closed and $\dim \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{T} = \dim \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{T}' \in \mathbb{N}_0$, where $\mathcal{T}' : \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{B}'$ is the adjoint of $\mathcal{T}$. A Fredholmian operator satisfies the classical Fredholm alternative and a well–known result of J. Peetre [12] assures that $\mathcal{T}$ is Fredholmian if there is a compact operator $\mathcal{C}$ from $\mathcal{B}$ into a Banach space $\mathcal{G}$ such that

$$\|u\|_{\mathcal{B}} \le c \left\{ \|\mathcal{T}[u]\|_{\mathcal{D}} + \|\mathcal{C}[u]\|_{\mathcal{G}} \right\}$$

and $\dim \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{T} = \dim \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{T}'$.

3. The Trace Operators Associated with the Simple Layer Potential

Every integral at right hand side of (9) is an analytic solution of (1) in $\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus \partial\Omega$. More in general, for every $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in L^1(\partial\Omega)$ the field

$$v[\boldsymbol{\psi}](x) = \int_{\partial\Omega} \boldsymbol{U}(x - \zeta) \boldsymbol{\psi}(\zeta) \mathrm{d}\sigma_\zeta \tag{16}$$

defines an analytical solution of (1) in $\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus \partial\Omega$ known as simple layer potential with density $\boldsymbol{\psi}$. Note that $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]$ behaves at infinity as the fundamental solution $\boldsymbol{U}$. In particular,

$$\nabla_k v[\boldsymbol{\psi}](x) = O(r^{-1-k}) \tag{17}$$

and

$$\int_{\partial\Omega} \boldsymbol{\psi} = \boldsymbol{0} \;\Rightarrow\; \nabla_k v[\boldsymbol{\psi}](x) = O(r^{-2-k}). \tag{18}$$

It is well–known that for a density $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$

$$\|v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \le c \|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{19}$$

with c independent of $\boldsymbol{\psi}$, the limit

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0^\pm} v[\boldsymbol{\psi}](\xi - \epsilon l(\xi)) = \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}](\xi) \tag{20}$$

exists for almost all $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ (by the embedding theorem if $q > 3/k$, then (20) holds for all ξ) and axis l in a ball tangent (on the side of n) to $\partial\Omega$ at ξ and defines the trace of the simple layer potential with density $\boldsymbol{\psi}$ [13]. As a consequence, $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]$ is continuous in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Moreover, the map

$$\mathcal{S} : W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega) \tag{21}$$

is continuous; accordingly,

$$\|\mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \le c \|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{22}$$

for some constant c depending only on k, q and Ω. Let $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in W^{1-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ and let $\boldsymbol{\psi}_k$ be a regular sequence which converges to $\boldsymbol{\psi}$ strongly in $W^{1-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$. By (22)

$$\left| \int_{\partial\Omega} \boldsymbol{\phi} \cdot \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \right| = \left| \int_{\partial\Omega} \boldsymbol{\psi}_k \cdot \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\phi}] \right| \le c \|\boldsymbol{\psi}_k\|_{W^{1-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \|\boldsymbol{\phi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)}.$$

Therefore, by well-known results of functional analysis, $\mathcal{S}$ can be extended to a linear and continuous operator

$$\mathcal{S}' : W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega),$$

which is the adjoint of $\mathcal{S}$ and defines the trace of the simple layer with density $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$:

$$v[\boldsymbol{\psi}](x) = \int_{\partial\Omega}^{\star} \boldsymbol{U}(x - \zeta)\boldsymbol{\psi}(\zeta)\mathrm{d}\sigma_{\zeta}. \tag{23}$$

By (19) it is not difficult to see that

$$\|v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{2-k,q'}(\Omega)} \leq c\|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)}. \tag{24}$$

The traction field associated with the simple layer potential (16) with density $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ is defined on both "faces" of $\partial\Omega$ by the limit

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0^+} \mathbb{C}[\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]](\xi \mp \epsilon l(\xi))\boldsymbol{n}(\xi) = \mathcal{T}^{\pm}[\boldsymbol{\psi}](\xi) \tag{25}$$

for almost all $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ (by the embedding theorem if $q > 3/(k-1)$, then (25) holds for all ξ) and axis l in a ball tangent (on the side of $\boldsymbol{n}$) to $\partial\Omega$ at ξ. Moreover,

$$\|\mathcal{T}^{\pm}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \leq c\|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{26}$$

for some constant c depending only on k, q and Ω, and the classical jump condition holds

$$\boldsymbol{\psi} = \mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}] - \mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}]. \tag{27}$$

We now show that the trace operator $\mathcal{S}$ is Fredholmian. To this aim we make use of the following well–known results (cf. [11,14–18]).

Lemma 3. *Let Ω be a bounded domain of class C^k ($k \geq 2$). If $\hat{u} \in W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$, $q \in (1, +\infty)$, and $\boldsymbol{\phi} \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega)$, then the displacement problem*

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{div}\mathbb{C}[\nabla u] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= \hat{u} \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{aligned} \tag{28}$$

has a unique solution $u \in W^{k,q}(\Omega)$ and

$$\|u\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \leq c \left\{ \|\hat{u}\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\boldsymbol{\phi}\|_{W^{k-2,q}(\Omega)} \right\}. \tag{29}$$

Lemma 4. *Let Ω be a bounded domain of class C^k ($k \geq 2$). If $\hat{s} \in W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$, $q \in (1, +\infty)$ satisfies*

$$\int_{\partial\Omega} \varrho \cdot \hat{s} = 0, \quad \forall \varrho \in \mathfrak{R},$$

and $\boldsymbol{\phi} \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega)$, then the traction problem

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{div}\mathbb{C}[\nabla u] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ s(u) &= \hat{s} \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

has a unique normalized solution $u \in W^{k,q}(\Omega)$ and

$$\|u\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \leq c \left\{ \|\hat{s}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\boldsymbol{\phi}\|_{W^{k-2,q}(\Omega)} \right\}. \tag{31}$$

The following theorem holds true.

Theorem 1. *Let Ω be a bounded or an exterior domain of class C^k ($k \geq 2$), $k \in \mathbb{N}$. The operator $\mathcal{S}$ is Fredholmian and $\operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{S} = \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{S}' = \{0\}$.*

Proof. Let Ω be bounded. By the trace theorem, (20) and classical interior estimates (see Lemma 2) from (27) it follows

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \\
&\leq c\big\{\|v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} + \|v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\complement\Omega \cap S_R)}\big\} \\
&\leq c\big\{\|\mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}\|\big\},
\end{aligned}
\tag{32}
$$

where $S_R (\supset \overline{\Omega})$ is a ball of radius R centered at o and $\mathcal{C}$ is a completely continuous map from $W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ in a Banach space. Hence by Peetre's result (see Notation and Functional spaces in Section 2) it follows that $\mathcal{S}$ has a closed range. If $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{S}$ then by (17) an integration by parts gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_\Omega \pi[\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]] &= \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}] \cdot \mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = 0, \\
\int_{\complement\Omega} \pi[\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]] &= -\int_{\partial\Omega} \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}] \cdot \mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = 0.
\end{aligned}
\tag{33}
$$

Hence by Lemma 1 it follows that $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = 0$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ so that by (27) $\boldsymbol{\psi} = 0$.

Let $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in \operatorname{Kern} \mathcal{S}'$ and let $\{\boldsymbol{\psi}_k\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a regular sequence which converges to $\boldsymbol{\psi}$ strongly in $W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$. Of course, from (24) it follows that $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \to v[\boldsymbol{\psi}]$ strongly in $W^{2-k,q'}(\Omega)$. Let z be the solution of

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{div} \mathbb{C}[\nabla z] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\
z &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega.
\end{aligned}
\tag{34}
$$

Then, integrating by parts we have

$$
\int_\Omega v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot s(z).
$$

Hence letting $k \to +\infty$ it follows that

$$
\int_\Omega^\star v[\boldsymbol{\psi}] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = 0,
$$

for all $\boldsymbol{\phi} \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ so that $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = 0$ in Ω.

It is well-known that the system

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{div} \mathbb{C}[\nabla z] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \complement\overline{\Omega}, \\
z &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega
\end{aligned}
\tag{35}
$$

has a unique solution $z \in D_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$. Let g be a regular function vanishing outside S_{2R}, equal to 1 in S_R and such that $|\nabla g| \leq c/R$ for $R \gg \operatorname{diam}\Omega$. Then integrating by parts we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\complement\Omega} g v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} &= -\int_{\partial\Omega} \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot s(z) \\
&\quad + \int_{\complement\Omega} \nabla g \cdot \big\{\mathbb{C}[\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]] z - \mathbb{C}[\nabla z] v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]\big\}.
\end{aligned}
\tag{36}
$$

By Schwarz's inequality and the properties of g

$$\left| \int_{\complement\Omega} \nabla g \cdot \mathbb{C}[\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]] z \right| \le \frac{c}{R} \int_{S_{2R}\setminus S_R} |\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]||z|$$
$$\le \frac{c}{R} \|\nabla v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]\|_{L^2(S_{2R}\setminus S_R)} \|z\|_{L^2(S_{2R}\setminus S_R)}.$$

Likewise,

$$\left| \int_{\complement\Omega} \nabla g \cdot \mathbb{C}[\nabla z] v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \right| \le \frac{c}{R} \|[\nabla z]\|_{L^2(S_{2R}\setminus S_R)} \|v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]\|_{L^2(S_{2R}\setminus S_R)}.$$

Therefore, taking into account Hardy's inequality

$$\int_{\complement\Omega} \frac{|h|^2}{r^2} \le c \int_{\complement\Omega} |\nabla h|^2$$

for all $h \in D_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$, we can let $R \to +\infty$ in (36) to have

$$\int_{\complement\Omega} v[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = - \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{s}(z).$$

Hence letting $k \to +\infty$ yields

$$\int_{\complement\Omega}^{\star} v[\boldsymbol{\psi}] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = 0 \tag{37}$$

so that $v[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$ in $\complement\Omega$ and (27) and the above results imply that $\boldsymbol{\psi} = \boldsymbol{0}$.

The proof of the Lemma for Ω exterior follows the same steps so it is omitted. $\square$

4. The Trace Operators Associated with the Double Layer Potential

For every $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in L^1(\partial\Omega)$ the field

$$w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}](x) = \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathbb{C}[\nabla U(x-\zeta)](\boldsymbol{\varphi} \otimes \boldsymbol{n})(\zeta) d\sigma_\zeta \tag{38}$$

defines analytical solutions of (1) in $\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus \partial\Omega$ and is known as double layer potential with density $\boldsymbol{\varphi}$. Note that

$$\nabla_k w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}](x) = O(r^{-2-k}). \tag{39}$$

The trace on $\partial\Omega$ of a double layer potential with density $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ is defined on both "faces" of $\partial\Omega$ by the limit

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0^+} w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}](\xi \mp \epsilon l(\xi)) = \mathcal{W}^{\pm}[\boldsymbol{\psi}](\xi) \tag{40}$$

for almost all $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ (by the embedding theorem if $q > 3/k$, then (40) holds for all ξ) and axis l in a ball tangent (on the side of $\boldsymbol{n}$) to $\partial\Omega$ at ξ. Moreover,

$$\|\mathcal{W}^{\pm}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \le c\|\boldsymbol{\varphi}\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{41}$$

and for Ω bounded

$$\|w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \le c\|\boldsymbol{\varphi}\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{42}$$

for some constant c depending only on k, q and Ω. The jump condition

$$\boldsymbol{\varphi} = \mathcal{W}^+[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] - \mathcal{W}^-[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] \tag{43}$$

holds and the classical Liapounov–Tauber theorem assures that the traction field associated with $w[\varphi]$ assumes the same value on both "faces" of $\partial\Omega$

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0^\pm} \mathbb{C}[\nabla w[\varphi]](\xi - \epsilon l(\xi))n(\xi) = \mathcal{Z}[\varphi](\xi) \tag{44}$$

and defines a linear, continuous operator

$$\mathcal{Z} : W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$$

i.e.,

$$\|\mathcal{Z}[\varphi]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \le c\|\varphi\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \tag{45}$$

for some constant c depending only on k, q and Ω. A standard argument shows that $\mathcal{W}^\pm$ and $\mathcal{T}^\mp$ are adjoint each other. Hence, for instance,

$$\mathcal{W}^- : W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$$

is the adjoint of

$$\mathcal{T}^+ : W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$$

and defines the trace of a double layer potential $w[\varphi]$ with density in $W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$:

$$w[\varphi](x) = \int_{\partial\Omega}^\star \mathbb{C}[\nabla U(x - \zeta)](\varphi \otimes n)(\zeta)d\sigma_\zeta.$$

As we did for the trace operator of the single layer potential we can show that the adjoint operator of $\mathcal{Z}$

$$\mathcal{Z}' : W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$$

is the trace of the traction field of the double layer potential $w[\varphi]$ with density $\varphi \in W^{2-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$.

As for the operator $\mathcal{S}$ in the previous section, starting from Lemma 3, 4, we show that the operators $\mathcal{W}^\pm$, $\mathcal{T}^\pm$ and $\mathcal{Z}$ are Fredholmian.

Theorem 2. *Let Ω be a bounded or an exterior domain of class C^k ($k \ge 2$). The operators $\mathcal{W}^\pm$, $\mathcal{T}^\pm$ are Fredholmian,* Kern $\mathcal{W}^+ =$ Kern $\mathcal{T}^- = \{0\}$ *and*

$$\text{Kern } \mathcal{T}^+ = \begin{cases} \{\psi : \mathcal{S}[\psi] \in \mathfrak{R}\}, & \Omega \text{ bounded,} \\ \{0\}, & \Omega \text{ exterior,} \end{cases}$$
$$\text{Kern } \mathcal{W}^- = \begin{cases} \mathfrak{R}, & \Omega \text{ bounded,} \\ \{0\}, & \Omega \text{ exterior.} \end{cases} \tag{46}$$

Proof. Let Ω be bounded. By Lemmas 3 and 4, the trace theorem and interior estimates

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathcal{W}^+[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \leq c\|\mathcal{Z}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \\
&\leq c\|\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\complement\overline{\Omega}\cap S_R)} \leq c\{\|\mathcal{W}^-[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}\|\} \\
\|\mathcal{W}^-[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\overline{\Omega}\cap S_R)} \leq c\{\|\mathcal{Z}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}_1\|\} \\
&\leq c\{\|\mathcal{W}^+[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}_1\|\} \\[4pt]
\|\mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} \leq c\|\mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \\
&\leq c\|\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\complement\overline{\Omega}\cap S_R)} \leq c\{\|\mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}_2\|\} \\
\|\mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\complement\overline{\Omega}\cap S_R)} \leq c\{\|\mathcal{S}[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}_3\|\} \\
&\leq c\{\|\mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}_3\|\}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{C}_1$ are completely continuous maps from $W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ in a Banach space and $\mathcal{C}_2$, $\mathcal{C}_3$ completely continuous maps from $W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ in a Banach space. Therefore, by (42), (43) and (27)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\boldsymbol{\varphi}\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq c\{\|\mathcal{W}^\pm[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}'\|\} \\
\|\boldsymbol{\psi}\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq c\{\|\mathcal{T}^\pm[\boldsymbol{\psi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}''\|\}
\end{aligned}
$$

for some completely continuous operators. Hence it follows that $\mathcal{W}^\pm$ and $\mathcal{T}^\pm$ have closed ranges.

If $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in \text{Kern}\,\mathcal{W}^+$. By the uniqueness theorem $\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$ in Ω so that $\mathcal{Z}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$. Hence again by uniqueness $\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$ in $\complement\Omega$ so that $\boldsymbol{\varphi} = \boldsymbol{0}$ on $\partial\Omega$. If $\boldsymbol{\psi} \in \text{Kern}\,\mathcal{T}^-$, with $\mathcal{T}^- : W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega) \to W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$, consider a regular sequence $\boldsymbol{\psi}_k$ which converges to $\boldsymbol{\psi}$ strongly in $W^{1-k-1/q',q'}(\partial\Omega)$ and the solution $\boldsymbol{z}$ of

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{div}\mathbb{C}[\nabla \boldsymbol{z}] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \complement\overline{\Omega}, \\
\boldsymbol{s}(\boldsymbol{z}) &= \boldsymbol{0} \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega
\end{aligned}
\tag{47}
$$

for $\boldsymbol{\phi} \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$. Integrating by parts and taking into account (17), we have

$$
\int_{\complement\Omega} \boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = -\int_{\partial\Omega} \boldsymbol{z} \cdot \mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}_k]].
$$

Hence, letting $k \to +\infty$, it follows that $\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$ in $\complement\Omega$, so that $\mathcal{T}^-[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$. On the other hand, by uniqueness $\boldsymbol{v}[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$ in Ω so that $\mathcal{T}^+[\boldsymbol{\psi}] = \boldsymbol{0}$. Hence by (27) $\boldsymbol{\psi} = \boldsymbol{0}$. The proof of the other properties are quite analogous so it is omitted. $\quad\square$

Theorem 3. *Let Ω be a bounded domain or an exterior domain of class C^k ($k \geq 2$). The operator $\mathcal{Z}$ is Fredholmian and*

$$
\text{Kern}\,\mathcal{Z} = \text{Kern}\,\mathcal{Z}' = \mathfrak{R}.
\tag{48}
$$

Proof. Let Ω be bounded. The trace theorem and interior estimates yield

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\boldsymbol{\varphi}\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} &\leq \|\mathcal{W}^+[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{W}^-[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} \\
&\leq c\{\|\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\Omega)} + \|\boldsymbol{w}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k,q}(\complement\Omega\cap S_R)}\} \\
&\leq c\{\|\mathcal{Z}[\boldsymbol{\varphi}]\|_{W^{k-1-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)} + \|\mathcal{C}\|\},
\end{aligned}
\tag{49}
$$

with $\mathcal{C}$ completely continuous map from $W^{k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ in a Banach space. Therefore, by Peetre's result, $\mathcal{Z}$ has closed range.

Let $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in \text{Kern } \mathcal{Z}$. By the uniqueness theorem $w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] = \mathbf{0}$ in $\mathcal{C}\Omega$ and $w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] \in \mathfrak{R}$ in Ω. Therefore, by (43), it follows that $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in \mathfrak{R}$. On the other hand, a direct inspection shows that $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in \mathfrak{R}$ belongs to Kern $\mathcal{Z}$.

Let now $\boldsymbol{\varphi} \in \text{Kern } \mathcal{Z}'$ and consider the sequence $\boldsymbol{\varphi}_k$ strongly converging to $\boldsymbol{\varphi}$ in $W^{2-k-1/q,q}(\partial\Omega)$ and the solution z of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{div}\, \mathbb{C}[\nabla z] &= \boldsymbol{\phi} \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ s(z) &= \mathbf{0} \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \tag{50}$$

with $\boldsymbol{\phi}$ such that

$$\int_{\Omega} \varrho \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = 0, \quad \forall\, \varrho \in \mathfrak{R}.$$

An integration by parts yields

$$\int_{\Omega} w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}_k] \cdot \boldsymbol{\phi} = -\int_{\partial\Omega} z \cdot s(w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}_k]).$$

Hence, letting $k \to +\infty$, it follows that $w[\boldsymbol{\varphi}] \in \mathfrak{R}$ in Ω so that, by (43), Kern $\mathcal{Z}' = \text{Kern } \mathcal{Z} = \mathfrak{R}$. The proof for exterior domains is analogous to the previous one, so it is omitted. □

5. Conclusions

In this article we dealt with some properties related to the trace operators associated with the elastic layer potentials. In particular, we proved that their extensions to some sets of singular densities satisfy the Fredholm property (Theorems 1–3). These results represent an important step in the analysis of the system of linear elastostatics, as they could lead to the existence and uniqueness of solutions to the main boundary value problems with singular data, to which we are going to dedicate our next researches.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

1. Gurtin, M.E. The linear theory of elasticity. in *Handbuch der Physik*; Truesedell, C., Ed.; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1972.
2. Fichera, G. Sull'esistenza e sul calcolo delle soluzioni dei problemi al contorno, relativi all'equilibrio di un corpo elastico. *Annali della Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa* **1950**, *4* , 35–99.
3. Fichera, G. Existence theorems in elasticity. In *Handbuch der Physik*; Truesedell, C., Ed.; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1972.
4. Russo, R. An extension of the basic theorems of linear elastostatics to exterior domains. *Ann. Univ. Ferrara, Sez. VII Sci. Mat.* **1988**, *34*, 101–119.
5. Russo, R. On the traction problem in linear elastostatics. *J. Elast.* **1992**, *27*, 57–68. [CrossRef]
6. Kupradze, V.D.; Gegelia, T.G.; Basheleishvili, M.O.; Burchuladze, T.V. *Three Dimensional Problems of the Mathematical Theory of Elasticity and Thermoelasticity*; North–Holland: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1979.
7. John, F. *Plane Waves and Spherical Means Applied to Partial Differential Equations*; Interscience: New York, NY, USA, 1955.
8. Duvant, G.; Lions, J.L. *Inequalities in Mechanics and Physics*; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1976.

9. Russo, R. On Stokes' problem. In *Advances in Mathematical Fluid Mechanics*; Rannacher, R., Sequeira, A., Eds.; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 2010; pp. 473–511.

10. Van Hove, L. Sur l'extension de la condition de Legendre du calcul des variations aux intégrales multiples à plusieurs fonctions inconnues. *Proc. Koninkl. Ned. Adad. Wetenschap.* **1947**, *50*, 18–23.

11. Giusti, E. *Direct Methods in the Calculus of Variations*; Word Scientific: Singapore, 2004.

12. Schechter, M. *Principles of Functional Analysis*; Graduate Studies in Mathematics; American Mathematical Society: Providence, RI, USA, 2002.

13. Miranda, C. *Partial Differential Equations of Elliptic Type*; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1970.

14. Lions, J.L. Magenes, E. *Non–Homogeneous Boundary—Value Problems and Applications*; Springer-Verlag: Berlin/Heidelberg, Germany, 1972; Volume I.

15. Nečas, J. *Les Méthodes Directes en Théorie des Équations Élliptiques*; Masson: Paris, France; Academie: Prague, Czech Republic, 1967.

16. Russo, A.; Tartaglione, A. Strong uniqueness theorems and the Phragmen-Lindelof principle in nonhomogeneous elastostatics. *J. Elast.* **2011**, *102*, 133–149. [CrossRef]

17. Russo, A.; Tartaglione, A. On the contact problem of classical elasticity. *J. Elast.* **2010**, *99*, 19–38. [CrossRef]

18. Tartaglione, A. On existence, uniqueness and the maximum modulus theorem in plane linear elastostatics for exterior domains. *Ann. Univ. Ferrara, Sez. VII Sci. Mat.* **2001**, *47*, 89–106.

Article

Probabilistic Interpretation of Solutions of Linear Ultraparabolic Equations

Michael D. Marcozzi

Department of Mathematical Sciences, University of Nevada Las Vegas, Las Vegas, NV 89154-4020, USA;
michael.marcozzi@unlv.edu

Abstract: We demonstrate the existence, uniqueness and Galerkin approximatation of linear ultraparabolic terminal value/infinite-horizon problems on unbounded spatial domains. Furthermore, we provide a probabilistic interpretation of the solution in terms of the expectation of an associated ultradiffusion process.

1. Introduction

The connection between parabolic equations and diffusion processes is well understood; the same cannot be said for ultraparabolic equations and ultradiffusion processes. Until recently, theoretical results have been fairly limited relative to the existence and uniqueness of solutions to ultraparabolic equations, deriving from two methodologies. In one, the analysis is affected along the characteristic of the first-order temporal operator, requiring that the speed of propagation varies only spatially. Such an approach was developed by Piskunov [1] in the classical case and extended by Lions [2] to the generalized sense. The second approach is based on the method of fundamental solutions and was implemented by Il'in [3] for the classical Cauchy problem and extended to more general domains via convolution by Vladimirov and Drožžinov [4], albeit at the expense of necessitating constant coefficients in the operator. Recently, however, using energic techniques Marcozzi [5] has established the well-posedness and Galerkin approximation of the generalized solution (strong and weak) to the terminal value problem for square integrable data on bounded temporal and spatial domains. We extend here the results of [5] to linear ultraparabolic terminal value/infinite-horizon temporal problems posed on unbounded spatial domains. We then provide a probabilistic interpretation of the solution in terms of the expectation of an associated ultradiffusion process.

Historically, the connection between the expectation of ultradiffusion processess and the solution to ultradiffusion equations arose from the work of Kolmogorov [6,7] and Uhlenbeck and Ornstein [8] in relation to Brownian motion in phase space—the same with respect to Chandrasekhar [9] in the context of boundary layers and Marshak [10] relative to the Bolzmann equation. A contemporary example may be found in the formulation of so-called Asian options from mathematical finance (cf. [11]), which obtains theoretical context with the present results. The paper is organized as follows. In Section 2, we consider deterministic aspects of the problem, while, in Section 3, the probabilistic interpretation is presented. Appendix A introduces certain regularity results, which, while essential for the analysis, are too extensive to prove in full. In Appendix B, we show formally that the ultraparabolic/ultradiffusion association is locally that of a parameterized parabolic/diffusion.

2. Approximation Solvability

We consider here the existence, uniqueness and approximation of the terminal value/infinite horizon problem on unbounded spatial domains for the linear ultraparabolic equations. To this

end, let $\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta} = (0,T) \times (0,\infty)$, $\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta,x} = (0,\infty) \times (-\infty,\infty)$, $\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,x} = (0,T) \times (-\infty,\infty)$, and finally $\tilde{\mathcal{Q}} = (0,T) \times (0,\infty) \times (-\infty,\infty)$, for some finite $T > 0$. The functional setting will be the weighted Sobolev spaces defined as follows. Spatially, we let

$$m_\mu(x) = e^{-\mu|x|},$$

such that

$$H_\mu = \left\{ v(x) \mid m_\mu(x)\,v(x) \in L_2(\mathbb{R}) \right\}$$

and

$$V_\mu = \left\{ v \in H_\mu \mid \partial v(x)/\partial x \in H_\mu \right\},$$

with their respective norms

$$|v|_\mu = \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}} [m_\mu(x)\,v(x)]^2 dx \right\}^{1/2},$$

for all $v \in H_\mu$, and

$$\|v\|_\mu = \left\{ |v|_\mu^2 + |\partial v/\partial x|_\mu^2 \right\}^{1/2},$$

for all $v \in V_\mu$. The relation "$V_\mu \subseteq H_\mu \subset V_\mu^*$" constitutes an *evolution triple*.

Temporally, let $\boldsymbol{t} = (t,\vartheta)$ and

$$n_\gamma(\boldsymbol{t}) = e^{-\gamma\vartheta},$$

such that

$$\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu} = L_\gamma^2(\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}; V_\mu) = \left\{ u(\boldsymbol{t}) \mid n_\gamma(\boldsymbol{t})\,u(\boldsymbol{t}) \in L_2(\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}; V_\mu) \right\},$$

which we equip with the norm

$$\|u\|_{\gamma,\mu} = \|u\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}} = \left\{ \int_{\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}} \|n_\gamma(\boldsymbol{t})\,u(\boldsymbol{t})\|_\mu^2\,d\mathcal{O} \right\}^{1/2},$$

for all $u \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$. We associate with $\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$ the dual space

$$\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^* = L_\gamma^2(\mathcal{O}_{t,\vartheta}; V_\mu^*)$$

and the norm $\|u^*\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^*}$, for all $u^* \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$. In addition, let

$$W_{\gamma,\mu} = W_\gamma^1(\mathcal{O}_{t,\vartheta}; V_\mu, H_\mu) = \left\{ u \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu} : \nabla_t(u) \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^* \times \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^* \right\},$$

where $\nabla_t(u) = (\partial u/\partial t, \partial u/\partial \vartheta)$, which we associate with the norm

$$\|u\|_{W_{\gamma,\mu}} = \left(\|u\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}}^2 + \|\partial u/\partial t\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^*}^2 + \|\partial u/\partial \vartheta\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^*}^2 \right)^2,$$

for all $u \in W_{\gamma,\mu}$. Finally, we define

$$L_\gamma^2((0,\infty); H_\mu) = \left\{ u(\vartheta) \mid n_\gamma(\boldsymbol{t})\,u(\boldsymbol{t}) \in L_2(\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}; H_\mu) \right\}.$$

We consider the *ultraparabolic t-terminal value/infinite ϑ-horizon problem* for $u \in W_{\gamma,\mu}$ satisfying the evolutionary equation

$$-\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial (bu)}{\partial \vartheta} + A(\boldsymbol{t})\,u = f \quad a.e. \text{ on } \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}, \tag{1}$$

subject to the terminal condition

$$u(T, \vartheta, x) = v(\vartheta, x) \ \ a.e. \text{ on } \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta, x}, \tag{2}$$

where

$$A(t) u = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(a_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) + a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + a_0 u,$$

for given

$$a_0, a_1, a_2 \in L_\infty(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}), \ b \in C^1\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right), \tag{3}$$

$$0 < \underline{b} \le b(t, x) \le 2\overline{b}, \ \partial b/\partial\vartheta \text{ bounded}, \tag{4}$$

$$v \in L_\gamma^2((0, \infty); H_\mu), \tag{5}$$

$$f \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma, \mu}^*, \tag{6}$$

$$0 < \alpha \le a_2 \text{ and } 0 < \beta \le a_0, \tag{7}$$

for some sufficiently large β.

The *generalized problem* associated with (1)–(2) is: supposing (3)–(7), find $u \in W_{\gamma, \mu}$ satisfying

$$-\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(u(t) | v \right)_{H_\mu} - \frac{\partial}{\partial\vartheta} \left(b(t) u(t) | v \right)_{H_\mu} + a_\mu \left(t; u(t), v \right) = \langle f(t), v \rangle_{V_\mu}, \tag{8}$$

for almost all $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}$, such that

$$u(T_\vartheta) = v(\vartheta) \text{ on } \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta, x}, \tag{9}$$

where $(u|v)_X$ is the scalar product canonically defined on the Hilbert space X, $\langle f(t), v \rangle_{V_\mu}$ denotes the value of the linear functional $f(t) \in V_\mu^*$ at $v \in V_\mu$, $T_\vartheta = (T, \vartheta)$ and

$$a_\mu \left(t; u, v \right) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} a_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} m_\mu^2 \, dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}} a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} v m_\mu^2 \, dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}} a_0 u v m_\mu^2 \, dx,$$

for all $u, v \in V_\mu$ and $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}$. In Equation (8), the expressions $\partial/\partial t$ and $\partial/\partial\vartheta$ denote generalized derivatives on $\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}$; that is, Equation (8) means explicitly

$$\int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}} (u(t) | v)_{H_\mu} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \varphi(t) n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O} + \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}} (b(t) u(t) | v)_{H_\mu} \frac{\partial}{\partial\vartheta} \varphi(t) n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O} \tag{10}$$

$$+ \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}} a \left(t; u(t), v \right) \varphi(t) \, d\mathcal{O} = \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}} \langle f(t), v \rangle_{V_\mu} \varphi(t) n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O},$$

for all test functions $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta})$.

For $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}$, the mapping $a_\mu(t) : V_\mu \times V_\mu$ is bilinear and bounded; we likewise assume that $a_\mu(t)$ is strongly positive;

$$c \|u(t)\|_\mu^2 \le a_\mu(t; u(t), u(t)). \tag{11}$$

Remark 1. *We note that Equations (1)–(2) is an* infinite horizon *problem in ϑ. That is, the far-field behavior of ϑ is implicitly defined relative to the weight γ.*

Remark 2. *In general, the validity of (11) will be problem dependent, predicated upon the spatial asymptotic behavior of u.*

For $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}$, we define the operator $A_\mu(t) : V_\mu \to V_\mu^*$ such that

$$\left\langle A_\mu(t)\, u, v \right\rangle_{V_\mu} = a_\mu(t; u, v)\,, \tag{12}$$

from which it follows that $A_\mu(t)$ is linear, continuous, and strongly monotone by (11). In particular, we have

$$\|A(t)\, u\|_{\mathcal{X}^*_{\gamma,\mu}} \le C\|u\|_{\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}} \tag{13}$$

and

$$c\|u\|^2_\mu \le \left\langle A(t)\, u, u \right\rangle_{V_\mu}\,, \tag{14}$$

for all $u \in V_\mu$ and $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}$.

Lemma 1. *Given (3)–(7), the formulations (1)–(2) and (8)–(9) are equivalent.*

Proof of Lemma 1. By integration by parts and the density of test functions in V_μ, we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(u(t)|v) = \left\langle \frac{\partial u(t)}{\partial t}, v \right\rangle_{V_\mu} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta}(u(t)|v) = \left\langle \frac{\partial u(t)}{\partial \vartheta}, v \right\rangle_{V_\mu}\,, \tag{15}$$

for all $v \in V_\mu$ and almost all $t \in \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}$. From (8), (12) and (15), we deduce that

$$\left\langle -\frac{\partial u(t)}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial\,(b(t)u(t))}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t)u(t) - f(t), v \right\rangle_{V_\mu} = 0\,,$$

for all $v \in V_\mu$ and almost all $t \in \mathcal{O}_{T,\Theta}$, in which case (1) follows. The converse derives from (1) and $u \in W_{\gamma,\mu}$, which imply (8). $\quad\square$

Proposition 1. *Uniqueness. We suppose (3)–(7) and (11); let $0 < \gamma < c$. Then, there exists at most one solution to (8)–(9).*

Proof of Proposition 1. We consider (8)–(9) with $f = 0$ and $v = 0$; setting $v = u$ in (8), we obtain

$$-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\,|u(t)|^2_\mu - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta}\left|\sqrt{b(t)}\,u(t)\right|^2_\mu + a_\mu\left(t; u(t), u(t)\right) = 0$$

or

$$2c\|u(t)\|^2_\mu \le \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\,|u(t)|^2_\mu + \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta}\left|\sqrt{b(t)}\,u(t)\right|^2_\mu\,,$$

from (11), in which case

$$0 \le \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(e^{-2c\vartheta}\,|u(t)|^2_\mu\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta}\left(e^{-2c\vartheta}\left|\sqrt{b(t)}\,u(t)\right|^2_\mu\right)\,.$$

Integrating over the domain $(0, T) \times (0, \Theta)$, for some $\Theta > 0$, and applying Green's Theorem, it follows that

$$\int_0^\Theta e^{-2c\vartheta}\,|u(0,\vartheta)|^2_\mu\, d\vartheta + \int_0^T \left|\sqrt{b(t,0)}\,u(t,0)\right|^2_\mu dt \le \int_0^T e^{-2c\Theta}\left|\sqrt{b(t,\Theta)}\,u(t,\Theta)\right|^2_\mu dt$$

and so

$$0 < \tilde{c} \le e^{-2c\Theta}\,|u(t,\Theta)|^2_\mu\,.$$

However,

$$\tilde{c}e^{-2(c-\gamma)\Theta} \le e^{-2c\Theta}\,|u(t,\Theta)|^2_\mu$$

is not summable on $(0, \infty)$, which contradicts the condition $u \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$, from which it follows that $u = 0$. $\square$

We consider the regularization of (1)–(2) to domains of finite extent. To this end, it suffices for v to have an extension to, or to be of compact support in, $\tilde{\mathcal{Q}}$. Without loss of generality, we may assume that $v = 0$. For $m \in \mathbb{N}$, let

$$\mathcal{Q}_m = (0, T) \times (0, m) \times (-m, m),$$

$$f_m = f \quad \text{on} \quad \mathcal{Q}_m,$$

$$V_m = H_0^1(-m, m),$$

$$H_m = L_2(-m, m),$$

$$\mathcal{X}_m = L_2((0, T) \times (0, m); V_m),$$

$$\mathcal{X}_m^* = L_2((0, T) \times (0, m); V_m^*),$$

and

$$W_m = \{u_m \in \mathcal{X}_m \mid \nabla_t(u_m) \in \mathcal{X}_m^* \times \mathcal{X}_m^* \}.$$

There exists a unique $u_m \in W_m$ satisfying the ultraparabolic terminal value problem (cf. [5])

$$-\frac{\partial u_m}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial(b u_m)}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t, \vartheta) u_m = f_m \quad \text{a.e. on} \quad \mathcal{Q}_m \tag{16}$$

subject to the terminal conditions

$$u(T, \vartheta, x) = 0 \quad \text{a.e. on} \quad (0, m) \times (-m, m), \tag{17}$$

$$u(t, m, x) = 0 \quad \text{a.e. on} \quad (0, T) \times (-m, m), \tag{18}$$

and boundary conditions

$$u(t, \vartheta, -m) = u(t, \vartheta, -m) = 0 \quad \text{a.e. on} \quad (0, T) \times (0, m). \tag{19}$$

We denote by $\tilde{u}_m$ the extension of u_m by zero to the compliment of $\mathcal{Q}_m$.

Lemma 2. *We suppose (3)–(7), (11),*

$$\nabla_t(a_i) \in L_\infty(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}}) \times L_\infty(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}}), \tag{20}$$

$0 < \gamma < c / \overline{b}$ and $f \in L_\gamma^2(\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{t,\vartheta}; H_\mu)$; then,

$$\|\tilde{u}_m\|_{\gamma,\mu} \leq C, \tag{21}$$

for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

Proof of Lemma 2. Taking the inner product of (16) with $\tilde{u}_m$, we have

$$-\left(\frac{\partial \tilde{u}_m}{\partial t}, \tilde{u}_m\right)_\mu - \left(\frac{\partial b \tilde{u}_m}{\partial \vartheta}, \tilde{u}_m\right)_\mu + a_\mu(t; \tilde{u}_m, \tilde{u}_m) = (f_m, \tilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

or

$$-e^{-2\gamma\vartheta}\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}|\tilde{u}_m|_\mu^2 - e^{-2\gamma\vartheta}\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta}\left|\sqrt{b}\tilde{u}_m\right|_\mu^2 + ce^{-2\gamma\vartheta}\|\tilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \leq e^{-2\gamma\vartheta}(f_m, \tilde{u}_m)_\mu.$$

Integrating the above over $(0, T) \times (\vartheta, m)$, it follows that

$$- \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left| \widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2 - \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b}\widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2$$

$$+c \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \leq \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} (f_m, \widetilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

or

$$- \left\{ \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2 \right] + \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta} \left[e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b}\widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2 \right] \right\}$$

$$- \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m 2\gamma e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b}\widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2 + 2c \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2$$

$$\leq 2 \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} (f_m, \widetilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

and so

$$\int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \widetilde{u}_m(0,\vartheta) \right|_\mu^2 + \int_0^T e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \widetilde{u}_m(t,\vartheta) \right|_\mu^2 - \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m 2\gamma e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b}\widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2$$

$$+2c \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \leq 2 \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} (f_m, \widetilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

in which case

$$2c \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 - \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m 2\gamma e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b}\widetilde{u}_m \right|_\mu^2$$

$$\leq 2 \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} (f_m, \widetilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

or

$$\left(c - \overline{b}\,\gamma \right) \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \leq \int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} (f_m, \widetilde{u}_m)_\mu$$

$$\leq \left(\int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{f}_m\|_\mu^2 \right)^{1/2} \left(\int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \right)^{1/2}$$

such that

$$\int_0^T \int_\vartheta^m e^{-2\gamma\vartheta} \|\widetilde{u}_m\|_\mu^2 \leq C;$$

therefore,

$$\|\widetilde{u}_m\|_{\gamma,\mu} \leq C$$

for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$. $\quad \square$

We obtain a supplementary estimate on $\nabla_t(\widetilde{u}_m)$.

Lemma 3. *We suppose (3)–(7), (11), (20), $0 < \gamma < c / \overline{b}$ and $f \in L_\gamma^2(\mathcal{O}_{t,\vartheta}; H_\mu)$, then*

$$\left\| \frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m}{\partial t} \right\|_{\gamma,\mu} \leq C \quad \text{and} \quad \left\| \frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m}{\partial \vartheta} \right\|_{\gamma,\mu} \leq C. \tag{22}$$

Proof of Lemma 3. We consider the parabolic regularization with respect to ϑ of (16)–(19). To this end, let $\mathcal{H}_m(0,\Theta) = L_2(0,\Theta; H_m)$; we define the space of test functions on $(0,m) \times (-m, m)$ such that

$$\mathcal{V}_m(0,m) = \left\{ v \mid v, \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial v}{\partial \vartheta} \in L_2(0,m; H_m), \ v(t, \vartheta, -m) = v(t, \vartheta, m) = v(t, m, x) = 0 \right\},$$

in which case we obtain the evolution triple "$\mathcal{V}_m(0, m) \subset \mathcal{H}_m(0, m) \subset \mathcal{V}_m^*(0, m)$". We denote $\mathcal{H}_m = \mathcal{H}_m(0, m)$ and $\mathcal{V}_m = \mathcal{V}_m(0, m)$ for brevity and equip $\mathcal{V}_m$ with the norm

$$\|v\|_{\mathcal{V}_m}^2 = \int_{(0,m)} \|v(\theta)\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 \, d\theta + \int_{(0,m)} \|\partial v(\theta)/\partial x\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 \, d\theta + \int_{(0,m)} \|\partial v(\theta)/\partial \theta\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 \, d\theta$$

$$= \|v\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 + \|\partial v/\partial x\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 + \|\partial v/\partial \theta\|_{\mathcal{H}_m}^2 \, .$$

Let

$$\mathcal{W}_m = \mathcal{W}_m(0, T; \mathcal{V}_m, \mathcal{H}_m) = \left\{ v \mid v \in \mathcal{X}_m, \; \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} \in \mathcal{X}_m^*, \; \frac{\partial v}{\partial \theta} \in \mathcal{X}_m^*, \; v(t, m, x) = 0 \right\},$$

where $\mathcal{X}_m = L_2((0, m) \times (-m.m); V_m)$ and $\mathcal{X}_m^* = L_2((0, m) \times (-m.m); V_m^*)$, which we equip with the norm

$$\|v\|_{\mathcal{W}_m}^2 = \int_0^T \|v(\tau)\|_{\mathcal{V}_m}^2 \, d\tau + \int_0^T \|\partial v(\tau)/\partial \tau\|_{\mathcal{X}_m^*}^2 \, d\tau \, .$$

The perturbation problem associated with (16)–(19) is: for any $\epsilon > 0$, we seek u_m^ϵ satisfying the parabolic equation

$$-\frac{\partial u_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} - \epsilon \frac{\partial^2 u_m^\epsilon}{\partial \vartheta^2} - \frac{\partial (b \, u_m^\epsilon)}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t) \, u_m^\epsilon = f_m \;\; a.e. \text{ on } \mathcal{Q}, \tag{23}$$

where $A(t) = A(t, \vartheta)$, subject to the terminal condition

$$u_m^\epsilon(T, \vartheta, x) = v(\vartheta, x) \;\; a.e. \text{ on } (0, m) \times (-m, m), \tag{24}$$

and boundary conditions

$$u_m^\epsilon(t, \Theta, x) = 0 \;\; a.e. \text{ on } (0, T) \times (-m, m), \tag{25}$$

$$u^\epsilon(t, \vartheta, -m) = u^\epsilon(t, \vartheta, m) = 0 \;\; a.e. \text{ on } (0, t) \times (0, m), \tag{26}$$

$$\frac{\partial u_m^\epsilon}{\partial \vartheta}(t, m, x) = 0 \;\; a.e. \text{ on } (0, T) \times (-m, m). \tag{27}$$

The problem (23)–(27) is well-posed, noting in particular the necessity of the auxiliary boundary condition (27).

We denote by $\widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon$ the extension of u_m^ϵ by zero to the compliment of $\mathcal{Q}_m$. Taking the inner product of (23) with $-n_\gamma^2 \, \partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon / \partial t$, it follows that

$$\int_{(0,m)} \left(\frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} \Big| n_\gamma^2 \frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} \right)_\mu \, d\theta + a_{0,\mu,\gamma}^\epsilon \left(t; \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon, -\frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} \right) = \int_{(0,m)} \left(f - A_1 \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon \Big| - n_\gamma^2 \frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} \right)_\mu \, d\theta,$$

where

$$a_{0,\mu,\gamma}^\epsilon (t; u, v) = \epsilon \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta,x}} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \vartheta} \frac{\partial v}{\partial \vartheta} m_\mu^2 n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O} + \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta,x}} a_2(t) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} m_\mu^2 n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O}$$

and

$$A_1 u = \frac{\partial (bu)}{\partial \vartheta} - a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - a_0 u,$$

in which case

$$\int_{(0,m)} n_\gamma^2 \left| \frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial t} \right|_\mu^2 \, d\theta - \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} a_{0,\mu,\gamma}^\epsilon (t; \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon, \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon) + \frac{1}{2} \overset{\bullet}{a}{}_{0,\mu,\gamma}^\epsilon (t; \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon, \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon)$$

$$= \int_{(0,m)} n_\gamma^2 \left(f - A_1 \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon, -\frac{\partial \widetilde{u}_m^\epsilon}{\partial \vartheta} \right)_\mu \, d\theta,$$

where

$$\dot{a}^\epsilon_{0,\mu,\gamma}(\vartheta;u,v) = \int_{\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta,x}} \frac{da_2(t)}{dt} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} m_\mu^2 n_\gamma^2 \, d\mathcal{O} \, .$$

Integrating the above in time, we have that

$$\int_{\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}} n_\gamma^2 \left| \frac{\partial \tilde{u}^\epsilon_m}{\partial t} \right|_\mu^2 d\mathcal{O} + \frac{1}{2} a^\epsilon_{0,\mu,\gamma}(0;\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m,\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m) = \frac{1}{2} a^\epsilon_{0,\mu,\gamma}(T;\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m,\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m)$$

$$-\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \dot{a}^\epsilon_0(t;\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m,\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m) \, dt + \int_{\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}} n_\gamma^2 \left(f - A_1 \tilde{u}^\epsilon_m, -\frac{\partial \tilde{u}^\epsilon_m}{\partial t} \right)_\mu d\mathcal{O} \, .$$

With (21), we proceed as per Lemma 2 to obtain

$$\int_{\tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}} n_\gamma^2 \left| \frac{\partial \tilde{u}^\epsilon_m}{\partial t} \right|_\mu^2 d\mathcal{O} \le C \, ,$$

which is valid for all $\tilde{u}^\epsilon_m$; passing to the limit, we obtain

$$\left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{u}_m}{\partial t} \right\|_{\gamma,\mu} \le C \, ,$$

which holds for all m. We determine the estimate in ϑ analogously. $\quad\square$

In the following result, we establish the existence of the solution to (8)–(9) as well as its approximation by the regularization (16)–(19).

Proposition 2. *Existence. We suppose (3)–(7), (11), (20), $0 < \gamma < c / \overline{b}$ and $f \in L^2_\gamma(\mathcal{O}_{t,\vartheta}; H_\mu)$; then, there exists a $u \in W_{\gamma,\mu}$ satisfying (8)–(9). Moreover, the sequence $\{\tilde{u}_m\}$ converges such that $\tilde{u}_m \to u$ in $\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$ and*

$$\max_{t \in \overline{\mathcal{O}}} \left\{ \int_t^T |\sqrt{b(\tau,\vartheta)}(\tilde{u}_m(\tau,\vartheta) - u(\tau,\vartheta)|_\mu^2 \, d\tau + \int_\vartheta^\Theta |\tilde{u}_m(t,\theta) - u(t,\theta)|_\mu^2 \, d\theta \right\} \to 0 \, ,$$

as $m \to \infty$, where $\mathcal{O} = (0,T) \times (0,\Theta)$, for any (fixed) $\Theta > 0$.

Proof of Proposition 2. From the estimates (21) and (22), it follows that, possibly after extracting a subsequence, $\tilde{u}_m \rightharpoonup u$ in $\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$, $\partial \tilde{u}_m / \partial t \rightharpoonup \partial u / \partial t$ in $L^2_\gamma(\mathcal{O}, H_\mu)$) and $\partial \tilde{u}_m / \partial \vartheta \rightharpoonup \partial u / \partial \vartheta$ in $L^2_\gamma(\mathcal{O}, H_\mu)$), where u satisfies (8)–(9).

In order to show convergence of the regularizations $\tilde{u}_m$, we have from (8) that

$$-\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |u(t) - \tilde{u}(t)|_\mu^2 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta} \left| \sqrt{b(t)}(u(t) - \tilde{u}(t)) \right|_\mu^2$$

$$+ a_\mu(t;u(t) - \tilde{u}(t), u(t) - \tilde{u}(t)) = (f(t)|u(t) - \tilde{u}(t))_\mu \, .$$

Multiplying the above by n_γ^2 and applying the Green's formula over $\mathcal{O}$, we obtain

$$\int_t^T |\sqrt{b(\tau,\vartheta)} \, u_n(\tau,\vartheta) - u(\tau,\vartheta)|_\mu^2 \, d\tau + \int_\vartheta^\Theta |u_n(t,\theta) - u(t,\theta)|_\mu^2 \, d\theta$$

$$+ 2 \int_{\mathcal{O}} a_\mu(t;u(t) - \tilde{u}(t), u(t) - \tilde{u}(t)) \, d\mathcal{O} = 2 \int_{\mathcal{O}} (f(t)|u(t) - \tilde{u}(t))_\mu \, d\mathcal{O} \, ,$$

and the result follows from (11) and $\tilde{u}_m \rightharpoonup u$ in $\mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}$. $\quad\square$

Let $\{w_1, w_2, \ldots\}$ denote a basis in V_m. We set

$$u_{m,n}(t, \vartheta, x) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} c_{kn}(t, \vartheta) w_k(x), \tag{28}$$

$$v_n(\vartheta, x) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_{kn}(\vartheta) w_k(x), \tag{29}$$

where $c_{kn}(t, \vartheta) \in L_2((0, T) \times (0, m))$ and $\alpha_{kn}(\vartheta) \in L_2(0, m)$, such that $\alpha_{kn}(m) = 0$, $v_n \in L_2(0, m; V_m)$ and

$$v_{m,n} \to v \text{ in } L_2(0, m; H_m), \tag{30}$$

as $n \to \infty$. The *Galerkin* equations associated with (16)-(19) are defined

$$-\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} c_{kn}(t)(w_k | w_j)_{H_m} - \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\partial}{\partial \vartheta} c_{kn}(t)(\sqrt{b(t)}\, w_k | \sqrt{b(t)}\, w_j)_{H_m} \tag{31}$$

$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{n} c_{kn}(t)\, a(t; w_k | w_j) = \langle f(t), w_j \rangle_{V_m} \text{ on } (0, T) \times (0, m)$$

for $j = 1, \ldots, n$, such that

$$c_{kn}(T, \vartheta) = \alpha_{kn}(\vartheta) \text{ a.e. on } (0, m), \tag{32}$$

$$c_{kn}(t, m) = 0 \text{ a.e. on } (0, T), \tag{33}$$

for $k = 1, \ldots, n$, where

$$a(t; u, v) = \int_{(0,X)} a_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\, dx + \int_{(0,X)} a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} v\, dx + \int_{(0,X)} a_0\, u\, v\, dx,$$

for all $u, v \in V$ and $t \in (0, T) \times (0, m)$, $(u | v)_{H_m}$ is the inner product on the Hilbert space H_m, and $\langle f, v \rangle_{V_m}$ is the value of the linear functional $f \in V_m^*$ at $v \in V_m$.

We immediately obtain the constructive approximation of (8)–(9) by the Galerkin procedure (28)–(33) from ([5], Propositions 4 and 5) and Proposition 2.

Proposition 3. *Galerkin Approximation.* We suppose (3)–(7), (11), (20), $0 < \gamma < c/2\bar{b}$, and $f \in L_\gamma^2(\mathcal{O}_{t,\vartheta}; H_\mu)$. Let $u_{m,m}$ be the mth-Galerkin approximation to u_m defined by (28)–(33) and u the solution to (8)–(9), then $u_{m,m} \to u$ in $\mathcal{X}$ and

$$\max_{t \in \overline{\mathcal{O}}} \left\{ \int_t^T |\sqrt{b(\tau, \vartheta)}\, u_{m,m}(\tau, \vartheta) - u(\tau, \vartheta)|_\mu^2\, d\tau + \int_\vartheta^\Theta |u_{m,m}(t, \theta) - u(t, \theta)|_\mu^2\, d\theta \right\} \to 0$$

as $m \to \infty$, where $\mathcal{O} = (0, T) \times (0, \Theta)$, for any (fixed) $\Theta > 0$.

Remark 3. *Propositions 2 and 3 likewise hold with $f \in \mathcal{X}_{\gamma,\mu}^*$, where we imply the Galerkin approximation per the proof of Lemma 3.*

3. Probabilistic Interpretation

In order to provide a probabilistic interpretation of the solution to (1)–(2), we make the additional assumptions that

$$a_2, a_1, a_0, b \in C^1\left(\overline{\overline{\mathcal{Q}}}\right); a_2 \text{ bounded}, \tag{34}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial x^2}, \frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial x \partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial \vartheta^2} \in C^0\left(\overline{\overline{\mathcal{Q}}}\right), \text{ bounded}, \tag{35}$$

$$\frac{\partial a_0}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial a_1}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial a_2}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial b}{\partial x} \text{ bounded,} \tag{36}$$

$$\frac{\partial a_0}{\partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial a_1}{\partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial a_2}{\partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial b}{\partial \vartheta} \text{ bounded,} \tag{37}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial t \partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial t \partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial a_2}{\partial x^2} \in L^p_{loc}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}), \tag{38}$$

$$f, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \in C^0\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right), \tag{39}$$

$$|f(t, \vartheta, x)| \leq \left[1 + (\vartheta^2 + x^2)^{m/2}\right], \tag{40}$$

$$\left|\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right| \leq C\left[1 + (\vartheta^2 + x^2)^{m/2}\right], \tag{41}$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \in L^p_{loc}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}). \tag{42}$$

We likewise suppose the existence of a function

$$\Psi \in C^{2,1}\left(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}\right) \cap C^0\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right), \tag{43}$$

$$\left|\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial x}\right| \leq C\left[1 + (\vartheta^2 + x^2)^{m/2}\right], \tag{44}$$

such that

$$v(\vartheta, x) = \Psi(T, \vartheta, x) \tag{45}$$

and

$$g = -\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial (b\Psi)}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t, \vartheta)\Psi \tag{46}$$

satisfies the same assumptions as f. From Proposition 2 and Appendix A, we allow that there exists a unique solution $u \in C^{2,1}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}) \cap C^0\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right)$ to the problem (1)–(2).

We let $\sigma = \sqrt{2a_2}$ (or $a_2 = \sigma^2/2$) and define

$$a(t, \vartheta, x) = \frac{\partial a_2}{\partial x} - a_1 \tag{47}$$

and

$$\alpha_0 = a_0 - \frac{\partial b}{\partial \vartheta}, \tag{48}$$

in which case $\alpha_0 > 0$ for β sufficiently large (cf. (7)). In particular, σ, a and b are elements of $C^1\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right)$. Moreover, by extending the functions a, b, and σ outside of $\overline{\mathcal{Q}}$, we may assume that

$$|\sigma(t, \vartheta_2, x_2) - \sigma(t, \vartheta_1, x_1)| + |a(t, \vartheta_2, x_2) - a(t, \vartheta_2, x_1)|$$

$$+ |b(t, \vartheta_2, x_2) - b(t, \vartheta_1, x_1)| \leq K\left(|\vartheta_2 - \vartheta_1|^2 + |x_2 - x_1|^2\right)^{1/2} \tag{49}$$

as well as

$$|\sigma| \leq K_o \text{ and } |a(t, \vartheta, x)|^2 + |b(t, \vartheta, x)|^2 \leq K_1^2(1 + |\vartheta|^2 + |x|^2), \tag{50}$$

for all $t \in \overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T, \vartheta}}$.

We now seek a probabilistic interpretation of the function u satisfying (1)–(2) by constructing a stochastic differential equation for which the trajectories $(\Theta(t), X(t))$ are the characteristics of $-\partial(b \cdot)/\partial \vartheta + A$. To this end, we take a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, P)$, an increasing family of

sub-σ-algebras $\mathcal{F}_t$ of $\mathcal{A}$, and a $\mathbb{R}$-valued standardized Wiener process $w(t)$, which is an $\mathcal{F}_t$ martingale. We can then consider, on an arbitrary finite interval, the stochastic differential equation

$$dX(t) = a(t, \Theta(t), X(t)) \, dt + \sigma(t, y) \, dw(t) \,, \tag{51}$$

$$d\Theta(t) = b(t, \Theta(t), X(t)) \, dt, \tag{52}$$

$$X(0) = x \in \mathbb{R} \,, \tag{53}$$

$$\Theta(0) = \vartheta \in \mathbb{R}_+ \,, \tag{54}$$

where x and ϑ are fixed and non-random; the solution of (51)–(54) is unique.

Proposition 4. *The assumptions of Proposition 2, as well as (34) through (46); the solution of (1)–(2) is given by*

$$u(t, \vartheta, x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^T f(s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \exp\left[-\int_t^s \alpha_0(\varsigma, \Theta(\varsigma), X(\varsigma)) \, d\varsigma \right] ds \right\} \tag{55}$$

$$+\mathbb{E}\left\{ v(\Theta(T), X(T)) \exp\left[-\int_t^T \alpha_0(s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \, ds \right] \right\} .$$

Proof of Proposition 4. The proof relies on the existence and uniqueness of the regular solution to the ultraparabolic terminal value problem (1)–(2). With this exception, the result is standard such that we will provide only a brief exposition, deferring to e.g., ([12], Chapter 2, Theorem 7.4). For the process $(\Theta(t), X(t))$, we have that

$$\mathbb{E}\left[\left(|\Theta(s)|^2 + |X(s)|^2 \right)^k \right] \leq C \left[1 + \left(|\vartheta|^2 + |x|^2 \right)^k \right] \,, \tag{56}$$

for all $s \in [t, T]$ and all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, in which case the right-hand side of (55) is well-defined.

We shall now prove (55) in the case $v = 0$. We set

$$Z(s) = \exp\left\{ -\int_t^s \left[a_0(\varsigma, \Theta(\varsigma), X(\varsigma)) - \frac{\partial b}{\partial \vartheta} \right] d\varsigma \right\}. \tag{57}$$

Then, $Z(s)$ satisfies

$$\frac{dZ(s)}{ds} = \frac{\partial b}{\partial \vartheta} - a_0(s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \, Z(s) \,, \ Z(t) = 1 \,. \tag{58}$$

Differentiating the functional $\Psi \cdot Z$, applying Ito's formula to Ψ, and integrating from t to T, we obtain

$$\Psi(T, \Theta(T), X(T)) = \Psi(t, \vartheta, x)$$

$$+ \int_t^T \left[\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial(b\Psi)}{\partial \vartheta} - A(s, \vartheta) \, \Psi \right] (s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \, Z(s) \, ds$$

$$+ \int_t^T Z(s) \left[\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial x} \sigma \right] (s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \, dw \,.$$

From (56) with $k = m$ and the assumptions (44) on the growth of $\partial \Psi / \partial x$, we have that the expectation of the stochastic integral is defined and is equal to zero. We therefore have that

$$\mathbb{E}\left\{ v(\Theta(T), X(T)) \, Z(T) \right\} = \Psi(t, \vartheta, x) - \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^T g(s, \Theta(s), X(s)) \, Z(s) \right\} \,,$$

in which case (55) is identical to

$$u(t,x) - \Psi(t,\vartheta,x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^T [f(s,\Theta(s),X(s)) - g(s,\Theta(s),X(s))] \, Z(s) \right\}$$

and so the problem reduces to proving (55) with $v = 0$, with f replaced by $f - g$, and with u replaced by $u - \Psi$ and a solution to (1)–(2) corresponding to data $f - g$ and 0.

We therefore assume $v = 0$; we prove that

$$u(t,\vartheta,x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^T f(s,\Theta(s),X(s)) \, Z(s) \, ds \right\}. \tag{59}$$

We start by considering the bounded case. We approximate f by f_{NM} defined by

$$f_{NM} = \begin{cases} N & \text{if} \quad N \leq f, \\ f & \text{if} \quad -M \leq f \leq N, \\ -M & \text{if} \quad f \leq -M. \end{cases}$$

Since $f_{NM} \in C^0\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}}\right)$ and $\partial f_{NM}/\partial x, \partial f_{NM}/\partial t, \partial f_{NM}/\partial \vartheta \in L^p_{\text{loc}}(\widetilde{\mathcal{O}})$, we can uniquely define u_{NM} as the solution of

$$u_{NM} \in L^2(\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}; H^1_\mu) \cap C^0\left(\overline{\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}}\right) \cap C^{2,1}(\mathcal{Q})$$

such that

$$-\frac{\partial u_{NM}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial b \, u_{NM}}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t)u_{NM} = f_{NM} \tag{60}$$

and

$$u_{NM}(T,\vartheta,x) = 0. \tag{61}$$

We note that u_{MN} is bounded. This follows as per ([5], Prop. 2′).

We show:

$$u_{NM}(t,\vartheta,x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^T f_{NM}(s,\Theta(s),X(s)) \, Z(s) \, ds \right\}. \tag{62}$$

To this end, let $\mathcal{O}_R = \{\xi \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid |\xi| \leq R\}$ and τ_R be the exit time form $\mathcal{O}_R$ of the process $(\Theta(t), X(t))$. We can suppose that the (fixed) initial data (x,ϑ) of (51)–(54) belongs to $\mathcal{O}_R$, for R that is sufficiently large. That is, we have, from the continuity of the process a.s. $\tau_R \geq T$ for some $R_0(\omega)$ with $R \geq R_0(\omega)$, in which case

$$a.s. \quad \tau_R \wedge T = T, \tag{63}$$

for $R \geq R_0(\omega)$. As above, with the use of Ito's formula applied to u_{NM} between the instants t and $\tau_R \wedge T - \epsilon$, taking $\epsilon \to 0$, and using the continuity of u_{NM} on $\overline{\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}}$, we have

$$u_{NM}(t,\vartheta,x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ \int_t^{\tau_R \wedge T} f_{NM}(s,\Theta(s),X(s)) \, Z(s) \, ds \right\} \tag{64}$$

$$+ \mathbb{E}\left\{ u_{NM}(\tau_R,\Theta(\tau_R),X(\tau_R)) \, Z(\tau_R) \, \chi_T(\tau_R) \right\},$$

where

$$\chi_T(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if} \quad t < T, \\ 0, & \text{if} \quad t \geq T. \end{cases}$$

However, from (63), we have

$$u_{NM}(\tau_R,\Theta(\tau_R),X(\tau_R)) \, z(\tau_R) \, \chi_T(\tau_R) = 0,$$

for $R \geq R_0(\omega)$, and so

$$\mathbb{E}\left\{u_{NM}(\tau_R, \Theta(\tau_R), X(\tau_R))\, Z(\tau_R)\, \chi_T(\tau_R)\right\} \to 0 \quad \text{a.s.},$$

as $R \to \infty$. Application of Lesbesque's theorem then provides the result (62).

From the estimates

$$|u_{NM}| \leq C\left[1 + \left(\vartheta^2 + x^2\right)^{m/2}\right]$$

and

$$\left|\frac{\partial u_{NM}}{\partial x}\right| \leq C\left[1 + \left(\vartheta^2 + x^2\right)^{m/2}\right],$$

it follows that u_{NM} lies in a bounded subset of $L^2(\widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{T,\vartheta}; H_\mu^1)$ and we obtain (59) by proceeding to the limit successively in M and N. $\quad\square$

4. Conclusions

We have demonstrated the existence and uniqueness of the solution to linear ultraparabolic equations on unbounded domains, both spatial and temporal, as well as the strong convergence of the regularized problem, providing a basis for the subsequent application of a Galerkin approximation. Furthermore, we present a probabilistic interpretation of the solution in terms of the expectation of an associative ultradiffusion process. In practice, the usefulness of this result often stems from the converse formulation; that is, one often wishes to obtain the discounted expectation associated with an ultradiffusion process, e.g., the valuation of an Asian option in mathematical finance (cf. [11]). To this end, the regularity assumptions of Section 3 are necessary for the existence of the solution to the ultradiffusion process (3.5). With respect to a simple regular transformation, the associated ultraparabolic problem maintains the approximation solvability of Section 2, for which efficient and general numerical procedures are readily available (cf. [13–15]).

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

Appendix A. Regularity

There exist two approaches to obtaining regularity; for parabolic differential equations of the second order, we note that Wloka [16] has provided regularity theorems based on raising the differentiability assumptions of the data while Ladyženskaja et al. [17] have taken the approach of increasing the p-power summability of the data. The results stated below follow the latter approach, the demonstration of which lies outside the scope of this manuscript. As regularity theorems are local, they do not require assumptions on the boundary or the boundedness of the domain .

We let $\mathcal{W}^{1,2,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$ denote the space of functions u such that

$$u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \in L^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}),$$

for $1 \leq p \leq \infty$. Here, the "1" refers to the order of temporal derivatives, and "2" refers to the number of spatial derivatives. If $p = 2$, we write $\mathcal{W}^{1,2}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$, which we equip with the natural Banach- and Hilbert-space norm. We denote by $\mathcal{W}_{\text{loc}}^{1,2,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$ the space of functions u such that, for all test functions $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$, the set of infinitely differentiable functions with compact support in $\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}$, we have $\varphi\, u \in \mathcal{W}_{\text{loc}}^{1,2,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$.

We suppose that

$$a_2, a_1, a_0, b \in C^1(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}). \tag{65}$$

Moreover, for $v \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$, we denote by Lv the following distribution on $\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}$:

$$\langle Lv, \psi \rangle = \int_{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}} v \left[\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(b\,\psi)}{\partial \vartheta} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(a_2 \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(a_1 \psi) + a_0 \psi \right] d\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}},$$

for all $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$.

Proposition A1. *Local Regularity. The assumptions of Proposition 2, as well as (65). Let $u \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$ be such that*

$$Lu = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial(b\,u)}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t, \vartheta)\,u = f \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}),$$

then $u \in \mathcal{W}_{loc}^{1,2,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$, for $p > 1$.

Proof of Proposition A1. The case for $p = 2$ follows with a slight modification from ([12], Chapter 2, Theorem 5.5). □

In order to obtain results on the boundary, we set

$$\widetilde{f} = \begin{cases} f, & \text{on } (0, T), \\ 0, & \text{on } (-T, 0) \text{ and } (T, 2T), \end{cases}$$

and extend the operator $A(t, \vartheta)$ in such a way that it is defined over $(-T, 2T)$, all the while retaining the properties of the coefficients. Finally, we consider the solution of $\widetilde{u}$ of

$$-\frac{\partial \widetilde{u}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial(b\widetilde{u})}{\partial \vartheta} + A(t, \vartheta)\,\widetilde{u} = \widetilde{f} \quad a.e. \text{ on } \widetilde{\mathcal{Q}} \tag{66}$$

subject to the terminal condition

$$\widetilde{u}(2T, \vartheta, x) = 0 \quad a.e. \text{ on } \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta,x}. \tag{67}$$

Corollary A1. *The assumptions of Proposition A1; we have*

$$u \in C^0\left(\overline{\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}}\right),$$

for $p > 2$.

Proof of Corollary A1. From Proposition A1 applied to $\widetilde{u}$ in (66)–(67), we obtain $\widetilde{u} \in \mathcal{W}_{loc}^{1,2,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$ from which we derive the result. □

Increased smoothness of the data may then be translated into smoothness of the solution.

Proposition A2. *The assumptions of Proposition A1, as well as*

$$\frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial t \partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial \vartheta \partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 a_2}{\partial x^2} \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}), \tag{68}$$

$$f, \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial \vartheta}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}), \tag{69}$$

$$u \in L_{loc}^p(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}}),$$

and $Lu = f$, then

$$u \in \mathcal{W}_{loc}^{1,3,p}(\widetilde{\mathcal{Q}})$$

and

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial \vartheta} \in \mathcal{W}_{\text{loc}}^{1,2,p}(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}}).$$

In particular, $u \in C^{1,2}(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}})$.

Proof of Proposition A2. We consider the differential quotients technique per Section 4 of [5] such that, if $f \in \mathcal{W}_{\text{loc}}^{1,1,p}(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}})$, then $u \in \mathcal{W}_{\text{loc}}^{1,3,p}(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}})$. □

Finally, the key regularity result is:

Proposition A3. *The assumptions of Proposition A2. If $f \in L^p(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}})$ and $v = 0$, then the unique solution to (1)–(2) also satisfies $u \in L_{\text{loc}}^p(\tilde{\mathcal{Q}})$.*

Appendix B. Localization

In order to highlight the temporal nature of the variable ϑ in the probabilistic framework, we examine formally the localization of the ultradiffusion process (51)–(54) and its relation to (1)–(2). To this end, we freeze the drift and volitility in a neighborhood of $t = 0$ and consider the ultradiffusion process

$$dX(t) = a\,dt + \sigma\,dw(t), \tag{70}$$

$$d\Theta(t) = b\,dt, \tag{71}$$

$$X(0) = x \in \mathbb{R}, \tag{72}$$

$$\Theta(0) = \vartheta \in \mathbb{R}_+, \tag{73}$$

where x and ϑ are again fixed and non-random. It follows then that the solution to ultraparabolic infinite horizon/ terminal boundary value problem

$$-\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial(bu)}{\partial \vartheta} + A\,u = 0 \quad \text{a.e. on } \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}, \tag{74}$$

$$u(T, \vartheta, x) = v(\vartheta, x) \quad \text{a.e. on } \tilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta, x} \tag{75}$$

may be characterized as

$$u(t, \vartheta, x) = \mathbb{E}\left\{ v(\Theta(T), X(T)) \exp\left[-a_0(T - t)\right] \right\}. \tag{76}$$

In particular, we consider the temporal characteristic transformation $t = t(\tau)$ and $\vartheta = \vartheta(\tau)$ such that

$$\frac{d\,t(\tau)}{d\,\tau} = 1; \quad t(0) = 0, \tag{77}$$

$$\frac{d\,\vartheta(\tau)}{d\,\tau} = b; \quad \vartheta(0) = \vartheta_0, \tag{78}$$

where $\vartheta_0 > 0$, in which case $t(\tau) = \tau$ and $\vartheta(\tau) = b\tau + \vartheta_0$ or, more simply, $t = \tau$ and $\vartheta(t) = bt + \vartheta_0$. Note then that, along the characteristic line $(t(\tau), \vartheta(\tau))$, the Formulations (70)–(76) may be restated in terms of the characteristic parameterized diffusion

$$d\mathcal{X}(\tau; \vartheta_0) = a\,d\tau + \sigma\,d\varpi(\tau), \tag{79}$$

$$\mathcal{X}(0; \vartheta_0) = x \in \mathbb{R}, \tag{80}$$

such that the solution $v(\tau, x; \vartheta_0) = u(t(\tau), \vartheta(\tau), x)$ to the characteristic parameterized parabolic terminal value problem

$$-\frac{\partial v}{\partial \tau} + A\, v = 0 \quad a.e. \text{ on } (0,T) \times \mathbb{R}, \tag{81}$$

$$v(T, x; \vartheta_0) = v(\vartheta_0, x) \quad a.e. \text{ on } \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}_{\vartheta, x}, \tag{82}$$

satisfies

$$v(\tau, x) = \mathbb{E}'\left\{ v(\mathcal{X}(T)) \exp\left[-a_0(T - \tau)\right] \right\}. \tag{83}$$

The temporal nature of ϑ then follows from the characteristic problem (77)–(83). Due to (77)–(78), the vector $(1, b)$ (resp. b) is known as the *velocity* (resp. *speed*) of propagation.

References

1. Piskunov, N.S. Problémes Limits pour les Équations du Type Elliptic–Parabolique. *Mat. Sb.* **1940**, *7*, 385–424.
2. Lions, J.L. Sur Certaines Équations aux Dérivativées Partielles, à Coefficients Opérateurs non Bornés. *J. Anal. Math.* **1958**, *6*, 333–355. [CrossRef]
3. Il'in, A.M. On a Class of Ultraparabolic Equations. *Soviet Math. Dokl.* **1964**, *5*, 1673–1676.
4. Vladimirov, V.S.; Drožžinov, J.N. Generalized Cauchy Problem for an Ultraparabolic Equation. *Math. USSR Izv.* **1967**, *1*, 1285–1303.
5. Marcozzi, M.D. Well-Posedness of Linear Ultraparabolic Equations on Bounded Domains. *J. Evol. Equ.* **2018**, *18*, 75–104. [CrossRef]
6. Kolmogorov, A.N. Zur Theorie der Stetigen Zufalligen Progresse. *Math. Ann.* **1933**, *108*, 149–160. [CrossRef]
7. Kolmogorov, A.N. Zufällige Bewegungen. *Ann. Math.* **1934**, *35*, 116–117.
8. Uhlenbeck, G.E.; Ornstein, L.S. On the Theory of the Brownian Motion. *Phys. Rev.* **1930**, *36*, 823–841. [CrossRef]
9. Chandrasekhar, S. Stochastic Problems in Physics and Astronomy. In *Selected Papers on Noise and Stochastic Processes*; Wax, N., Ed.; Dover: New York, NY, USA, 2013; Reprint.
10. Marshak, R.E. Theory of the Slowing Down of Neutrons by Elastic Collisions with Atomic Nuclei. *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **1947**, *19*, 185–238. [CrossRef]
11. Hull, J.C. *Options, Futures, and Other Derivatives*, 10th ed.; Pearson: New York, NY, USA, 2017.
12. Bensoussan, A.; Lions, J.L. *Applications of Variational Inequalities in Stochastic Control*; North Holland: Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1982.
13. Akrivis, G.M.; Crouzeix, M.; Thomee, V. Numerical methods for ultraparabolic equations. *Calcolo* **1996**, *31*, 179–190. [CrossRef]
14. Marcozzi, M.D. On the valuation of Asian options by variational methods. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **2003**, *24*, 1124–1140. [CrossRef]
15. Marcozzi, M.D. Extrapolation discontinuous Galerkin method for ultraparabolic equations. *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **2009**, *224*, 679–687. [CrossRef]
16. Wloka, J. *Partial Differential Equations*; Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, UK, 1987.
17. Ladyženskaja, O.A.; Solonnikov, V.A.; Ural'ceva, N.N. *Linear and Quasilinear Equations of Parabolic Type*; American Mathematical Society: Providence, RI, USA, 1967; Volume 23 of Translations of Mathematical Monographs.

MDPI